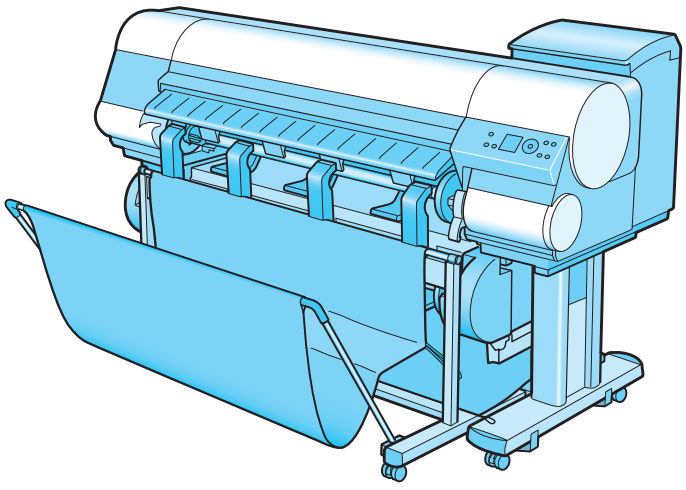
Canon

Large Format Printer

imagePROGRAF

iPF820

User Manual



ENG

Contents

Introduction 1

How to use this manual 1

About This User Manual 1
Searching Topics 3
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing 5

Printer Parts 13

Printer parts 13

Front 13
Back 15
Top Cover (Inside) 16
Carriage 18
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 19
Wheeled Output Stacker 20
Control Panel 21

Control Panel 23

Control Panel 23
Turning the Printer On and Off 25
Printer Modes 27
Switching Modes 32
Printer Menu Operations 34
Main Menu Operations 36
Menu Structure 40
Main Menu Settings 53
Main Menu Settings (During Printing) 66
Submenu Display 67
Status Print 69
Checking Instructions During Printer Operations 76

Optional accessories 78

Roll Holder Set 78
IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board 78

Printer Specifications 79

Specifications 79
Basic Environmental Performance 84
Print Area 85

Basic Printing Workflow 86

Printing procedure 86
- Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 86
- Loading and Printing on Rolls 89
- Loading and Printing on Sheets 93
- Printing in Windows 96
- Printing in Mac OS X 97

Canceling print jobs 99
- Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 99
- Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 100
- Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X 102

Handling Paper 104

Paper 104
- Types of Paper 104
- Paper Sizes 109

Handling rolls 112
- Selecting the Paper Source 112
- Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 113
- Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) 114
- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls 115
- Loading Rolls in the Printer 118
- Removing the Roll from the Printer 125
- Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls 129
- Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 131
- Feeding Roll Paper Manually 135
- Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left 136
- Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 137
- Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 139
- Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 143
- Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 144
- Roll Holder Set 145
- Automatic Roll Switching 146

Handling sheets for paper feed slots 148
- Selecting the Paper Source 148
- Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 149
- Loading Sheets in the Printer 150
- Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 153
- Removing Sheets 155
- Clearing a Jammed Sheet 156

Output Stacker 158
- Wheeled Output Stacker 158
- Using the Wheeled Output Stacker 159

Working With Various Print Jobs 161

Printing Photos and Images 161

Printing Photos and Images 161
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 163
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 165
Printing Photos in Monochrome 168
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) 169
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) 171

Printing CAD Drawings 174

Printing CAD Drawings 174
Printing Line Drawings and Text 174
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 176
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 178
Printing CAD Drawings in Monochrome 181
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows) 182
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X) 184
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings 187
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) 188
HP-GL/2 Printing 190

Printing Office Documents 191

Printing Office Documents 191
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 192
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) 194

Using the Printer With a Color imageRUNNER 196

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 196
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 196
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 199

Enhanced Printing Options 201

Adjusting Images 201

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 201
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 205
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 208
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 211
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 215
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) 217

Choosing Paper for Printing 220

Choosing a Paper for Printing 220
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 221
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 222
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 223
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 224
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 226

Printing enlargements or reductions 228
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 228
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 229
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 231
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 234
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 235
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 237
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 240
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 241
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) 243
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 246
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 247
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 249
Printing at full size 251
Printing on Oversized Paper 251
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 253
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) 255
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 258
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 260
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 262
Borderless Printing 265
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size 265
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 267
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 269
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 272
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 274
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 276
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 279
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 281
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 283
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 286
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 286
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 288
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) 293
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 297
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 298
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 302
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 304
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 304
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 306
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 308
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 310
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 311
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 313
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 315
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 316
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 318
Printing Posters in Sections 321

Printing Large Posters (Windows) 322
Centering originals 324
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 324
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 325
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) 327
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 330
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 331
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) 333
Conserving roll paper 335
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 335
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 336
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 338
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 341
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 342
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) 344
Checking Images Before Printing 347
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 347
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) 349
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X) 352
Other useful settings 353
Printing With Watermarks 353
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) 354
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 356
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 357
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) 359
Using Favorites 362
Using Favorites (Windows) 363
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 365
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 366
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 367
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) 368

Windows Software 370

Printer Driver 370
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 370
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 372
Confirming Print Settings (Windows) 374
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) 376
Using Favorites (Windows) 379
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) 381
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 383
Main Sheet (Windows) 385
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 388
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 389
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 390
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) 391
Matching Sheet (Windows) 393

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) 395
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 397
Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) 399
Layout Sheet (Windows) 400
Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) 402
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 403
Favorites Sheet (Windows) 404
Utility Sheet (Windows) 406
Support Sheet (Windows) 407
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 408
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows) 409

Status Monitor 410

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 410

Digital Photo Front-Access 411

Digital Photo Front-Access 411

PosterArtist 412

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 412
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 413

Device Setup Utility 415

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 415
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 416
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 417

Mac OS X Software 418

Printer Driver 418

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 418
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 419
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) 421
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X) 423
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 424
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) 425
Main Pane (Mac OS X) 426
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 429
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 430
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) 431
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 432
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) 434
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 435
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 437
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) 438
Support Pane (Mac OS X) 439

Printmonitor 440

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 440

Network Setting 441

Network Setting 441

Network Environment 441
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 443
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 444
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 445
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 446
Using RemoteUI 447
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 448
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 450
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 451
Specifying Printer-Related Information 453
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 454
Initializing the Network Settings 455

Network Setting (Windows) 456

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 456
Sharing the Printer in Windows 457
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 459
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type 461
Specifying NetWare Print Services 463
Specifying NetWare Protocols 466
Configuring NetWare Network Settings 468
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 469
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 470

Network Setting (Mac OS X) 471

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh) 471
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 472
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh) 473
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh) 476
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh) 479

Hard Disk 480

Hard Disk 480

Printer Hard Disk Operations 480
Saved Print Jobs 482
Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver 484
Saving Print Jobs 485
Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box 489
Managing Queued Jobs (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 490
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 493
Naming Personal Boxes 498
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 503
Printing a List of Saved Jobs 508
Printing Saved Jobs 509
Moving Saved Jobs 516
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs 522
Renaming Saved Jobs 527

Deleting Saved Jobs 534
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 539
Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk 542

Adjustments for Better Print Quality 543

Adjusting the Printhead 543
Adjusting the Printhead 543
Automatic Straightening of Lines and Colors (Auto Head Adj.) 544
Manual Straightening of Lines and Colors (Manual Head Adj) 546
Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.) 548
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height) 551

Adjusting the feed amount 552
Adjusting the Feed Amount 552
Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority) 553
Auto Band Adjustment (Auto Band Adj.) 554
Manual Band Adjustment (Manual Band Adj) 556
Banding Adjustment During Printing (Fine Band Adj.) 558
Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length) 559
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth) 561

Maintenance 562

Ink Tanks 562
Ink Tanks 562
Replacing Ink Tanks 563
Checking Ink Tank Levels 574
When to Replace Ink Tanks 575

Printheads 576
Printhead 576
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 577
Cleaning the Printhead 578
Replacing the Printhead 579

Maintenance Cartridge 585
Maintenance Cartridge 585
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 586
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 594
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 595

Cleaning the Printer 596
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 596
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 597
Cleaning the Printhead 600

Other Maintenance 601
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 601
Updating the Firmware 606

Troubleshooting 607

Frequently Asked Questions 607
Frequently Asked Questions 607
Problems Regarding Paper 610
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 610
Clearing a Jammed Sheet 613
Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found 615
Roll Paper Cannot be Inserted into the Paper Feed Slot 618
Cannot Load Sheets 618
Paper is not cut straight 618
Paper is not cut 618
Printing does not start 619
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 619
The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent 619
The display screen indicates the system is filling with ink 619
The printer stops during a print job 620
An error message is shown on the Display Screen 620
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper 620
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving) 620
Problems with the printing quality 621
Printing is faint 621
Paper rubs against the printhead 622
The edges of the paper are dirty 623
The surface of the paper is dirty 624
The back side of the paper is dirty 624
Printed colors are inaccurate 625
Banding in different colors occurs 626
Colors in printed images are uneven 627
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs 628
Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen 629
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 631
The length of printed images is inaccurate 631
Documents are printed crooked 631
Documents are printed in monochrome 632
Line thickness is not uniform 632
Lines are misaligned 633
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper 633
Cannot print over a network 634
Cannot connect the printer to the network 634
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 635
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 636
Cannot print over a NetWare network 636
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks 637

Installation problems 638
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly 638
Removing Installed Printer Drivers 639
HP-GL/2 problems 640
Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed. 640
Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing 640
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color). 640
Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing 640
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time. 640
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving) 641
Other problems 642
The printer does not go on 642
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound 643
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared 644
The printer consumes a lot of ink 644
Ink level detection 645

Error Message 647

Responding to Messages 647
Responding to Messages 647
Error Messages 648
Messages regarding paper 650
Papr Type Mismatch 650
PaprTypeMismatch 650
The paper is too small. 651
RollWdthMismatch 651
Paper size not detected. 652
Insufficient paper for job 653
This paper cannot be used. 653
Cannot print as selected. Another roll is in use. 653
Roll printing is selected. 654
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded. 654
Roll x is empty. (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower)) 655
No Roll Unit. 656
Sheet removed. 656
Sheet printing is selected. 656
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded. 656
Paper jam. 657
Roll x jam (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower)) 657
Paper loaded askew. 658
Paper cutting failed. 659
End of paper feed. 659
Rel lever is in wrong position. 659
Borderless printng not possible. 660
Roll feed unit error. 660
The roll feed unit is loose. 661

Messages regarding ink.....662
Ink insufficient.....662
No ink left. 662
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. 662
Close Ink Tank Cover 662
Ink tank is empty.....663
Not much ink is left. 663
No ink tank loaded.....663
Wrong ink tank.....663
The display screen indicates Agitating 664
Messages regarding printing or adjusment.....665
Use another paper.....665
Cannot print as specified.....665
Cannot adjust band. 666
Cannot adjust printhead. 666
Borderless printng not possible. Paper stretched or shrank.....667
Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch.....667
Blue platen switch is dirty. 667
Messages regarding printheads 668
Cannot adjust printhead. 668
Cannot adjust band. 668
PHead needs cleaning. 669
Wrong printhead.....669
Problem with Printhead 669
Printhead error 669
No printhead.....669
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge.....670
Insert the maintenance cartridge.....670
Wrong maintenance cartridge. 670
Prepare for maint cart replacement.....670
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.....670
Maintenance cartridge full. 670
Maintenance cartridge problem.....670
Messages regarding the hard disk.....671
Hard disk error.....671
File read error. 671
The mail box is full. 671
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.....671
Mail box nearly full.....671
Maximum jobs stored. 672
Too many jobs for mail box.....672
Messages regarding HP-GL/2 673
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2. 673
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) 673
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.....673
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported. 673

Other Messages 674
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number).....674
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number).....674
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number).....674
Top cover is open. 674
Prepare for parts replacement.....675
Parts replacement time has passed. 675
Unknown file.....675
Multi-sensor error 675
No Roll Unit. 675

Introduction

How to use this manual

About This User Manual

- Symbols

  The following symbols are used in this User Manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Important	Indicates important information that must be followed when using the printer. Be sure to read this information to prevent printer damage or operating errors.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury or damage to equipment or property. To ensure safe use, always follow these precautions.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

  Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Control panel buttons	Example: Press the **OK** button.
Control panel messages	Example: **Head Cleaning** is displayed.
Software interface items (Menus and Buttons)	Example: Click **OK**.
Keyboard keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Part names

  Names of printer parts are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Printer part names	Example: Open the Top Cover.

- Cross-reference

  Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Cross-reference in the same User Manual	Example: see “Turning the Printer On and Off”. (→P.25) Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-reference in related manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide .
Other cross-reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

- Figures and software screens
  - Figures in this User Manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
  - Screens depicted in this User Manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
  - Windows XP screens are used in explanations of Windows operations in this User Manual.
- Trademarks
  - Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.
  - Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
  - Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
  - Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Copyright

  © 2008 Canon Inc.
  - Unauthorized reproduction of this User Manual in whole or part is prohibited.
- May we request

  Thank you for understanding the following points.
  - The information in this User Manual is subject to change without notice.
  - We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this User Manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

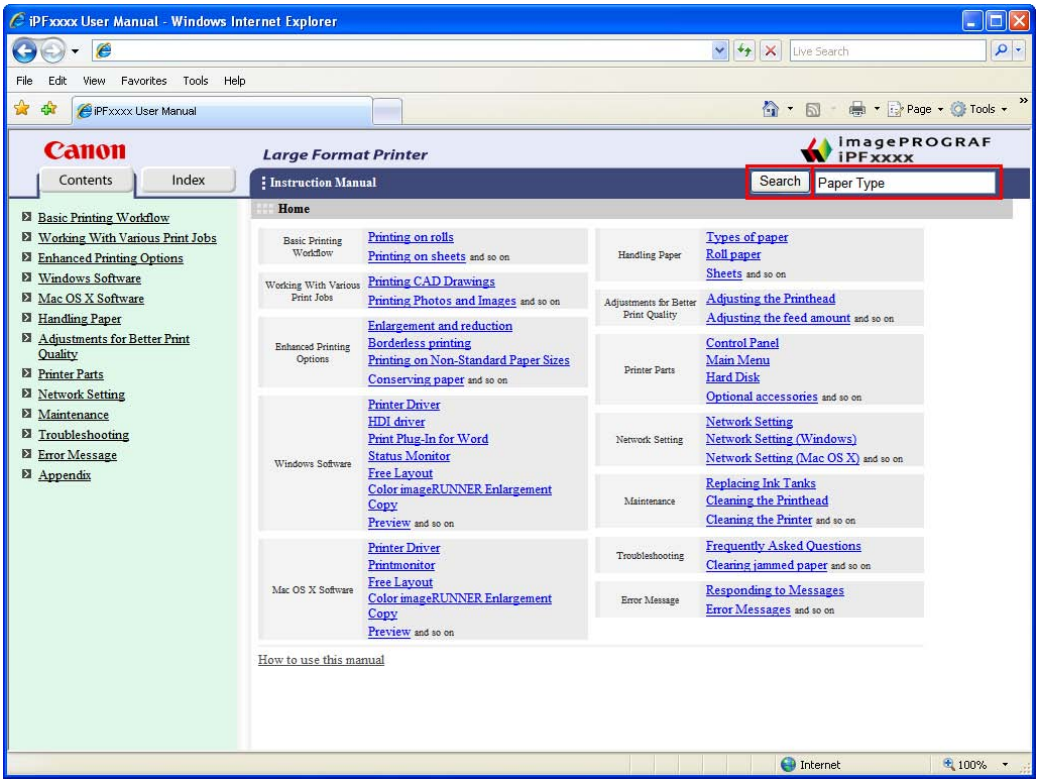
Searching Topics

You can find information in topics of this User Manual by searching for relevant terms.

1. Enter a term and click the **Search** button.

Note

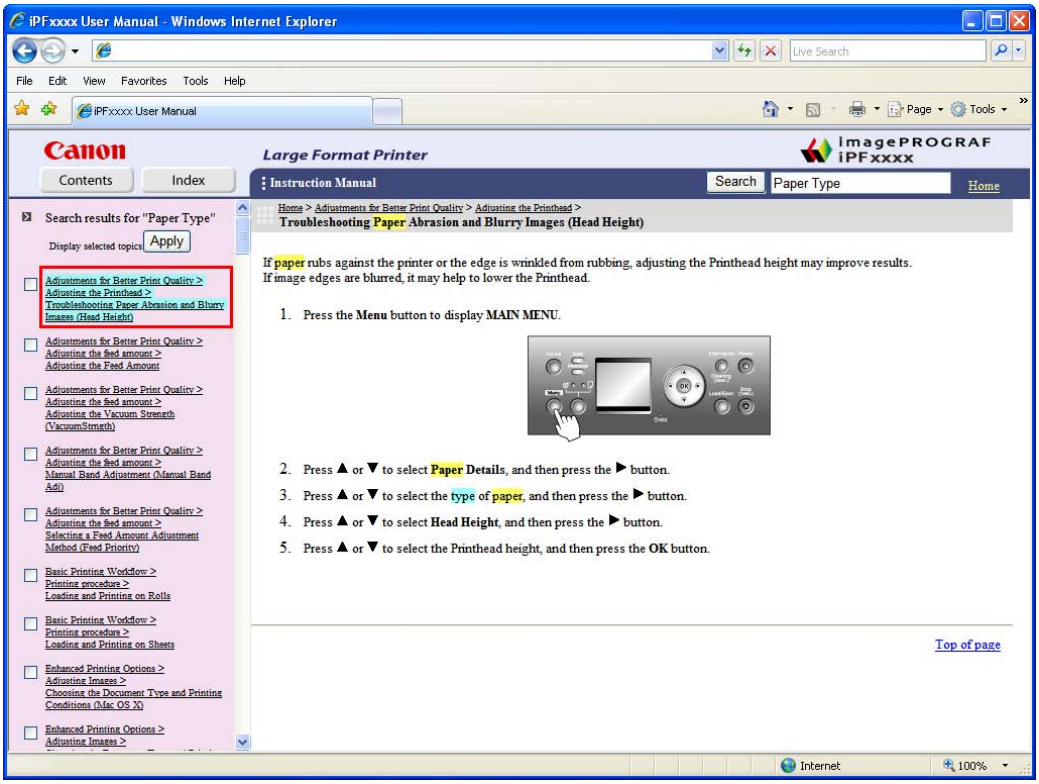
- To search for multiple terms at once, enter a space between each term.



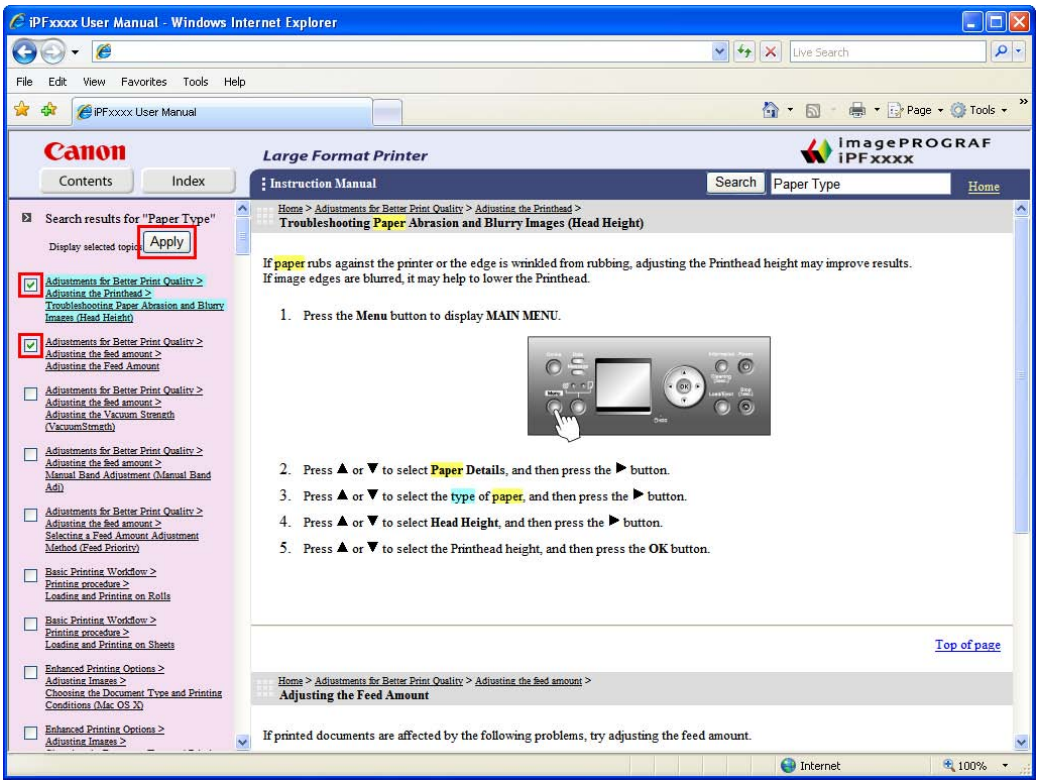
Search results are listed at left.

2. Click a topic you want to read.

The terms you searched for will be highlighted in the topic.



To review multiple topics at once, select the check box of desired topics and click the **Apply** button.



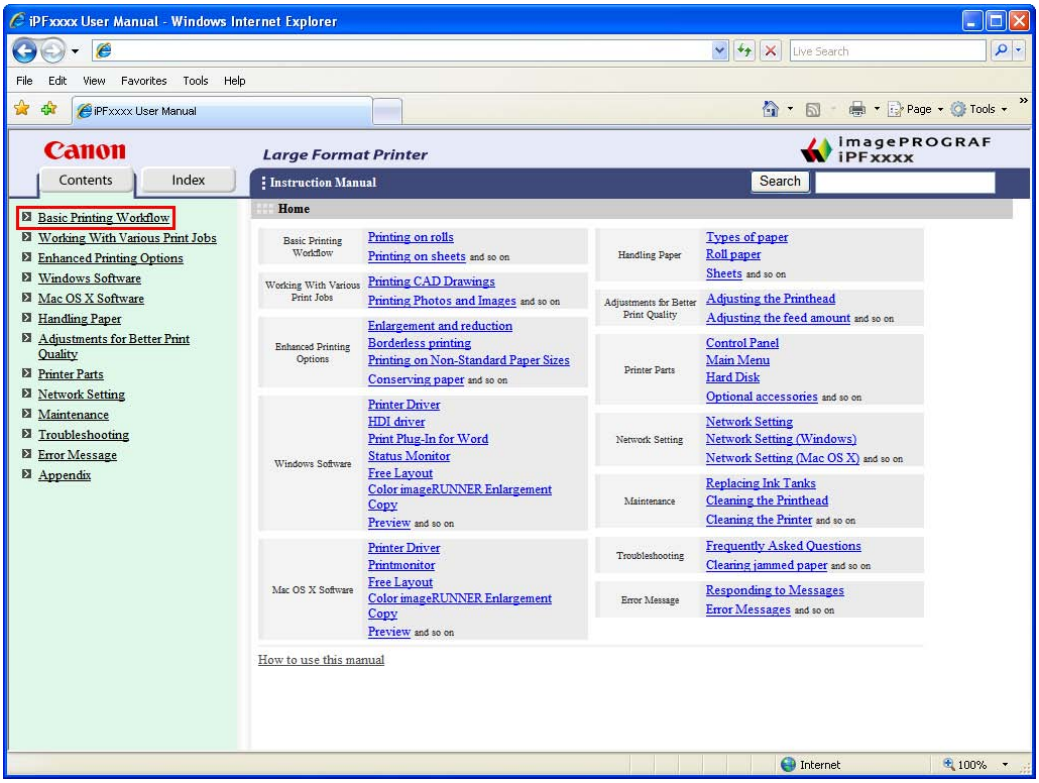
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

You can select a group of topics in the table of contents or individual topics in this manual for printing.
The following procedure describes how to do this, using the information in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

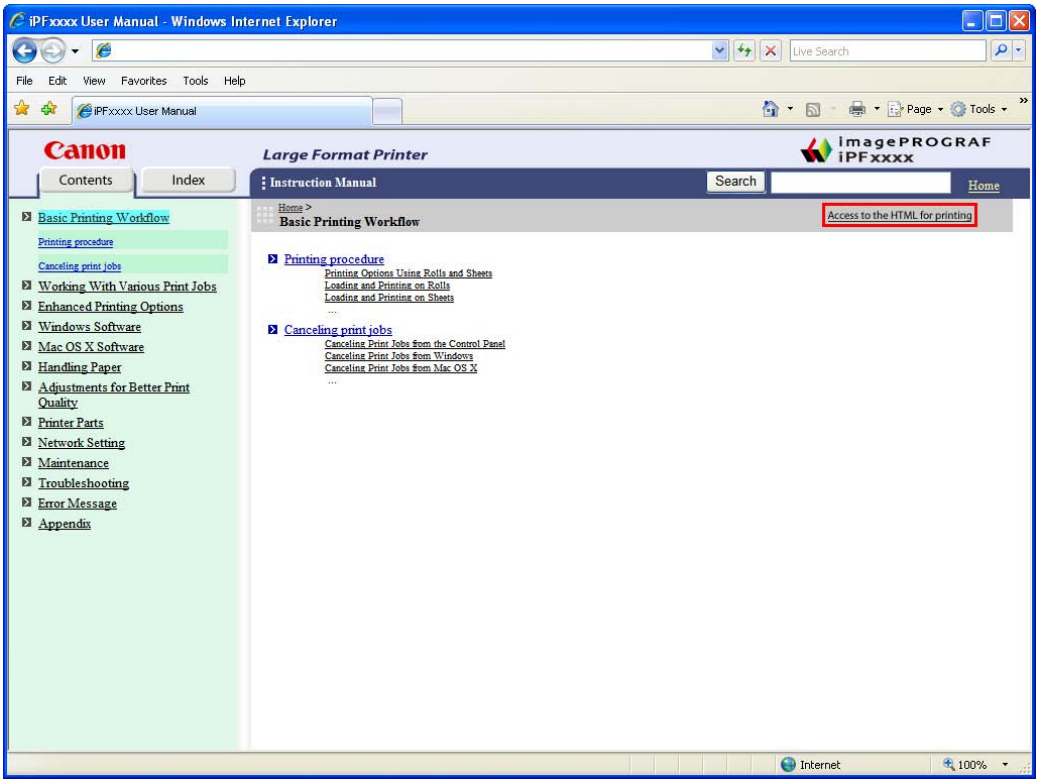
Printing a group of topics in the manual

When you access printable HTML versions of the content from section titles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

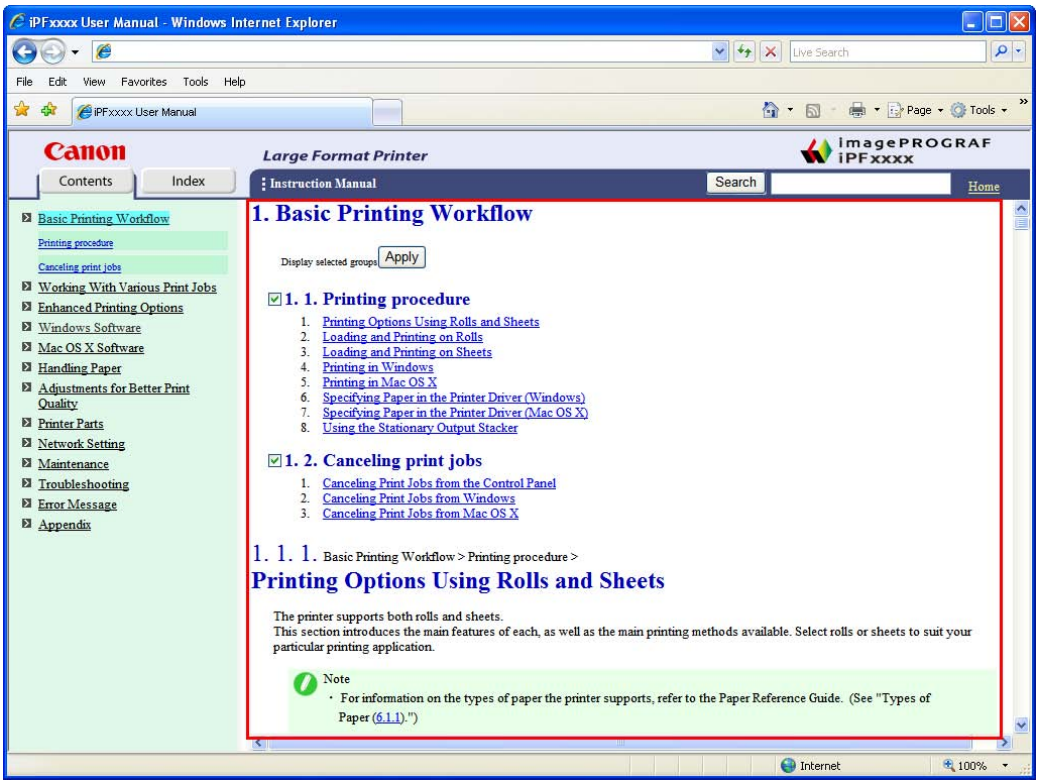
1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.



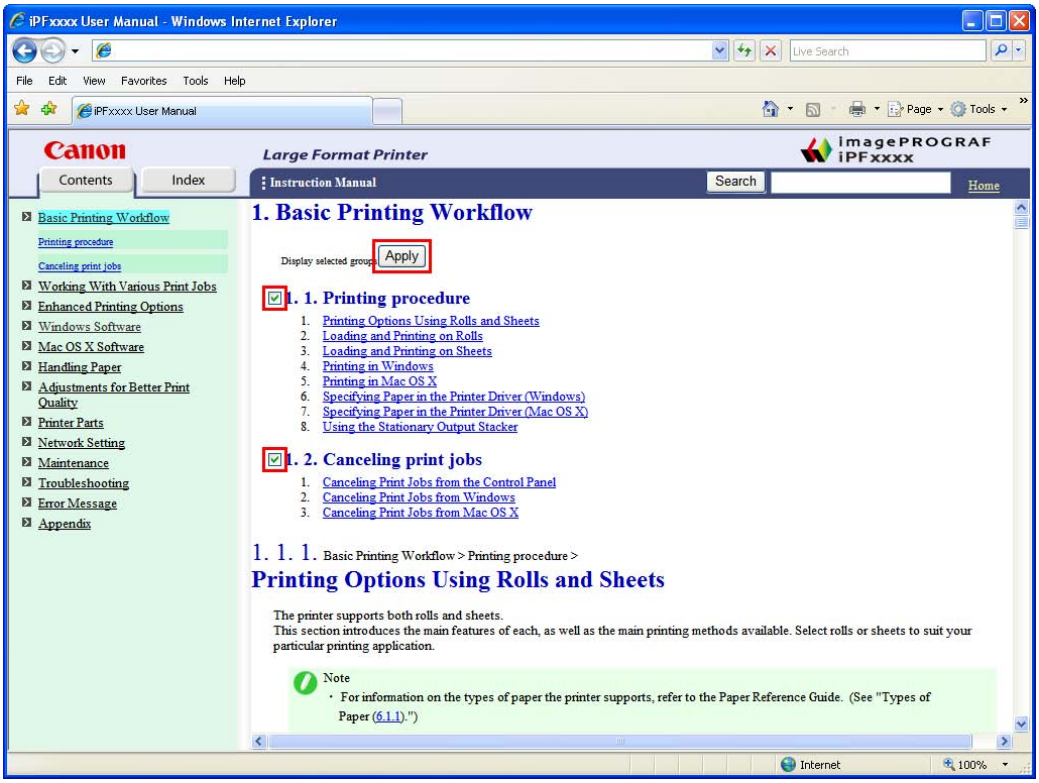
2. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.



The topics in **Basic Printing Workflow** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.



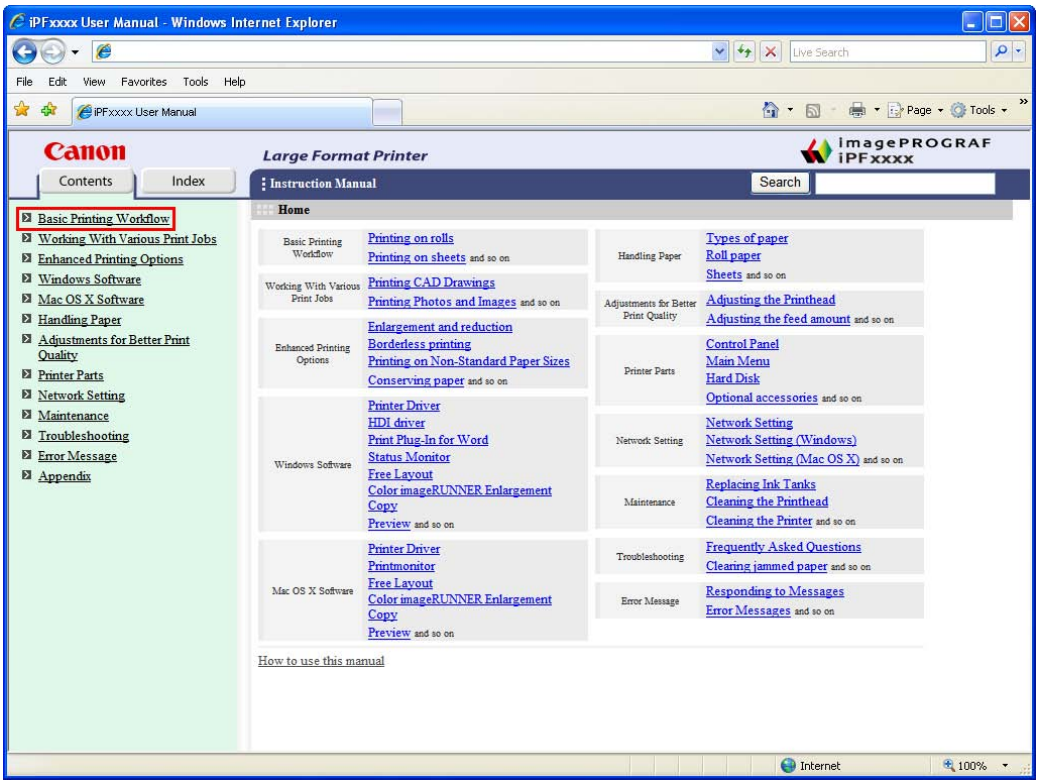
3. Clear the sections you will not print and click the **Apply** button.



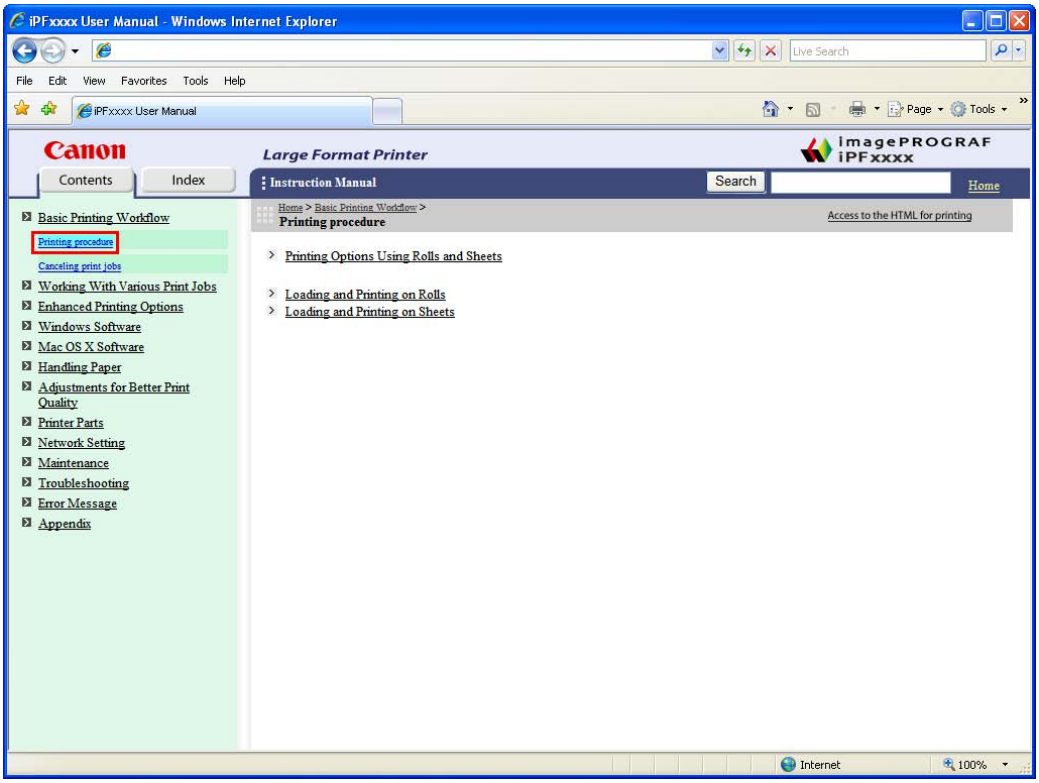
Printing a group of individual topics in the manual

When you access printable HTML versions from subtitles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

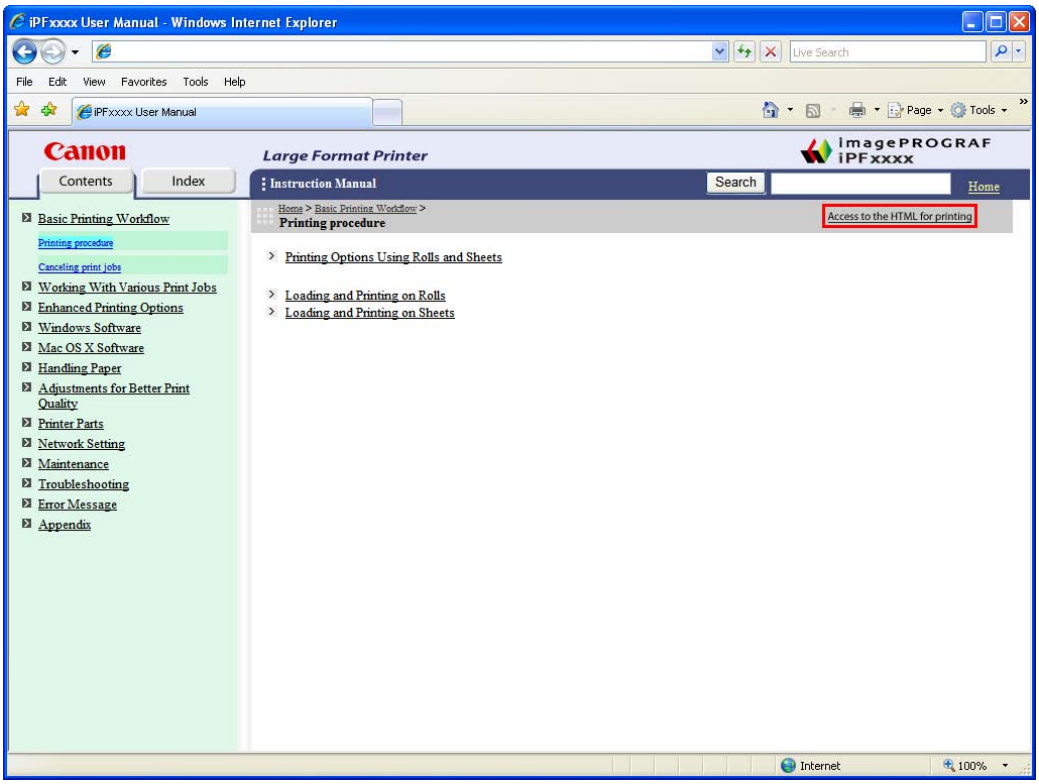
1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.



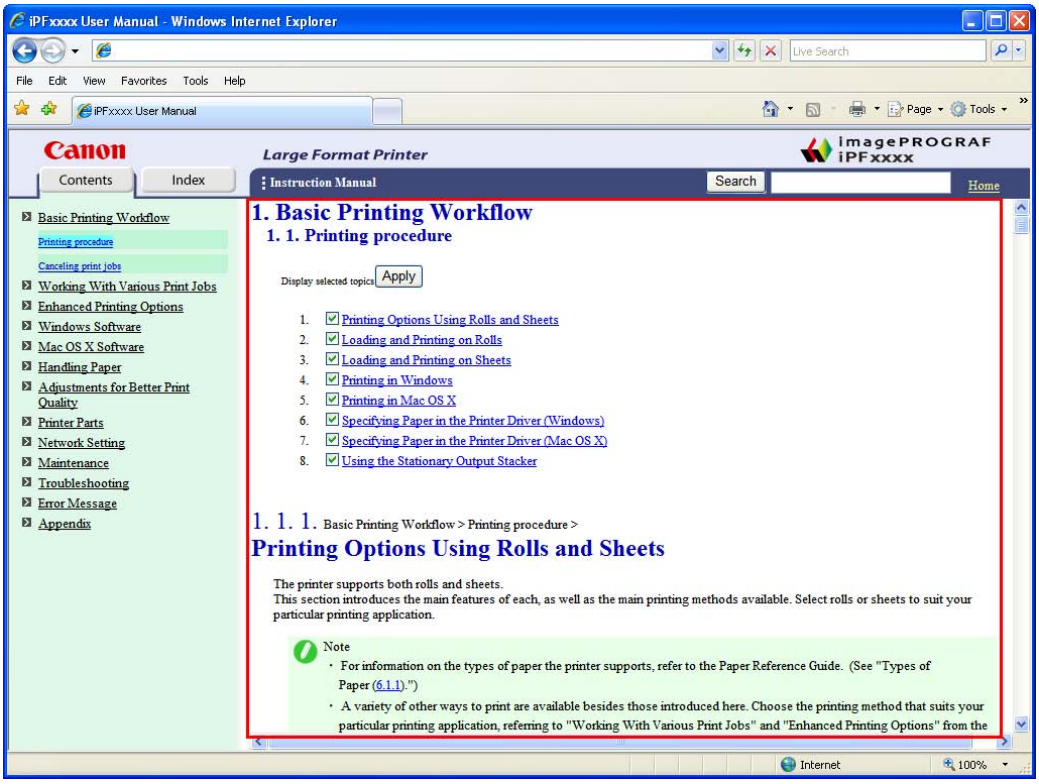
2. Under **Basic Printing Workflow**, click **Printing Procedure**.



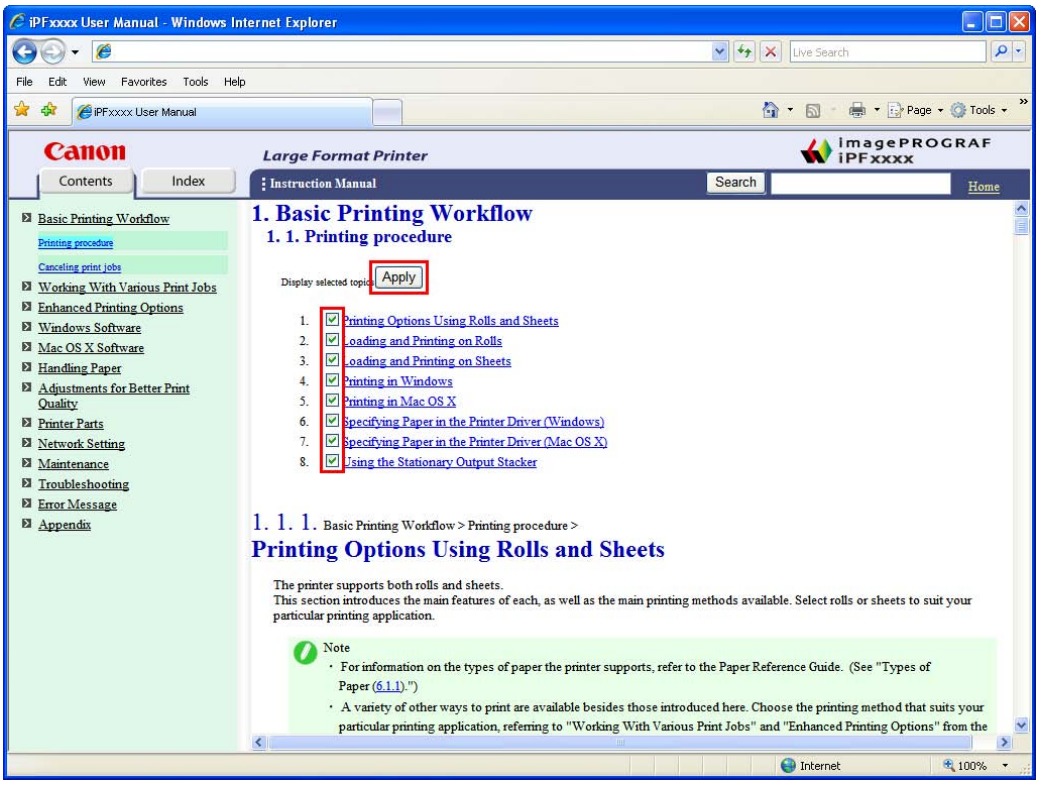
3. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.



The topics in **Printing Procedure** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.



4. Clear the topics you will not print and click the **Apply** button.

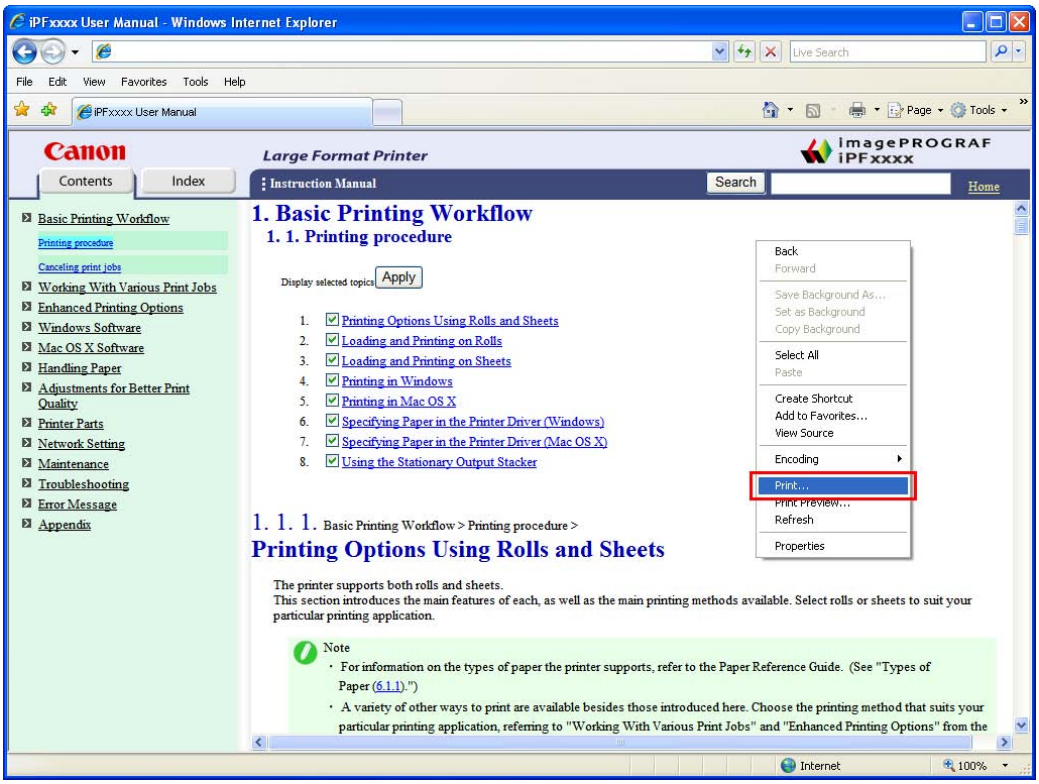


Printing selected topics

Print selected topics as follows.

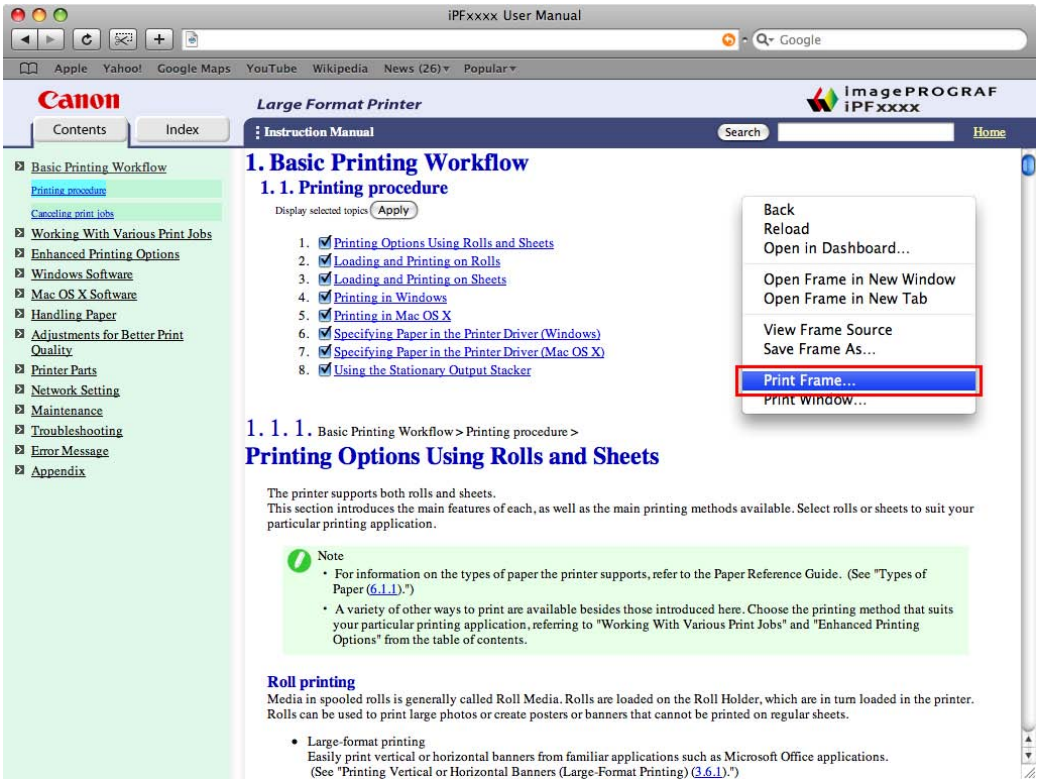
1. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.
   - Windows

     In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link.In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.



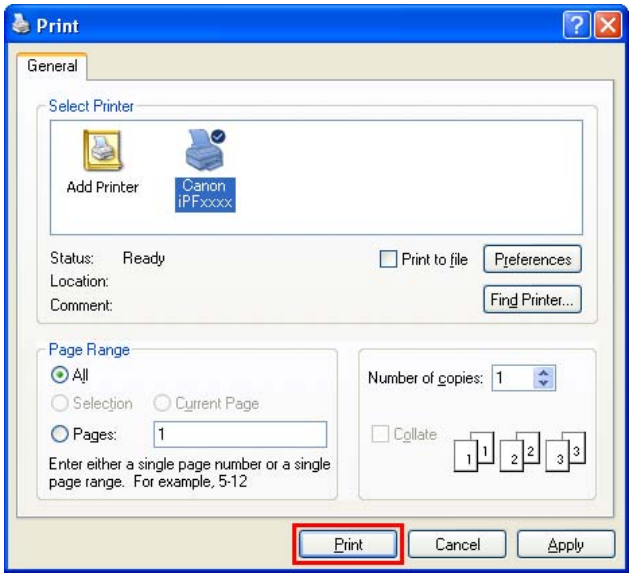
- Macintosh

  On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.

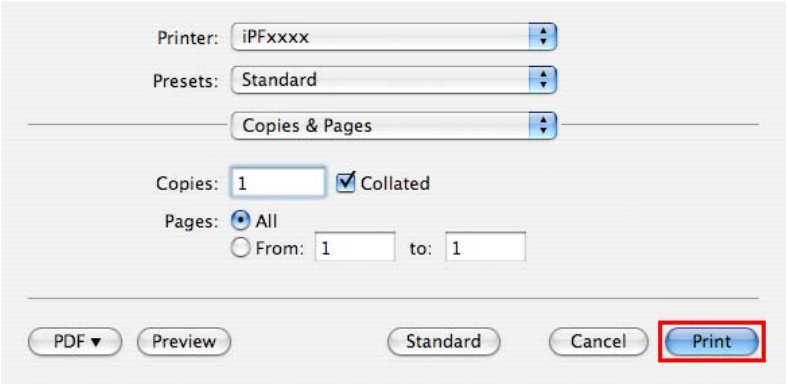


2. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print** (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).

- Windows



- Macintosh



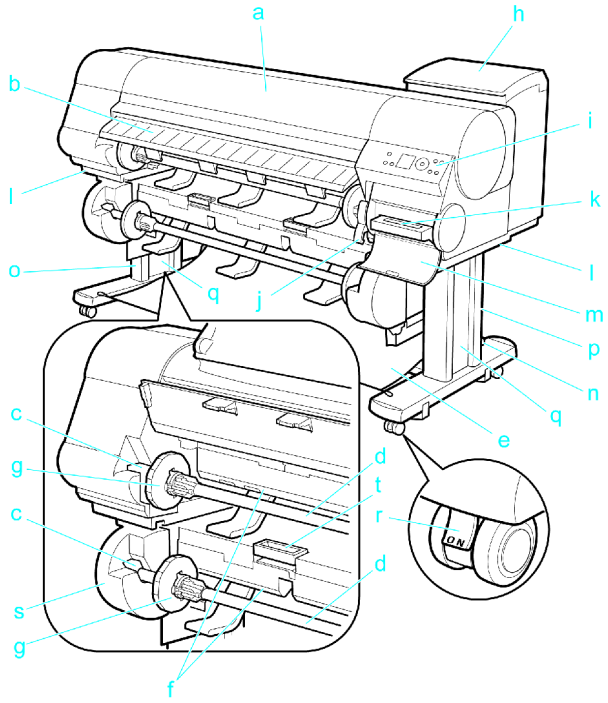
Note

- To print only individual topics that are displayed, use this method.

Printer Parts

Printer parts

Front



a. Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead, load paper, and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer as needed. (→P.16)

b. Ejection Guide

Guides printed documents as they are ejected. Open this guide when loading a roll.

c. Roll Holder Slot

Slide the Roll Holder into this slot.

d. Roll Holder

Load the roll on this holder.

e. Protective Cloth for Sheets

A cloth tray that catches ejected sheets.

f. Paper Feed Slot

When loading a roll, insert the edge of the roll paper here. You can load rolls in two positions, on the printer side in the Roll 1 (Upper) position and on the roll unit side in the Roll 2 (Lower) position.

g. Holder Stopper

Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.

h. Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace an Ink Tank. (→P.19)

i. Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (→P.21)

j. Release Lever

Releases the Paper Retainer. Lift this lever toward the front of the printer when loading paper.

k. Maintenance Cartridge

Ink used for maintenance purposes such as head cleaning is absorbed. (Replace the cartridge when it is full.)

l. Carrying Handles

When carrying the printer, have six people hold it by these handles under both sides.

m. Maintenance Cartridge Cover

Open this cover to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

n. Stand

A stand that holds the printer. Equipped with casters to facilitate moving it.

o. Stand L

The left leg of the Stand.

p. Stand R

The right leg of the Stand.

q. Leg Covers

Covers for Stand L and Stand R.

r. Stopper

Locks the Stand casters.

Always release the Stopper before moving the printer. Moving the printer while the Stopper is locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

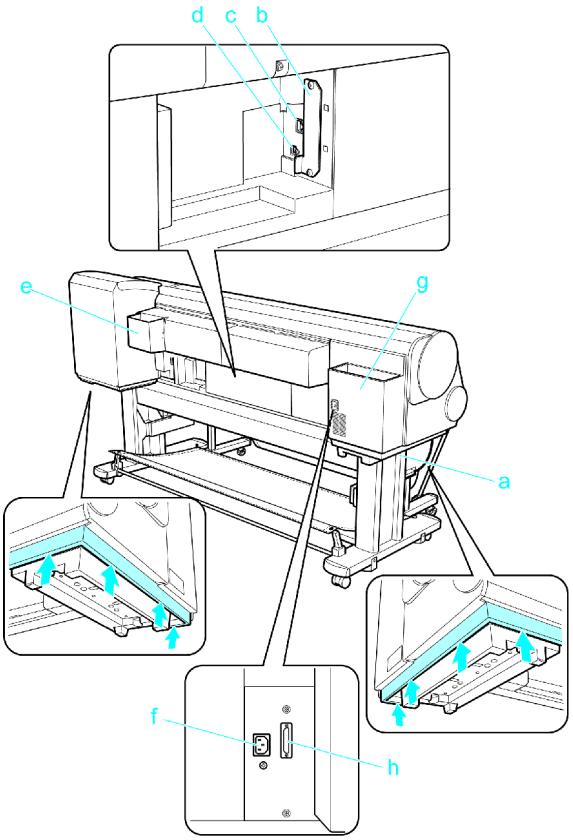
s. Roll Unit

A unit for loading two rolls.

t. Roll Unit Lever

Hold this lever to pull out the Roll Unit.

Back



a. Carrying Handles

When carrying the printer, have six people hold it by these handles under both sides.

b. Expansion Board Slots

Install an optional IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board, as desired.

c. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port. The lamp is lit if the Ethernet cable is connected correctly and communication is possible between the computer and printer.

d. USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. The printer is compatible with Hi-Speed USB connections.

e. Manual Pocket

Store printer manuals in this pocket.

f. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

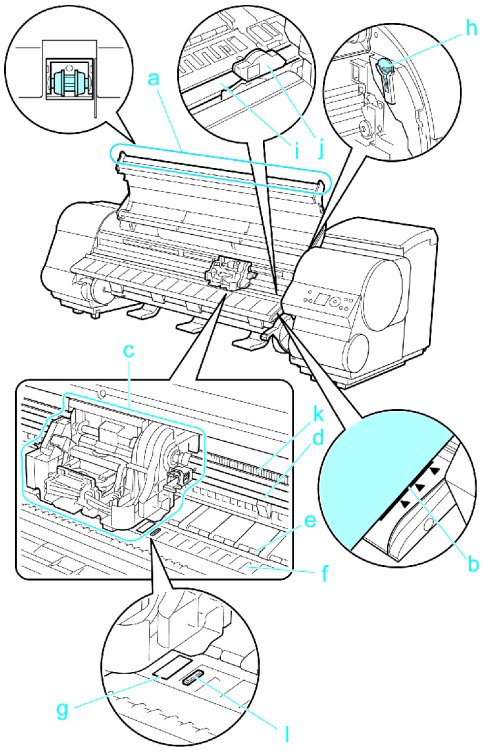
g. Accessory Pocket

Store assembly tools, Roll Holder attachments, and other items in this pocket.

h. Roll Unit Power Supply Inlet

Connect the Roll Unit power cord to this inlet.

Top Cover (Inside)



a. Top Cover Roller

Prevents paper from rising when ejected.

b. Paper Alignment Line

Align paper with this line when loading it.

c. Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (→P.18)

d. Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

e. Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

f. Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

g. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

h. Cleaning Brush

When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

Also use the brush to move the blue Switch on the Platen.

i. Cutter Rail

The Cutter Unit passes over this rail to cut paper.

j. Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic paper cutting.

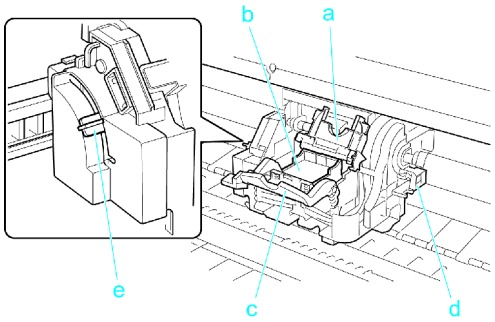
k. Linear Scale

The linear scale serves a key role in detecting the Carriage position. Be careful not to touch this part when cleaning inside the Top Cover or clearing paper jams.

l. Switch

Set the switch to the side opposite ● if the edges of printed images are blurred. Set the switch to the ● side before borderless printing. (→P.629)

Carriage



a. Printhead Fixer Cover

Holds the Printhead in place.

b. Printhead

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. The carriage serves a key role in printing.

c. Printhead Fixer Lever

Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.

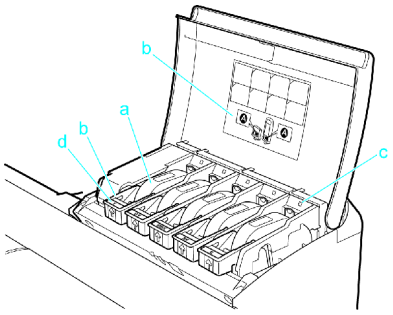
d. Shaft Cleaner

Prevents the Carriage Shaft from becoming dirty.

e. Angle Adjustment Lever

Use this lever to fine-tune the printer to correct misalignment of printed lines.

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)



Note: The figure shows the printer as loaded with 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tank.

a. Ink Tanks

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

b. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and lower the lever when replacing an Ink Tank. To open it, lift the stopper of the lever until it stops, and then push it down toward the front. To close it, push it down until it clicks into place.

c. Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

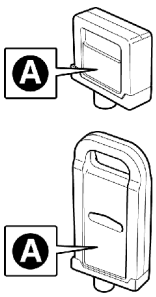
- On
  The Ink Tank is installed correctly.
- Off
  No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is disabled.
- Flashing Slowly
  Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly
  Ink tank is empty.

d. Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank that matches the color and name on this label.

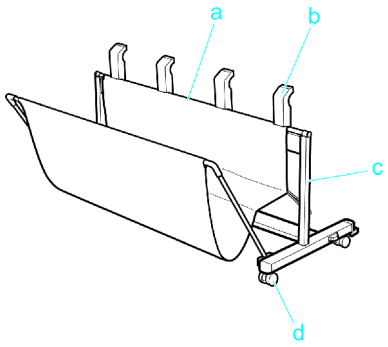
e. Ink Set

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “A” is printed on the label. (→P.562)



Wheeled Output Stacker

An output stacker with casters, positioned in front of the printer.



a. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents.

The Output Stacker can be opened and closed using the rod in front.

b. Output Stacker Ejection Guides

Prevent printed documents from winding around the Roll Holder or being drawn into the Paper Feed Slot.

Hold the Wheeled Output Stacker by these guides when moving it.

c. Output Stacker Foot Stand

Equipped with casters to facilitate moving it.

d. Stopper

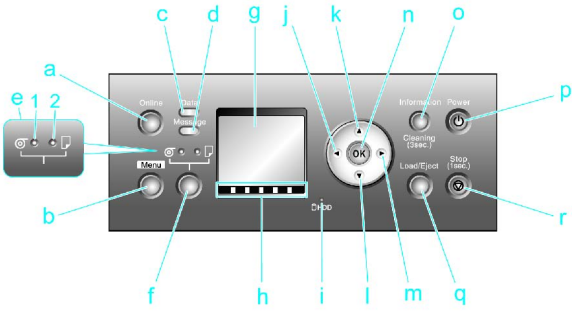
Locks the Stand casters.

Always release the Stopper before moving the printer. Moving the printer while the Stopper is locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

Note

- For instructions on assembling the Wheeled Output Stacker, see the setup guide provided with the Wheeled Output Stacker.

Control Panel



a. **Online** Button (Green)

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.32)

- On
  The printer is online.
- Flashing
  The printer is switching modes.
- Off
  The printer is offline.

b. **Menu** Button

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.53)

c. Data lamp (Green)

- Flashing
  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

d. Message lamp (Orange)

- On
  A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
  An error message is displayed.
- Off
  The printer is off or is operating normally.

e. Paper Source Section

After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

1. **Roll Media lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
2. **Cut Sheet lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.

f. **Feeder Selection** Button

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll and the sheet, and the corresponding lamp on the Paper Source Section is lit.

g. Display Screen

Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

h. Color Label

This label indicates the Ink Tank color. The label corresponds to the ink level on the Display Screen.

i. **HDD lamp** (Green)

- On
  Indicates the printer is accessing the hard disk.
- Off
  Indicates the printer is not accessing the hard disk.

j. ◄ Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

k. ▲ Button

Offline: Press this button to rewind rolls manually. (→P.135)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

l. ▼ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to feed the roll manually in the direction of ejection, as needed. (→P.135)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

m. ► Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

n. **OK** Button

In Menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting. Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

o. **Information** Button

Displays printer submenus. Press this button to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.67)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

p. **Power** Button

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.25)

q. **Load/Eject** Button

By pressing this button, you can check instructions on loading and removing paper. Instructions for loading paper are shown on the Display Screen if pressed when no paper is loaded, and instructions for removing paper are shown if paper is loaded.

r. **Stop** Button

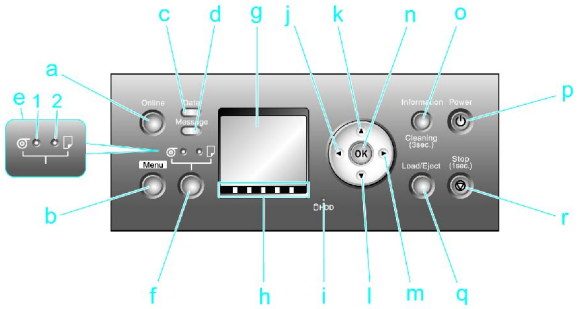
Hold down for at least a second to cancel print jobs in progress or end the ink drying period.

Note

- In Sleep mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to bring the printer online again.

Control Panel

Control Panel



a. **Online** Button (Green)

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.32)

- On
  The printer is online.
- Flashing
  The printer is switching modes.
- Off
  The printer is offline.

b. **Menu** Button

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.53)

c. Data lamp (Green)

- Flashing
  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

d. Message lamp (Orange)

- On
  A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
  An error message is displayed.
- Off
  The printer is off or is operating normally.

e. Paper Source Section

After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

1. **Roll Media lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
2. **Cut Sheet lamp** (Green)
   - On
     Indicates that a sheet is selected as the paper source.
   - Off
     Indicates that a roll is selected as the paper source.

f. **Feeder Selection** Button

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between the roll and the sheet, and the corresponding lamp on the Paper Source Section is lit.

g. Display Screen

Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

h. Color Label

This label indicates the Ink Tank color. The label corresponds to the ink level on the Display Screen.

i. **HDD lamp** (Green)

- On
  Indicates the printer is accessing the hard disk.
- Off
  Indicates the printer is not accessing the hard disk.

j. ◄ Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

k. ▲ Button

Offline: Press this button to rewind rolls manually. (→P.135)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

l. ▼ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to feed the roll manually in the direction of ejection, as needed. (→P.135)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

m. ► Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

n. **OK** Button

In Menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting. Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

o. **Information** Button

Displays printer submenus. Press this button to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.67)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

p. **Power** Button

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.25)

q. **Load/Eject** Button

By pressing this button, you can check instructions on loading and removing paper. Instructions for loading paper are shown on the Display Screen if pressed when no paper is loaded, and instructions for removing paper are shown if paper is loaded.

r. **Stop** Button

Hold down for at least a second to cancel print jobs in progress or end the ink drying period.

Note

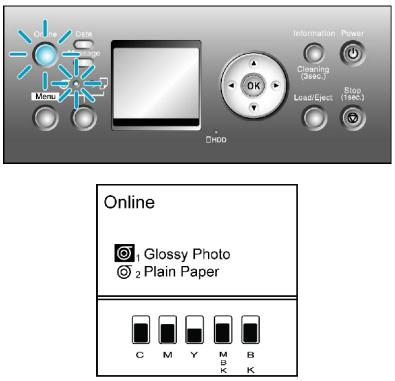
- In Sleep mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to bring the printer online again.

Turning the Printer On and Off

Turning the printer on

1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
   The printer will now start up.
   After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, **Starting up... Please wait.** is displayed.

2. The printer goes online in preparation for printing after startup, and the Online lamp and paper source section lamp remain lit.



The printer will not go online in the following situations. Take action as needed.

- The Top Cover is open
  Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
  Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
  Please see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.579)
- Ink Tank is not installed
  Please see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.563)
- “ERROR” is shown on the Display Screen
  Turn off the printer and contact your Canon dealer.
- The Online lamp and Message lamp are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen
  Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.
- No paper is loaded
  Load paper. (→P.89) (→P.93)

Important

- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Turning the printer off

Important

- Never disconnect the printer's power supply or unplug it during a print job. This could damage the printer.

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   If the Message lamp is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.648)

   If the Data lamp is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.

2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.

   After **Shut Down.. Please Wait..** is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Printer Modes

Printer modes are classified as follows and described in this topic.

- Modes (→P.27)
- Mode transition (→P.28)
- Online, and state of the Control Panel (→P.29)
- Offline, and state of the Control Panel (→P.29)
- Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.30)
- Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.31)

Modes

The printer has five modes as follows:

- Online

  The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are processed immediately. If jobs are received in other modes, they are printed the next time the printer goes online.
- Offline

  Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.

  While the printer is offline, you can feed or cut roll paper manually.

  The printer goes offline automatically if jobs cannot be processed, such as if errors occur.
- Menu mode

  Menus are displayed on the printer, and you can select, set, or execute menu items. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
- Submenu mode

  Submenus are displayed regarding ink and paper information. Jobs can be received and printing is possible while submenus are displayed and the printer is online. In other modes, any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed while submenus are displayed.
- Sleep mode

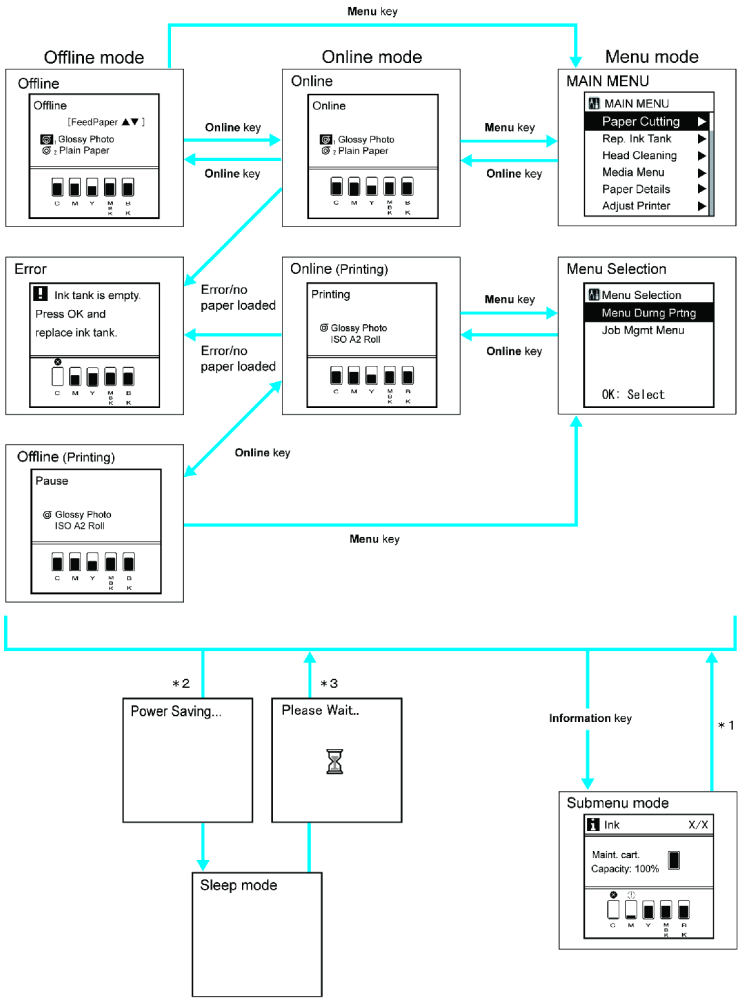
  The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed.

  You can specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (→P.53)

  If any print jobs are received when the printer is in Sleep mode (after it was originally online), the printer goes online and prints the jobs.

Mode transition

The printer mode transitions are as follows:

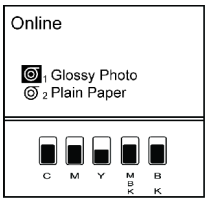
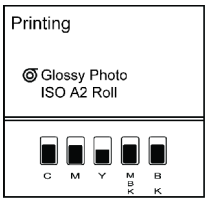


*1: When submenus are displayed, you can press any button other than the **Information** button to return to the previous mode.

*2: The printer automatically enters Sleep mode if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter Sleep mode while error messages are displayed.

*3: In Sleep mode, the printer can be restored to the previous state by pressing any button. Sleep mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

Online, and state of the Control Panel

Not printing	Printing in progress (receiving or processing print jobs)
	

Display Screen

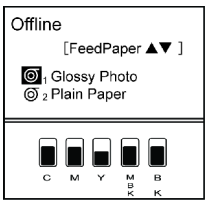
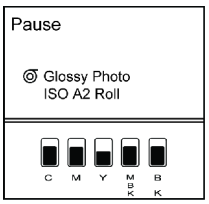
- Top Line of the Display Screen
  The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon to the left of the type of paper.
- Middle Level of the Display Screen
  The first and second lines display the paper type and size.
  Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take the appropriate action. (→P.648)
- Bottom Line of the Display Screen
  Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.574)

Control Panel

- Online lamp
  Lit when the printer is online.
- Data lamp
  Flashes when print jobs are being received or processed.
- Message lamp
  Lit when warning messages are displayed.

Offline, and state of the Control Panel

Offline

Not printing	Printing is paused
	

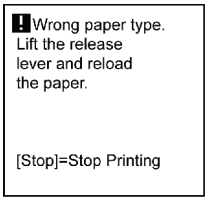
Display Screen

- Display Screen
  The printer status is displayed here. The selected paper source is indicated by an icon to the left of the type of paper.
- Middle Level of the Display Screen
  The first and second lines display the paper type and size.
  Any warning messages are displayed here on lines 2-4. Take the appropriate action. (→P.648)
- Bottom Line of the Display Screen
  Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.574)

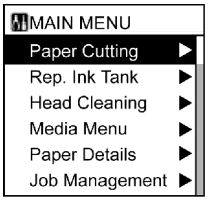
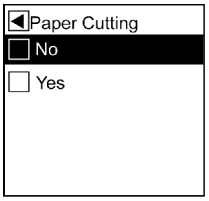
Control Panel

- Message lamp
  Lit when warning messages are displayed.

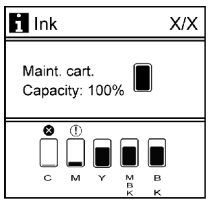
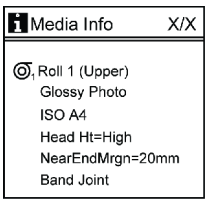
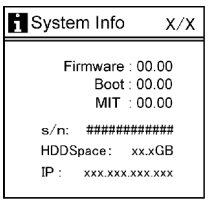
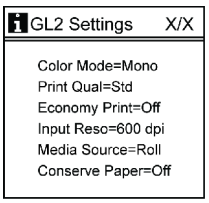
Error Messages

If action can be taken		If no action can be taken	
			
• Top Line of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Line of the Display Screen Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.574)	• Top Line of the Display Screen Error messages are displayed. • Bottom Line of the Display Screen The corrective actions are displayed here.	• Top Line of the Display Screen The error message is displayed with the following instructions: **Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again.**.	• Display Screen "ERROR" is displayed, followed by the error code and **Call for service.**.
• Data lamp Flashes when print jobs are being received. • Message lamp Flashes when error messages are displayed.		• Data lamp Flashes when print jobs are being received. • Message lamp Flashes when error messages are displayed.	
Take the appropriate action. (→P.648)		Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.	

Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Main menu	Menu items and settings	Main menu (during printing)
		
• Display Screen Pressing the **Menu** button when printing is not in progress displays the main menu. The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. Lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. (→P.36)	• Display Screen The title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menu items or settings are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. (→P.36) The menu of options available during printing (top figure) can be displayed by pressing the ► button when the main menu is displayed (left figure).	• Display Screen Menus available during printing are displayed if you press the **Menu** button during printing. If you select a menu, the title of the selected menu is displayed on the first line, and menus immediately under the current menu are displayed on the second and subsequent lines. Lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. (→P.36)

Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels	Information on the loaded paper	Printer information	HP-GL/2 setting information
			
Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, printer information, and GL2 settings information. (→P.67)			

Switching Modes

Switching the Printer Online/Offline

Press the **Online** button to switch the printer online or offline.

The Online lamp is lit in Online mode. Printing is possible in this mode.

The Online lamp is off in Offline mode.

Depending on the status, the printer switches online and offline as follows.

Printer Status	When Online is Pressed
Online	The printer switches offline and the Online lamp goes off.
Online, printing	Switches offline and printing is paused. When printing is paused, the **Printing** menu is available.
Offline	If paper has been advanced, the printer goes online and the Online lamp is lit.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	In the case of error messages other than those shown below or if paper is not loaded, the printer remains offline until you solve the problem. The Online lamp remains off.
	If the following error messages are displayed, the printer goes online and printing is resumed. • **Insufficient paper for job** • **PHead needs cleaning.** • **Papr Size Mismatch** • **Papr Type Mismatch**
Menu mode	If paper has been advanced, the printer goes online and the Online lamp is lit.
Menu mode, printing	Switches online and the Online lamp is lit. Print is resumed.

Switching to Menu Mode

Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu.

Depending on the status, the printer switches to Menu mode as follows.

Printer Status	When Menu is Pressed
Online	Switches to Menu mode.
Online, printing	Either menus available during printing or a screen to manage print jobs is displayed. If you select a menu, the printer switches to that menu mode.
Offline	Switches to Menu mode.
Offline, printing	Menus available during printing are displayed.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	You cannot access Menu mode until the problem is solved.

Press the **Information** button to display the submenus.

Press the **Information** button to display the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, as well as information on the loaded paper and the printer. Press the **Information** button repeatedly to change the information displayed. (→P.67)

Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.

After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about ten seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Note

- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more. (→P.578)

Printer Menu Operations

The printer menu includes a main menu and submenus.

- Main menu operations when no print job is in progress (→P.34)
- Main menu operations during printing (→P.34)
- Submenu operations (→P.35)

Main menu operations when no print job is in progress

Access the main menu by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel.

Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed:
    Switches to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

The following operations are available from the main menu.

- Paper settings
- Print settings
- Printer settings
- HP-GL/2 settings
- Job management menu operations

For a description of specific items available in the main menu, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.53)
For instructions on selecting and setting main menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.36)

Note

- By default, main menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Main menu operations during printing

The **Menu Durng Prtng** and **Job Mgmt Menu** can be accessed from the **Menu Selection** screen by pressing the **Menu** button on the control panel during printing. Other menus are available after printing is finished.

Note

- The **Menu Selection** screen will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - An error message is displayed:
    Switches to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

The following operations are available from the main menu during printing.

Menu Durng Prtng

- Printhead cleaning
- Manual adjustment of the paper feed amount
- Display of printer-related information

Job Mgmt Menu

- Job management menu operations

For a description of specific items available in the main menu during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.66)
For instructions on selecting and setting main menu items during printing, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.36)

Submenu operations

Access submenus by pressing the **Information** button on the Control Panel. You can check the following information in submenus.

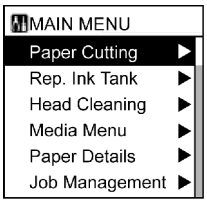
- Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity
- Ink levels
- Information on the loaded paper
- Printer information
- HP-GL/2 setting information

For a description of specific items displayed in submenus, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.67)

Main Menu Operations

Press the **Menu** button to display the main menu. For details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.53)

- Main menu (displayed if you press the **Menu** button when printing is not in progress)



- Menu selection (if you press the **Menu** button when printing is in progress)

Note

- The main menu will not be displayed in the following case even if you press the **Menu** button.
  - When an error message is displayed
    You can switch to Menu mode after the problem is solved.

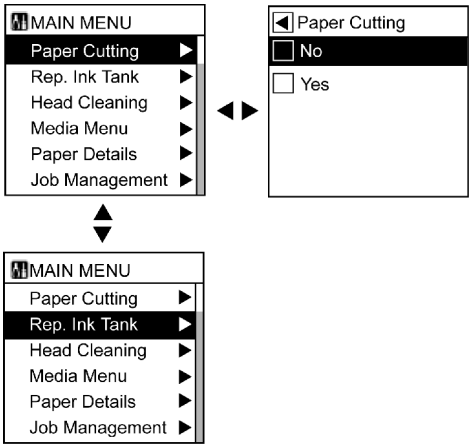
Simply press buttons on the Control Panel to access various function menus from the main menu and set or execute menu items.
The following section describes menu operations and how they are presented in this **User Manual**.

- Accessing menus (→P.37)
- Specifying menu items (→P.38)
- Specifying numerical values (→P.39)
- Executing menu commands (→P.39)

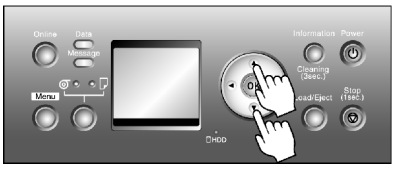
Accessing menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. Use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.

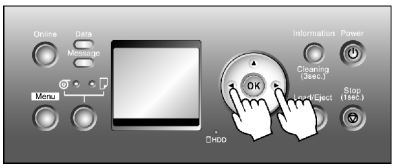


- Press ▲ to access a higher level menu on the same screen, and press ▼ to access a lower one. If not all menus can be displayed on the screen at once, press ▲ and ▼ to scroll the menu. Items you select are highlighted.



The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

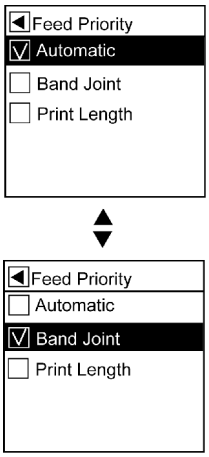
- Lower level menus are available if "►" is displayed at right. To access these lower level menus, select a menu and press ►.
- Upper level menus are available if "◄" is displayed at left in the top line. To access these upper level menus, press ◄.



Specifying menu items

Follow these steps to specify menu items.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
   Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a setting item to complete, and then press the **OK** button.
   The check box at left is selected, and the setting is confirmed.



   After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.
3. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

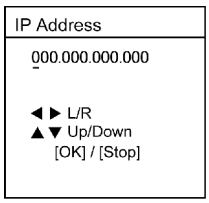
Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Specifying numerical values

Follow these steps to enter numbers. In this example, network settings items are entered.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
- Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.

7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to continue entering numbers.
8. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

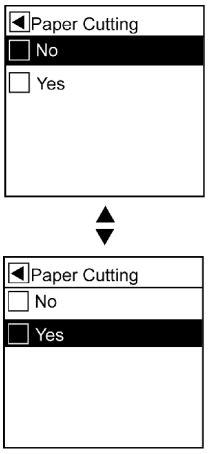
Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer goes online.

Executing menu commands

Follow these steps to execute menu commands.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a menu, and then press the ► button.
   Repeat these steps until the desired menu options are displayed.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a setting item to execute, and then press the **OK** button.



After two seconds, the menu command is executed. After commands are executed, in most cases the printer reverts to the state before the menu operation, either online or offline.

Menu Structure

Main Menu

The structure of the main menu is as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk "*" are the defaults.
For instructions on menu operations, see "Main Menu Operations". (→P.36)
For details on menu items, see "Main Menu Settings". (→P.53)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
Paper Cutting (*1)	**No** *				
	Yes				
Rep. Ink Tank	**No** *				
	Yes				
Head Cleaning	**Head Cleaning A** *				
	Head Cleaning B				
Paper Menu	**Cut Sheet Type**	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)			
	Roll1(Uppr) Type (*1)	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)			
	Roll1(Uppr) Lngth (*1, *2)	**### m**			
		### feet (*11)			
	Roll2 (Lwr) Type (*1)	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)			
	Roll2(Lwr) Lngth (*1, *2)	**### m** (*11)			
		### feet			
	ManageRemain Roll	**Off** *			
		On			
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*5)	**Roll DryingTime**	**Off**		
			30 sec.		
			1 min.		
			3 min.		
			5 min.		
			10 min.		
			30 min.		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			60 min.		
		Scan Wait Time	**Off**		
			1 sec.		
			3 sec.		
			5 sec.		
			7 sec.		
			9 sec.		
		Feed Priority	**Automatic** *		
			Band Joint		
			Print Length		
		Adjust Length A	From -0.70% to 0.70%		
		Adjust Length B	From -0.70% to 0.70%		
		Head Height	**Automatic** *		
			Highest		
			High		
			Standard		
			Low		
			Lowest		
		Skew Check Lv.	**Standard** *		
			Loose		
			Off		
		VacuumStrngth	**Automatic** *		
			Strongest		
			Strong		
			Standard		
			Weak		
			Weakest		
		Width Detection	**Off**		
			On *		
		NearEnd RollMrgn	**3mm**		
			20mm		
		Cut Speed	**Fast**		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			Standard		
			Slow		
		Trim Edge First	**Automatic**		
			Off		
			On		
		Cutting Mode	**Automatic**		
			Eject		
			Manual		
		Bordless Margin	**Automatic**		
			Fixed		
		CutDustReduct.	**Off**		
			On		
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	**3mm**		
			20mm		
		Return Defaults	**No**		
			Yes		
Job Management	**Print Job**	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Delete**	
				Preempt Jobs	
	Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**
					Delete
				Print Job List	**No**
					Yes
	Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**		
			User Name		
			Page Count		
			Job Status	**OK**	
				CANCELED	
			Print Start Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			Print End Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**	
			Print Time	**xxxsec.**	
			Print Size	**xxxxxxxxsq.mm**	
			Media Type		
			Interface	**USB**	
				Network	
				IEEE1394	
			Ink Consumed	**xx.x ml**	
	HDD Information	**HDDSpace** :xx.x GB			
GL2 Settings	**Color Mode**	**Monochrome**			
		Color (CAD) 1 *			
		Color (CAD) 2			
		Color (CAD) 3			
		Color (CAD) 4			
		Color (CAD) 5			
		Color (CAD) 6			
	Print Quality	**Fast**			
		Standard *			
		High			
	Print (Economy)	**Off** *			
		On			
	Input Resolution	**600dpi** *			
		300dpi			
	Paper Source	**Automatic** *			
		Roll 1 (Upper)			
		Roll 2 (Lower)			
		Cut Sheet			
	Conserve Paper	**Off** *			
		On			
	Line Cap	**Software** *			
		Rounded			
	Smoothing	**Software** *			
		Smooth			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
	Line Width	**1 dot**			
		2 dots			
		3 dots			
		4 dots *			
		5 dots			
		6 dots			
		7 dots			
	ThickenFine Lines	**Off** *			
		On			
	AdjustFaint Lines	**Off**			
		On *			
	Auto Rotate	**Off**			
		On *			
	Nesting	**Use Nesting**	**Off** *		
			On		
		Nesting WaitTime	1-99 minutes		
		Cut Lines	**Off** *		
			On		
	On-the-Fly	**Off** *			
		On			
Adjust Printer	**Auto Head Adj.**	**Standard Adj.**	**No**		
			Yes		
		Advanced Adj.	**No**		
			Yes		
		Auto Print	**Off**		
			On *		
	Manual Head Adj (*9)	**No**			
		Yes			
	Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	**No**		
			Yes		
		Advanced Adj.	**No**		
			Yes		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
	Manual Band Adj	**No**			
		Yes			
	Adjust Length (*3)	**A:High**	**No**		
			Yes		
		B:Standard / Draft	**No**		
			Yes		
	Head Inc. Adj.	**No**			
		Yes			
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer**	**10 sec.**			
		30 sec.			
		1 min.			
		2 min.			
		5 min.			
		10 min. *			
		30 min.			
		60 min.			
	TCP/IP	**IP Mode**	**Automatic**		
			Manual *		
		Protocol (*4)	**DHCP**	**On**	
				Off *	
			BOOTP	**On**	
				Off *	
			RARP	**On**	
				Off *	
		IP Setting (*10)	**IP Address**	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	
			Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	
			Default G/W	0.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255	
	NetWare	**NetWare**	**On**		
			Off *		
		Frame Type (*6)	**Auto Detect**		
			Ethernet 2		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			Ethernet 802.2 *		
			Ethernet 802.3		
			Ethernet SNAP		
		Print Service (*6)	**BinderyPServer**		
			RPrinter		
			NDSPServer *		
			NPrinter		
	AppleTalk	**On**			
		Off *			
	Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**	**On** *		
			Off		
		Comm.Mode (*7)	**Half Duplex** *		
			Full Duplex		
		Ethernet Type (*7)	**10 Base-T** *		
			100 Base-TX		
		Spanning Tree	**Not Use** *		
			Use		
		MAC Address	000085XXXXXX		
	Ext. Interface	**No** *			
		IEEE1394			
	Return Defaults	**No** *			
		Yes			
Maintenance	**Repl. maint cart**	**No**			
		Yes			
	Replace P.head	**No**			
		Yes			
	Repl. S. Cleaner	**No**			
		Yes			
	Move Printer	**Level 1** *			
		Level 2			
		Level 3			
System Setup	**Warning**	**Buzzer**	**Off**		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			On *		
		Detect Mismatch	Pause		
			Warning		
			None *		
	Keep Paper Size	Off *			
		On			
	Paper Size Basis	Sht Selection 1	ISO A3+ *		
			13"x19"(Super B)		
		Sht Selection 2	ISO B1		
			28"x40" (ANSI F)		
	Roll Switching	Use Optimal Size *			
		No RollSwitching			
	TrimEdge Reload	Automatic			
		Off *			
		On			
	Noz. Check Freq.	Off			
		1 page			
		10 pages			
		Automatic *			
	CarriageScan Wdth	Automatic *			
		Fixed			
	Sleep Timer	5 min. *			
		10 min.			
		15 min.			
		20 min.			
		30 min.			
		40 min.			
		50 min.			
		60 min.			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		240 min.			
	Length Unit	meter *			
		feet/inch			
	Time Zone	0:London (GMT)			
		+1:Paris,Rome			
		+2:Athens, Cairo			
		+3:Moscow			
		+4:Eerevan, Baku			
		+5:Islamabad			
		+6:Dacca			
		+7:Bangkok			
		+8:Hong Kong			
		+9:Tokyo,Seoul			
		+10:Canberra			
		+11New Caledonia			
		+12:Wellington			
		-12:Eniwetok			
		-11:Midway is.			
		-10Hawaii (AHST)			
		-9:Alaska (AKST)			
		-8:Oregon (PST)			
		-7:Arizona (MST)			
		-6:Texas (CST)			
		-5:NewYork (EST)			
		-4:Santiago			
		-3:Buenos Aires			
		-2:			
		-1:Cape Verde			
	Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd *			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		dd/mm/yyyy			
		mm/dd/yyyy			
	Date & Time	Date	yyyy/mm/dd (*8)		
			Time	hh:mm	
	Language	English*			
		日本語			
		Français			
		Italiano			
		Deutsch			
		Español			
		Русский			
		中文（简体字）			
		한국어			
	Contrast Adj.	-4, -3, -2, -1, 0*, +1, +2, +3, +4			
	Reset PaprSetngs	No			
		Yes			
	Erase HDD Data	High Speed	No		
			Yes		
		Secure High Spd.	No		
			Yes		
		Secure	No		
			Yes		
	Output Method	Print *			
		Print (Auto Del)			
		Save: Box			
	Save and Print	Off *			
		On			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
	Save: Shared Box	**Off**			
		On *			
Test Print	**Status Print**	**No**			
		Yes			
	Paper Details	**No**			
		Yes			
	Print Job Log	**No**			
		Yes			
	Menu Map	**No**			
		Yes			
	Nozzle Check	**No**			
		Yes			
Information	**System Info**				
	Error Log	1:xxxxxxxx-xxxx			
		2:xxxxxxxx-xxxx			

*1: Available only if a roll is loaded.
*2: Available only if **ManageRemainRoll** is **On**.
*3: Available if **Feed Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Length**.
*4: Not displayed if **IP Mode** is **Manual**.
*5: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool.See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
*6: Not displayed if **NetWare** is **Off**.
*7: Not displayed if **Auto Detect** is **On**.
*8: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.
*9: Available after you have used **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** once.
*10: Not displayed if **IP Mode** is **Automatic**.
*11: Follows the setting in **Length Unit**.

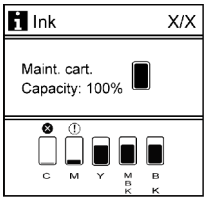
Caution

- Only the following menus are displayed during printing.
  - Menu Durng Prtng
    Choose this menu to display **Head Cleaning**, **Fine Band Adj.**, and **Information**.
  - Job Mgmt Menu
    Choose this menu to display **Job Management**.

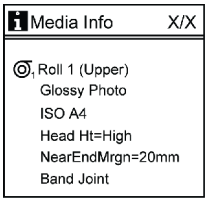
Submenus

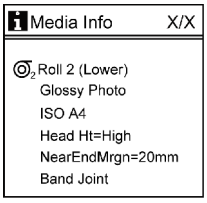
Each time you press the **Information** button on the Control Panel, printer information is displayed in the following order.

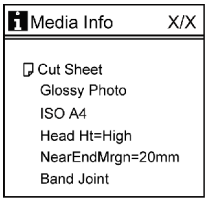
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels



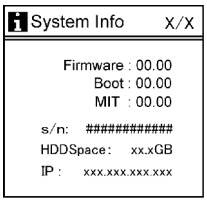
- Information on the loaded paper



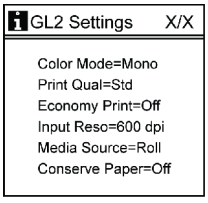


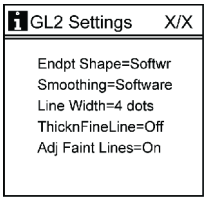


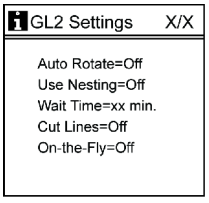
- Printer information



- HP-GL/2 settings information







For details on submenu screens, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.67)

Main menu during printing

The structure of the main menu during printing is as follows.
For instructions on menu operations, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.36)
For details on menu items available during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.66)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Menu Durng Prtng	**Head Cleaning** *	**Head Cleaning A** *				
		Head Cleaning B				
	Fine Band Adj.	From -5 to 5				
	Information	**System Info**				
		Error Log	1:xxxxxxxx - xxxx			
			2:xxxxxxxx - xxxx			

Main Menu Settings

Main menu items are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.36)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.40)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Paper Cutting	This command is available only if a roll is loaded. Choose **Yes** to cut the roll at the current position. However, if paper cannot be advanced to the cut position, it will not be cut. In this case, manually advance the roll before cutting it. (→P.135)
Rep. Ink Tank	When replacing the Ink Tank, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.563)
Head Cleaning	Printhead cleaning options. (→P.578) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
Paper Menu	Specify the type and size of paper. (→P.54)
Paper Details	Specify detailed paper-related settings, including the ink drying time and borderless printing options. (→P.55)
Job Management	Manage print jobs on the printer’s hard disk. (→P.57)
GL2 Settings	Specify settings for HP-GL/2 printing. (→P.58)
Adjust Printer	Adjust the Printhead alignment or amount of feed by printing a test pattern. (→P.60)
Interface Setup	Configure the EOP timer and network settings. (→P.61)
Maintenance	Access maintenance settings when replacing the Printhead or preparing to move the printer. (→P.62)
System Setup	Specify the printer system settings, including the date format and display language. (→P.63)
Test Print	Choose **Status Print** to print information about the printer. Choose **Paper Details** to print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**. Choose **Print Job Log** to print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink used, and so on. (Information on ink consumption is general, not specific in nature.) Choose **Menu Map** to print a list of the main menu options. Choose **Nozzle Check** to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles.
Information	Displays printer information and an error log. (→P.65)

Paper Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Cut Sheet Type (*1)	Choose the type of sheets. (→P.149)
Roll1(Uppr) Type (*1) **Roll2 (Lwr) Type** (*1)	Choose the type of roll. (→P.113)
Roll1(Uppr)Lngth **Roll2(Lwr) Lngth**	Displayed if **ManageRemainRoll** is **On**. If a barcode is not printed on rolls, specify the roll length. The roll length is displayed in meters or feet, depending on the setting in **Length Unit**.
ManageRemainRoll	Choose **On** to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose **Off** if you prefer not to print the barcode. (→P.136)

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

Paper Details

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The type of paper is displayed here.)(*1)	**Roll DryingTime**	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
	Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing, in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Note that printing will take longer if you specify a wait time.
	Feed Priority	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select **Automatic**. Choose **Print Length** if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that choosing **Print Length** may result in slight banding in the direction of Carriage scanning.
	Adjust Length	Displayed if **Feed Priority** is **Print Length**. Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from **Print Pattern** or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value.
	Head Height	Adjust the Printhead height. (→P.551)
	Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (→P.561)
	Width Detection	Specify this option to print inside boundaries or in other cases when specifying a particular starting position for printing. Paper width and skew are not detected if you select **Off**. If paper is loaded askew, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.
	Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing **Slow** helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
	Trim Edge First	If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.
	Cutting Mode	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. Choose **Automatic** to have the roll cut automatically after printing. If you choose **Manual**, the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the cut position. Choose **Eject** if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry.

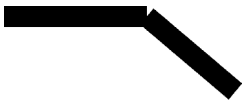
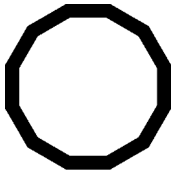
Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The type of paper is displayed here.)(*1)	**Bordless Margin**	Adjust the margin during borderless printing. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically detect the paper width and configure the margin settings for borderless printing. If margins are mistakenly created when **Automatic** is selected, choose **Fixed**. In this case, the paper width is not detected automatically, and the document is printed without borders, using the margin settings required by the printer.
	CutDustReduct.	If you choose **On**, a line will be printed at the cut position when paper cutting is selected. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (→P.144)
	NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
	Return Defaults	Choose **Yes** to restore **Paper Details** to the default values.

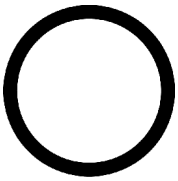
*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) The type of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is changed when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool.

Job Management

Setting Item						Description, Instructions
Print Job	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Delete**			Delete the current job or queued jobs. (→P.490)
			Preempt Jobs			Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (→P.490)
Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Print**	Print the saved job.
					Delete	Delete the saved job.
			Print Job List			Print a list of saved print jobs.
Job Log	(Choose from information about the last three print jobs.)	**Document Name**				Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name				Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count				Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status				Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time				Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time				Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time				Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size				Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type				Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface				Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed				Displays the ink consumption.
HDD Information	**HDDSpace**					Displays the space available on the printer's hard disk.

GL2 Settings

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Color Mode	**Monochrome**	Print in monochrome.
	Color (CAD) 1 *	Print in standard colors.
	Color (CAD) 2	Print in brighter colors.
	Color (CAD) 3	Print emulating the Canon BJ-W3000/W3050, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.(*1)
	Color (CAD) 4	Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.(*1)
	Color (CAD) 5	Print emulating the HP Designjet 1000, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.(*1)
	Color (CAD) 6	Print emulating the HP Designjet 4000/4500, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.(*1)
Print Quality		Choose the print quality.
Print (Economy)		Although printing quality is diminished, less ink is consumed than in regular printing. Select **On** to conserve ink.
Input Resolution		Choose the printer input resolution, **600dpi** or **300dpi**.
Paper Source		Choose the source of paper for HP-GL/2 printing.
Conserve Paper		Conserves paper when printing.
Line Cap		Choose the shape of the end point, determined by **Software** or **Rounded**. • If you choose **Software** Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  • If you choose **Rounded**
Smoothing		Choose whether to print arcs as smooth curved lines or as multiple connected line segments. • If you choose **Software** Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  Note: By default, this is a 72-sided figure

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Smoothing		• If you choose **Smooth** 
Line Width		Choose the width for printing lines if no width is specified in the data. Dots in the line width are 300 dpi each.
ThickenFineLines		Select **On** to print fine lines more distinctly.
AdjustFaintLines		If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, selecting **Off** may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.
Auto Rotate		If the long side of an original is shorter than the roll width, the original is automatically rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper. Similarly, if the long side of an original in landscape orientation is longer than the roll width and the short side is shorter than the roll width, the original is repositioned to fit on the paper. HP RTL print jobs are not rotated.(*2)
Nesting	**Use Nesting**	Selecting **On** will store print jobs until multiple documents can be arranged to fill up the roll width, instead of printing each print job as it is received.
	Nesting WaitTime	Specify a time to wait until printing, as desired.
	Cut Lines	Select **On** to print cut lines between each document on the roll.
On-the-Fly		Selecting **On** will start printing jobs sooner if you are printing only HP RTL print jobs and printing would not start until later. However, images may be omitted in some cases, so be sure to check the printing results.

*1: It is not possible to match the colors and image quality produced by the specified printer exactly.

*2: Because HP RTL images are not rotated even if the paper is rotated 90 degrees, images may be cut off or the blank paper may be ejected. In this case, set **Auto Rotate** to **Off**.

Adjust Printer

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Auto Head Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (→P.544)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to spaces between nozzles and colors and the printing direction. (→P.544)
	Auto Print	Choose **On** to have the printer automatically execute the **Advanced Adj.** operations after you replace the Printhead. (→P.544)
Manual Head Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (→P.546)
Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (→P.554)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose this option when using paper other than genuine Canon paper, or paper for purposes other than checking output. Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a band adjustment test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and requires more ink than **Standard Adj.**. (→P.554)
Manual Band Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount based on the paper type. (→P.556)
Adjust Length	**A:High** (**Adjust Length A**) **B:Standard/Draft** (**Adjust Length B**)	Prints a test pattern for particular types of paper to compensate for paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you can enter the amount of adjustment. (→P.559)
Head Inc. Adj.		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the orientation of the Printhead. (→P.548)

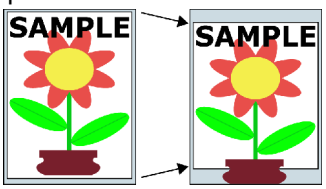
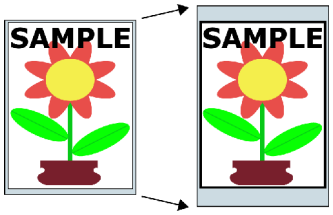
Interface Setup

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
EOP Timer			Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IP	**IP Mode**		Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
	Protocol	**DHCP**	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
		BOOTP	
		RARP	
	IP Setting	**IP Address**	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway.
		Subnet Mask	
		Default G/W	
NetWare	**NetWare**		Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
	Frame Type		Specify the frame type to use.
	Print Service		Choose the print service.
AppleTalk			Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**		Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**. Choose **On** for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose **Off** to apply **Comm.Mode** and **Ethernet Type** settings.
	Comm.Mode		Choose the LAN communication method.
	Ethernet Type		Choose the LAN transfer rate.
	Spanning Tree		Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address.
Ext. Interface			Specify whether or not to use the optional expansion interface when it is installed.
Return Defaults			**Return Defaults/Execute?** is displayed if you press the ▼ button. Choose **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Maintenance

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Repl. maint cart	When replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.586)
Replace P.head	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When replacing the Printhead, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.579)
Repl. S. Cleaner	When replacing the Shaft Cleaner, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.586)
Move Printer	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When transferring the printer to another location, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.601)

System Setup

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Warning	**Buzzer**	Set the buzzer. Choose **On** for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.
	Detect Mismatch	Choose **Warning** for notification (display of a warning message) during printing if the type of paper specified in the printer menu does not match the type in the printer driver. Choose **None** to continue to print without notification. Choose **Pause** to have printing paused under these circumstances. In this case, you can continue printing by pressing the **Online** button.
Keep Paper Size		Choose **On** to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed.  Choose **Off** to use the printer driver settings instead. Even if the margin setting of the printer driver is smaller than that of the printer menu, text or images will not be cut off. However, this requires longer paper because the actual margin will be equal to the margin setting of the printer driver plus the margin setting of the printer menu. 
Paper Size Basis	**Sht Selection 1**	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3+** or **13"x19"(Super B)** is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
	Sht Selection 2	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO B1** or **28"x40" (ANSI F)** is applied when an intermediate size is detected.
Roll Switching	**Use Optimal Size**	Selects the optimal paper size to minimize the amount of paper wasted.
	No RollSwitching	Prints using the roll currently advanced on the Platen.
TrimEdge Reload		Specify whether to trim the leading edge of the currently retracted roll when the roll is advanced. Cut the edge if you are concerned about any marks left on the roll when the roll is left in the retracted position. Selecting **On** will always trim the edge when the roll is advanced from the retracted position. Selecting **Automatic** will trim the edge when the roll has been in the retracted position for two days or more.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Noz. Check Freq.		Specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose **1 page** to check once per printed page. Choose **10 pages** to check once per ten printed pages. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use.
CarriageScanWdth		For specifying the carriage scan width during printing. Select **Automatic** for movement equivalent to the width of paper loaded. Selecting **Fixed** will reduce any soiling on the back of the paper, although printing may take a little longer.
Sleep Timer		Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.
Length Unit		Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. You can switch the unit displayed for **Roll Length Set** and the remaining paper amount displayed in the submenu.
Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
Date Format		Specify the date format.
Date & Time	**Date**	Set the current date.
	Time	Set the current time. Available only if the **Date** setting is specified.
Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen.
Contrast Adj.		Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.
Reset PaprSetngs		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the default values.
Erase HDD Data	**High Speed**	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. (→P.542)
	Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. (→P.542)
	Secure	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. (→P.542)
Output Method	**Print**	Select the output method. To print as usual, select **Print**. Selecting **Print (Auto Del)** will print the job and then delete the data from the printer's hard disk. Selecting **Save: Box 01** will only save the print job in the box, without printing it.
	Print (Auto Del)	
	Save: Box 01	
Save and Print		Select **On** to print the job after it has been saved.
Save: Shared Box		Select **Off** to print without saving jobs in the box shared among multiple users.

Information

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
System Info	**Firmware**	Displays the printer firmware version.
	Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
	MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	s/n	Displays the printer's serial number.
	MAC	Displays the MAC address of the printer.
	IP	Displays the printer's IP address.
Error Log	1: xxxxxxxx-xxxx 2: xxxxxxxx-xxxx	Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).

Main Menu Settings (During Printing)

Main menu items during printing are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.36)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.40)

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Menu Durng Prtng	**Head Cleaning**	Printhead cleaning options. (→P.578) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
	Fine Band Adj.	Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
	Information	Displays the information about the printer and history of print jobs. (→P.66)

Information

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
System Info	**Firmware**	Displays the version of the printer and firmware.
	Boot	Displays the version of the boot ROM.
	MIT	Displays the version of the MIT database format.
	s/n	Displays the printer’s serial number.
	MAC	Displays the MAC address.
	IP	Displays the IP address.
	HDDSpace	Displays the space available on the printer’s hard disk.
Error Log	1: xxxxxxxx-xxxx	Displays the two most recent error message numbers, most recent first.
	2: xxxxxxxx-xxxx	

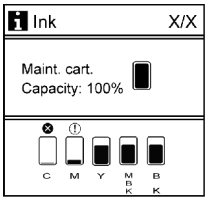
Submenu Display

Press the **Information** button to display this information, one after another: the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and remaining ink levels, paper information, printer information, and HP-GL/2 settings information. Each time you press the **Information** button, the following submenus are displayed.

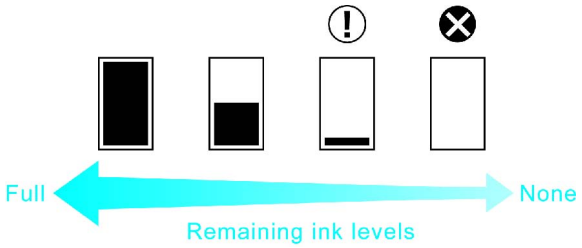
Note

- Press any button other than the **Information** button to restore the previous mode.
- After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about ten seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels

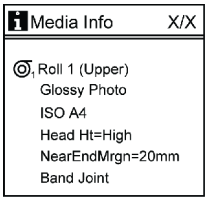


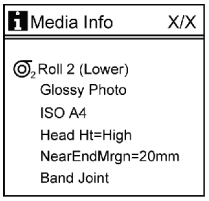
The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the top level of the Display Screen.
The remaining level of each ink is shown on the bottom level of the Display Screen. Ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the color labels on the bottom of the Display Screen.
These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “×” if no ink is left, and “?” if ink level detection is not on.
Remaining ink is indicated as follows.

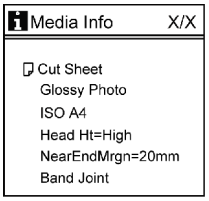


Information on the loaded paper

Here, the paper size, type, and related printer settings are displayed.

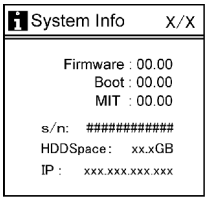






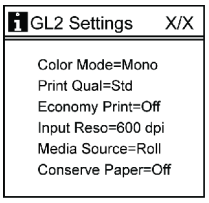
Printer information

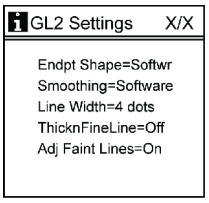
Displays the firmware version, serial number, free hard disk space, IP address, and interface information.

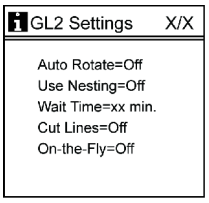


HP-GL/2 setting information

HP-GL/2 settings information is displayed on three screens.







Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the status of consumables.

Printing Status Print reports

1. Load paper.
   If using sheets, load paper of A4/Letter size. You will need at least four sheets.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in the Status Print report

The following information is included in the **Status Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model

Firm	Firmware Version
Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
MAC	The printer's MAC address
IP	IP Address
MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
C, M, Y, MBK, BK	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.

Media Menu		Information on the loaded paper.
	Cut Sheet Type	
	Roll1(Uppr) Type	
	Roll2 (Lwr) Type	
	ManageRemainRoll	

Job Management			The free space on the printer's hard disk drive.
	HDD Information		
		HDD Space	

GL2 Settings			HP-GL/2 setting values.
	Color Mode		
	Print Quality		
	Print (Economy)		
	Input Resolution		
	Paper Source		
	Conserve Paper		
	Line Cap		
	Smoothing		
	Line Width		
	ThickenFineLines		
	AdjustFaintLines		
	Auto Rotate		
	Nesting		
		Use Nesting	
		Nesting WaitTime	
		Cut Lines	
	On-The-Fly		

Adjust Printer			Current printer settings.
	Auto Head Adj.		Printhead adjustment value.
		Auto Print	

Information			The past five error codes.
	Error Log		
		01 - 05	

Interface Setup				Current network settings.
	EOP Timer			Sets the elapsed time between receiving last data and canceling printing.
	TCP/IP			Settings related to **TCP/IP**.
		IP Mode		
		Protocol		
			DHCP	
			BOOTP	
			RARP	
		IP Setting		**IP Setting** values.
			IP Address	
			Subnet Mask	
			Default G/W	
	NetWare			**NetWare** settings.
		NetWare		
		Frame Type		
		Print Service		
	AppleTalk			Values that specify whether **AppleTalk** is active or not.
	Ethernet Driver			**Ethernet Driver** settings.
		Auto Detect		
		Comm.Mode		
		Ethernet Type		
		Spanning Tree		
		MAC Address		
	Ext.Interface			Information about the extended interface.

System Setup			System settings.
	Warning		Current warning and error settings.
		Buzzer	
		Detect Mismatch	
	Keep Media Size		Current paper-related settings.
	Paper Size Basis		
		Sheet Selection 1	
		Sheet Selection 2	
	Roll Switching		
	TrimEdge Reload		
	Noz. Check Freq.		Nozzle-check settings.
	CarriageScanWdth		Carriage scan width setting.
	Sleep Timer		Printer system settings.
	Length Unit		
	Time Zone		
	Date Format		
	Language		
	Contrast Adj.		
	Output Method		Current output method setting.
	Save and Print		
	Save:Shared Box		

Network (RemoteUI)		Current network settings used by RemoteUI.
TCP/IP		
	Frame Type	
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address*	
	Subnet Mask*	
	Gateway Address*	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Port Number	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	SMTP Server Address*	
	Primary DNS Server Address*	
	Secondary DNS Server Address*	
	DNS Host Name*	
	DNS Domain Name*	
	Multicast DNS Service Name	

*:Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

NetWare		**NetWare** settings.
	Frame Type	
	IPX External Network Number*	
	Node Number*	
	Print Service	

*:Depending on the NetWare print service settings, information on one of the following four items is printed.

	Bindery PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **Bindery PServer** is selected.
		File Server Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **RPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	
	NDS PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NDS PServer** is selected.
		Tree Name*	
		Context Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval*	
	NPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	

*:Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

AppleTalk		Current **AppleTalk** settings.
	Phase Type	
	Name*	
	Network Number*	
	Zone*	

*:Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

HEAD LOT NUMBER			Printhead lot number.
	LOT		

PARTS STATUS			Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER A-Y		

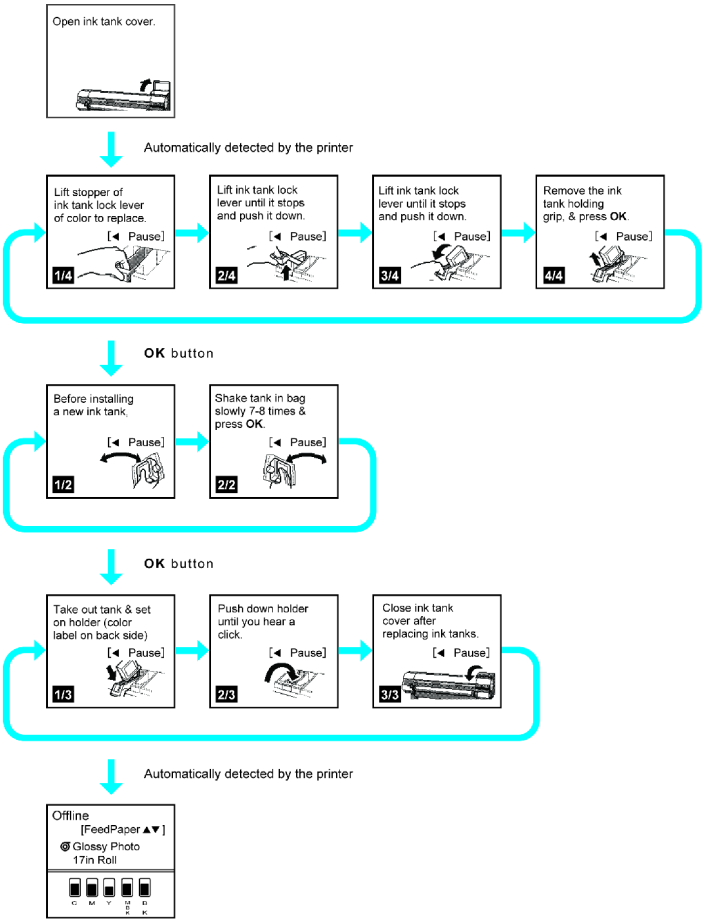
COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
	MEDIA1-7		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

Checking Instructions During Printer Operations

You can refer to instructions on the printer control panel when loading paper, replacing ink tanks, or performing other operations.

How to view instructions

Once you complete an action described in the instructions, the printer detects the action and switches to the next instruction screen.
In the case of actions the printer cannot detect, instruction screens are switched every four seconds, and the sequence of operations is shown repeatedly.
When all actions in the sequence are finished, the instruction screen for the next step is displayed.



Note

- During a continuous display of instructions, you can press the ◄ button to pause the instructions on the current screen.
  Press the ◄ or ► button to display the previous or next screens. If you do not press the ◄ or ► button within 30 seconds, continuous display is resumed.
  Press the **OK** button to display the instruction screen for the next step.

Viewing instructions for loading or removing rolls

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Roll** or **Remove Roll**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll1(Uppr)Lngth** or **Roll2 (Lwr) Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

Instructions are now displayed.

Viewing instructions for loading or removing sheets

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.

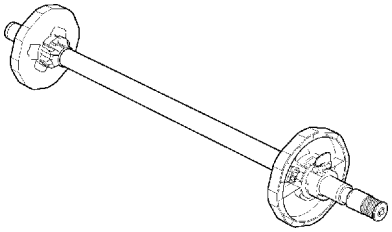
Instructions are now displayed.

Optional accessories

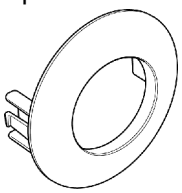
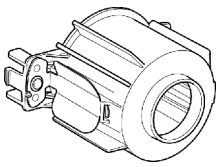
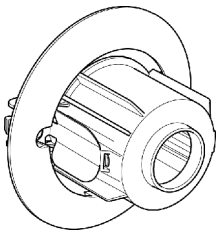
Roll Holder Set

Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-44 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. (→P.115)

- Roll Holder Set RH2-44
  - Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



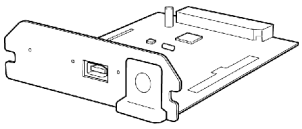
  - Attachments

Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment	Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 

IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board

An interface board to add an IEEE 1394 (also called "FireWire") port.

- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-05



Caution

- Note that EB-04 is incompatible.

For instructions on installing the IEEE 1394 expansion board, refer to the documentation provided with the optional IEEE 1394 expansion board.

Printer Specifications

Specifications

Important

- This information is subject to change as the printer is updated.
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100-120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	During operation	190 W max.
	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max. (*1)
Operating noise	During operation	Approx. 52 dB (A) max. (6.8 bels or less)
	Standby	Approx. 35 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15-30°C (59-86°F)
	Humidity	10-80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer only	1,893 × 766 × 1,144 mm (74.5 × 30.2 × 45.0 in)
	Printer and Stand (including Roll Holder and Wheeled Output Stacker)	1,893 × 1,291 × 1,144 mm (74.5 × 50.8 × 45.0 in)
Weight	Printer and Stand (not including the Printhead and Ink Tank)	Approx. 178 kg (392.4 lb)
Space for installation (W × D × H)	Printer and Wheeled Output Stacker	2,293 × 1,837 × 1,500 mm (90.3 × 72.3 × 59.1 in)
Applicable standards		International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing, GPN, RoHS, Eco Declaration, WEEE, U.S. presidential directives

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-03
Number of nozzles	MBK: 5,120; others: 2,560 per color

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Interface

Expansion Board Slots		1
USB 2.0(*1)	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP, TCP/IP, AppleTalk, HTTP
IEEE 1394	Format	Optional board (compatible with the expansion slot)
	Specification	IEEE 1394-1995, conforms to P1394a Specification ver. 2.0, half duplex, Data/Strb differential serial
	Transfer speed	100/200/400 Mbps
	Connector	Conforms to IEEE 1394-1995 (6-pin), no power supply

*1: Use in USB 2.0 High Speed mode requires the following environment:

- Computer: USB 2.0 High-Speed-compatible
- Operating system: Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000 or Mac OS X 10.3.3 or later
- USB 2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (available from Windows Update or the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: Certified USB 2.0 cable

Ink

Ink Tank	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink, or black ink for matte paper)	Pigment ink	PFI-303MBK (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-703MBK (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-303BK (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-703BK (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-303C (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-703C (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-303M (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-703M (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-303Y (330 ml [11.2 fl oz]) or PFI-703Y (700 ml [23.7 fl oz])
Capacity			330 or 700 ml (11.2 or 23.7 fl oz) per color (*1)

*1: The provided Starter Ink Tanks contain 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) each.

Paper (*1)

Paper width	Rolls	254-1,117.6 mm (10-44 in)
	Sheets	203-1,117.6 mm (8-44 in)
Length of one page	Rolls	203 (*2)-18,000 mm (8-708.7 in)
	Sheets	203-1,600 mm (8-63 in)
Thickness	Rolls	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
	Sheets	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
Paper Size	Roll width	**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm)**, **42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**, **JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**, **36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**, **ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**, **30-in. Roll (762.0mm)**, **JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)**, **24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**, **ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**, **JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**, **17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**, **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, **14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**
	Sheets	**ISO A0**, **ISO A1**, **ISO A2**, **ISO A2+**, **ISO A3**, **ISO A3+**, **ISO A4**, **ISO B0**, **ISO B1**, **ISO B2**, **ISO B3**, **ISO B4**, **JIS B0**, **JIS B1**, **JIS B2**, **JIS B3**, **JIS B4**, **34"x44" (ANSI E)**, **28"x40" (ANSI F)**, **22"x34"(ANSI D)**, **17"x22"(ANSI C)**, **13"x19" (Super B)**, **11"x17" (Ledger)**, **Legal (8.5"x14")**, **Letter (8.5"x11")**, **36"x48" (ARCH E)**, **30"x42" (ARCH E1)**, **26"x38" (ARCH E2)**, **27"x39" (ARCH E3)**, **24"x36" (ARCH D)**, **18"x24" (ARCH C)**, **12"x18" (ARCH B)**, **9"x12" (ARCH A)**, **DIN C0**, **DIN C1**, **DIN C2**, **DIN C3**, **DIN C4**, **20"x24"**, **18"x22"**, **14"x17"**, **12"x16"**, **10"x12"**, **10"x15"**, **8"x10"**, **US Photo 16"x20"**, **Poster 20"x30"**, **Poster 30"x40"**, **Poster 42"x60"**, **Poster 44"x62"**, **13"x22"**, **Poster 300x900mm**
Print area	Normal size	Printable area • Rolls 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side • Sheets 3 mm (0.12 in) from the top, 23 mm (0.91 in) from the bottom, and 3mm (0.12 in) from the left and right sides For information on the recommended print area, see “Print Area”. (→P.85)
	Borderless printing (*3)	Printable area (rolls) 0 mm from the top, 0 from the bottom, and 0 mm from the left and right sides
Supported width for borderless printing		**42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**, **JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**, **36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**, **ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**, **24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**, **ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**, **JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**, **17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**, **14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)

*2: When supplying paper, use a roll approximately 1,000 mm (1,093.6 yd) or longer.

*3: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.

Hard Disk

Hard disk capacity		80 GB (print job storage capacity: 48 GB)
Print job storage capacity	Common Box	100 jobs
	Personal Boxes	100 jobs

Options

Roll Holder Set	RH2-44
IEEE1394 Expansion Board	EB-05

Basic Environmental Performance

Printer

Power consumption	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (10 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (11 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max.
Resource efficiency	Weight	Printer and Stand : Approx. 178kg (392.4 lb)
	Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand : 1,893 × 1,291 × 1,144 mm (74.5 × 50.8 × 45.0 in)
	Recycling	Recyclable plastic used for printer body
Product safety	Toxic substances	Structural components: No prohibited brominated flame retardants used (PBB, PBDE)
		Body plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], Cd) or halogenated flame retardants used
	Operating noise	During operation: Approx. 52 dB (A) max. (6.8 bels or less) Standby: Approx. 35 dB (A) max.

Packaging materials

Heavy metal content (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], Cd)	None (none in packaging)

Print Area

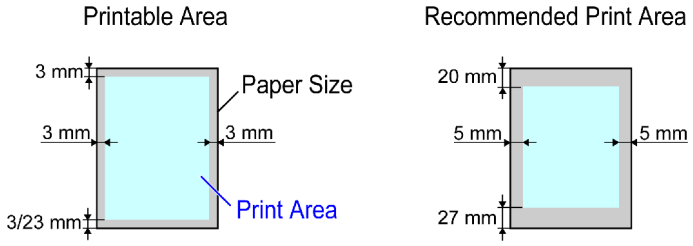
A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

Note

- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- There is no margin (that is, a margin of 0 mm) during borderless printing on rolls.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.251)

	Margins of Printable Area			Margins of Recommended Print Area		
	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
Rolls	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets

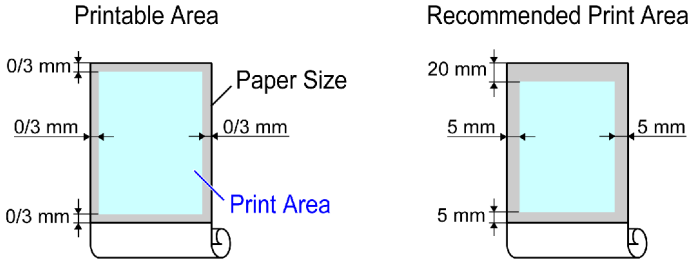


- Printable Area

  a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on left and right sides is required.
- Recommended Print Area

  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Rolls



- Printable Area

  A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- Recommended Print Area

  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working With Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

- Large-format printing
  Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications.
  (→P.286)
- Borderless printing
  Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
  (→P.265)
  (→P.272)
  (→P.258)
- Banner printing
  You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.
  (→P.310)
- 90-degree rotation before printing
  Originals in portrait orientation are rotated 90 degrees when possible to use paper more efficiently.
  (→P.335)
- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (→P.228)
  (→P.234)
  (→P.240)

- Free Layout (Windows) and imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.

  (→P.304)

Note

- Loading two rolls at once (in the Roll 1 (Upper) and Roll 2 (Lower) holders) offers the following advantages.
  - Save the time and effort of switching paper

    Loading rolls of different types saves you the time and effort of replacing rolls. You can select the desired roll in **Paper Source** in the printer driver.

    (→P.397)
    (→P.435)
  - Automatic selection of the right paper for the print job

    Selecting **Roll Paper (Auto)** in **Paper Source** in the printer driver enables automatic selection and printing on the roll that suits the print job from the loaded rolls.

    Additionally, loading two rolls of the same type enables nonstop printing of multiple jobs. After one roll is completely used, the printer switches to the other roll automatically and continues printing.

    (→P.146)

Sheet printing

Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (→P.228)
  (→P.234)
  (→P.240)
- Free Layout (Windows) and imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)
  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
  (→P.304)

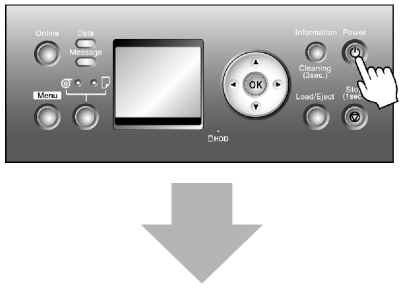
Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.

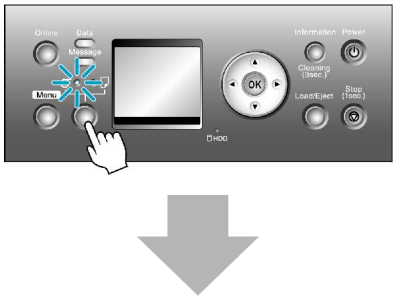
Note

- The procedure varies depending on the **ManageRemainRoll** setting in the printer menu and whether or not a barcode has been printed on the loaded roll. (→P.136)
  - Steps 6 and 7 are unnecessary if **ManageRemainRoll** is **On** and a barcode has been printed on the roll.
  - Step 7 is unnecessary if **ManageRemainRoll** is **Off**.
- If the Wheeled Output Stacker is installed, remove it in advance. (→P.159)
- When **Width Detection** in the printer menu is **Off**, after you have selected the type of paper in step 6, you will need to enter the roll width. (→P.53)
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.109) (→P.104)
- If you prefer to wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and cut the paper manually. (→P.139)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

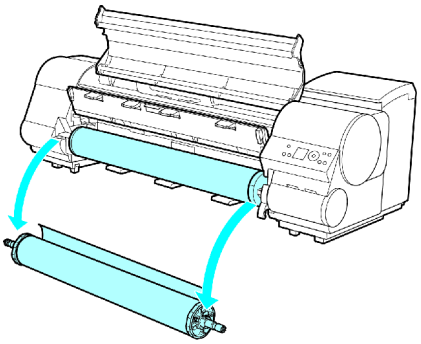


2. Select a roll as the paper source. (→P.112)

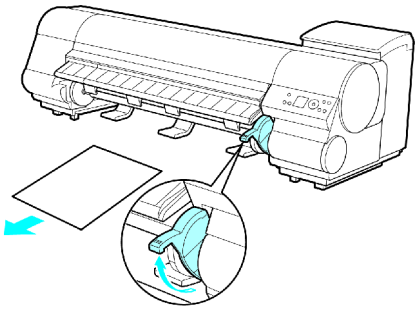


3. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.

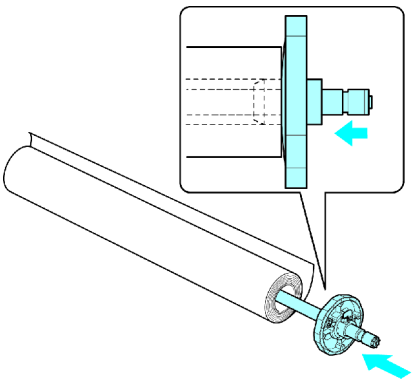
- Rolls (→P.125)



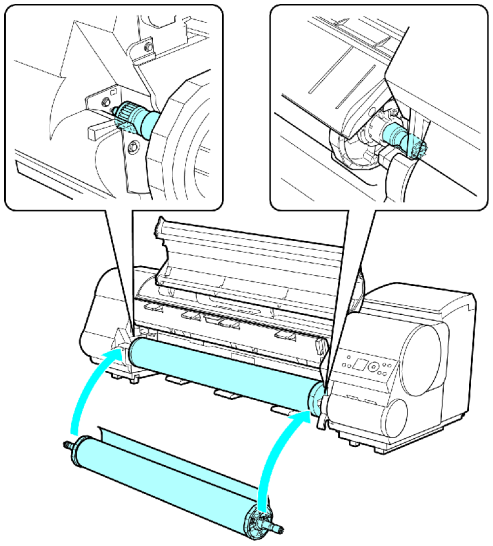
- Sheets (→P.155)



4. Load the roll on the Roll Holder. (→P.115)



5. Load the roll in the printer. (→P.118)



Note

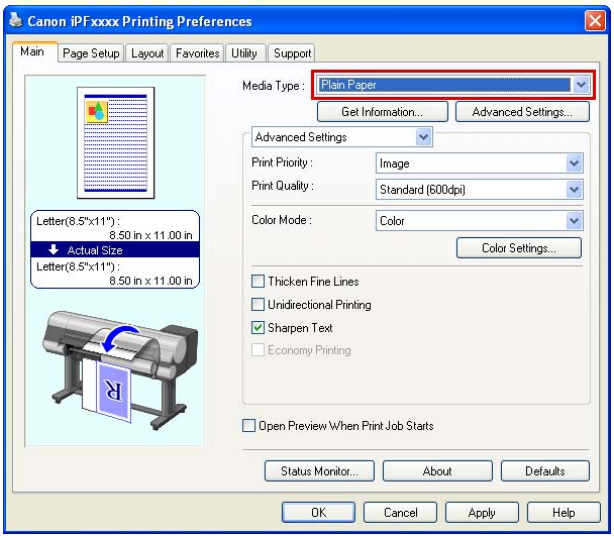
- Before borderless printing, make sure the blue Switch on the platen is set toward the ● side. (→P.629)

6. Select the type of paper. (→P.113)

7. Specify the paper length. (→P.114)

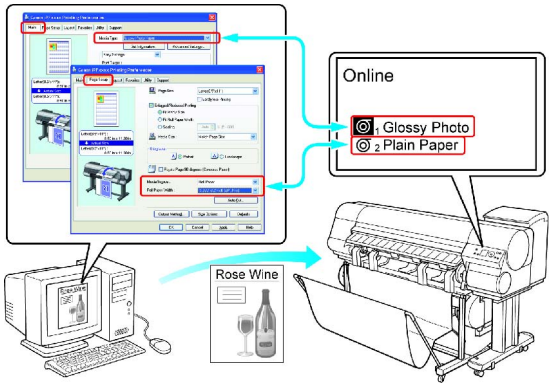
8. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.224)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.226)



Important

- Confirm the type of paper loaded in the printer and specify the same type in the printer driver. If the type of paper does not match, an error message is displayed and the printing quality may be affected, or printing may not be possible.
  - **The paper is too small.** (→P.651)
  - **Papr Type Mismatch** (→P.650)



9. Send the print job.

- Printing in Windows (→P.96)
- Printing in Mac OS X (→P.97)

Start printing.

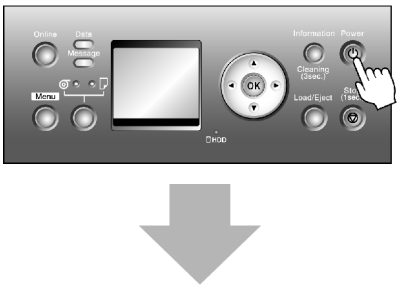
Loading and Printing on Sheets

These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.

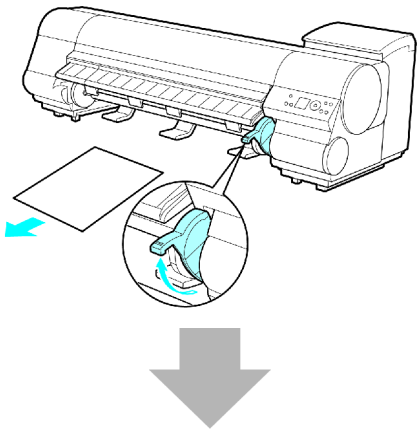
Note

- For details on supported types and sizes of paper, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.109) (→P.104)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

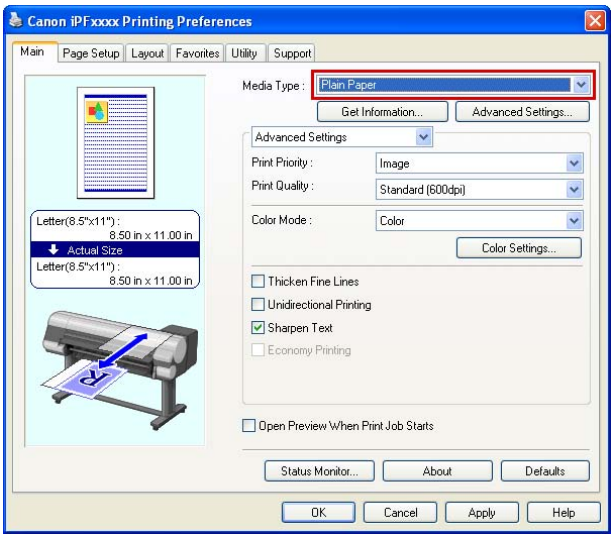


2. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used. (→P.155)



3. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.224)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.226)



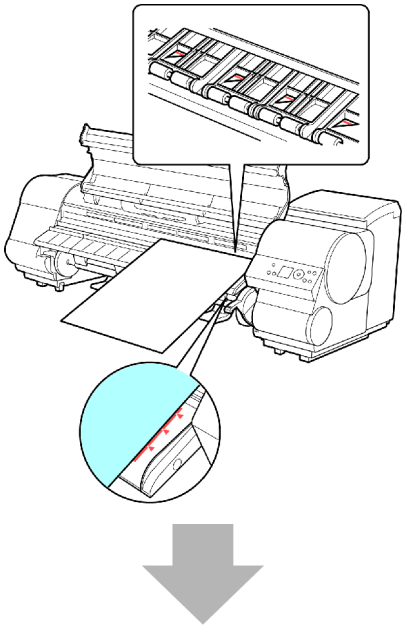
4. Send the print job.

- Printing in Windows (→P.96)
- Printing in Mac OS X (→P.97)

5. Load the sheet. (→P.150)

Note

- If you will load a sheet before sending a print job, after you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the control panel Display Screen. Select the type of paper at this point.
  (→P.149)
- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.153)



Start printing.

Printing in Windows

Print from the application menu.

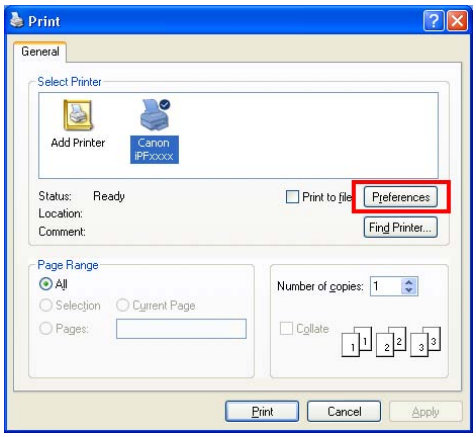
Important

- The Windows printer driver can be used in the following versions of Windows:
  - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
  - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
  - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
  - Windows Vista
  - Windows Server 2008
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1. In the source application, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the software application. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
  Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application



Note

- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows:

- From the application
  (→P.381)
- From the operating system menu
  (→P.383)

Printing in Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**).
For instructions on registering the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.471)

Important

- During this process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. In Mac OS X 10.4 and earlier, you must enable AppleTalk protocol on the printer before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh)”. (→P.473)

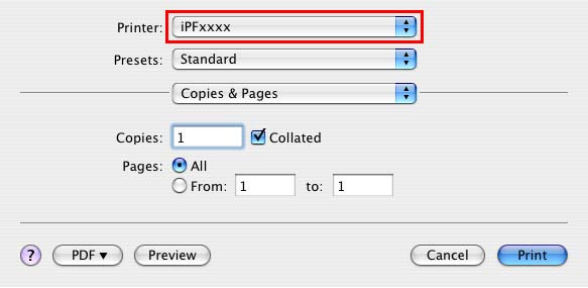
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

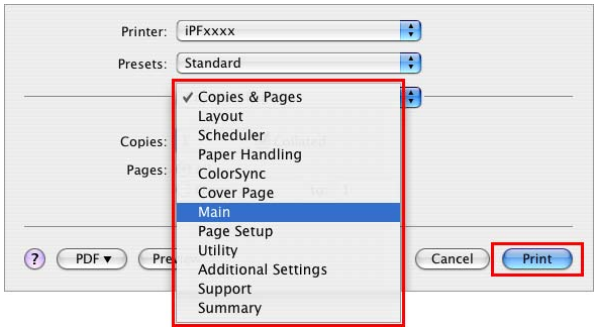
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

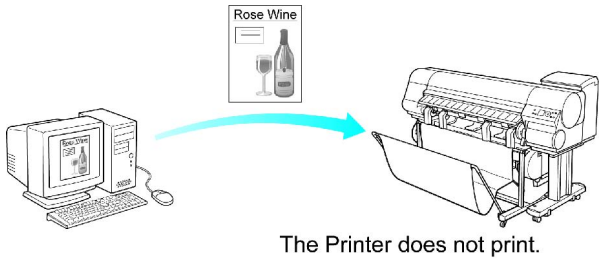
Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel print jobs or ink drying in progress when the printer is online, offline, or in Menu mode.

Printer operation varies depending on the status when you hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing.

- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts

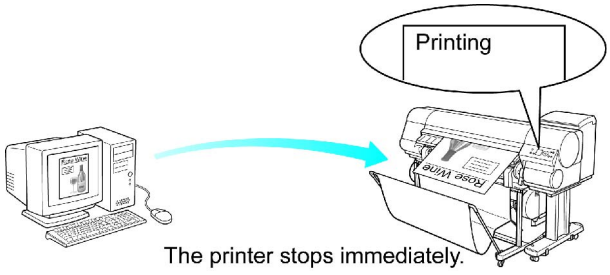
  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more before printing cancels the print job and brings the printer online.

  When the roll is selected as the paper source, the printer goes online, and when sheet is selected, the printer goes offline.



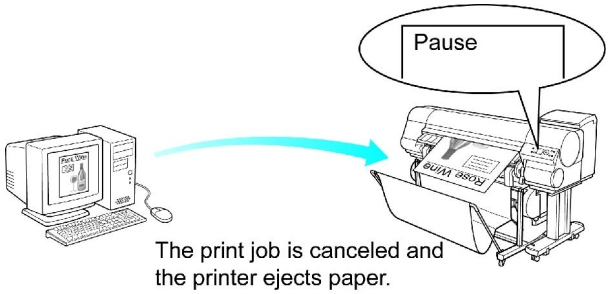
- If you press the **Stop** button during printing

  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more during printing stops printing immediately.



- If you press the **Stop** button when printing is paused

  Holding down the **Stop** button for a second or more when printing is paused cancels the print job.



Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

Print jobs can be canceled in Windows as follows.

Canceling print jobs in the printer window or imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, you can cancel print jobs that have already been received by the printer or that are currently being printed.

Note

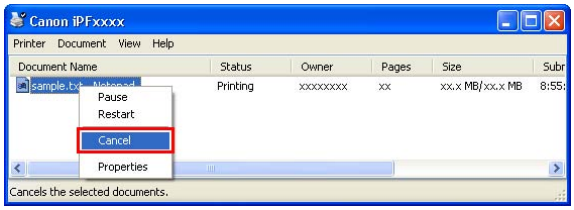
- The print job is displayed on the printer's screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is completed, the job is not displayed even during printing.
- After the printer has received the print data from the computer, print jobs are shown in the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor window until the end of printing. It is not displayed before transmission of print data to the printer, even if the computer has started the process of the data.

1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

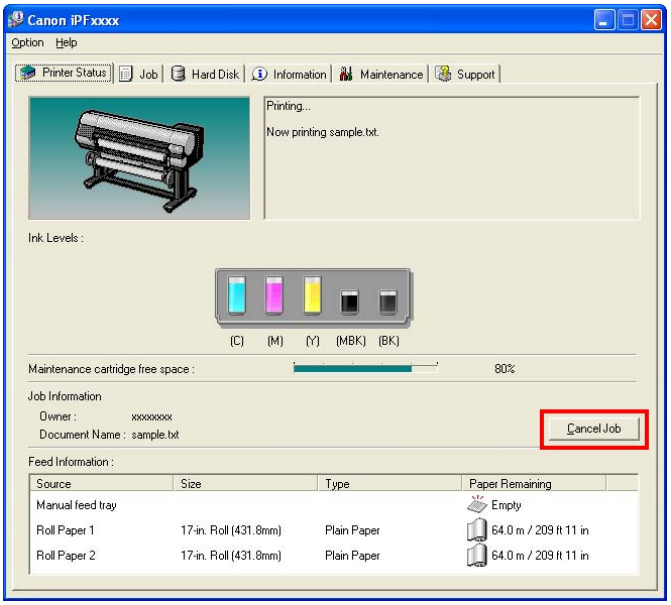
Note

- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.



3. If the job to cancel is not shown in the printer window (that is, if the print data has already been received by the printer), double-click the taskbar icon to display imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.
4. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.



Canceling print jobs from the Control Panel

Use the Control Panel to cancel print jobs that have already been received by the printer or that are currently being printed, as needed.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the Data lamp continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

Cancel print jobs in Mac OS X in one of the following ways.

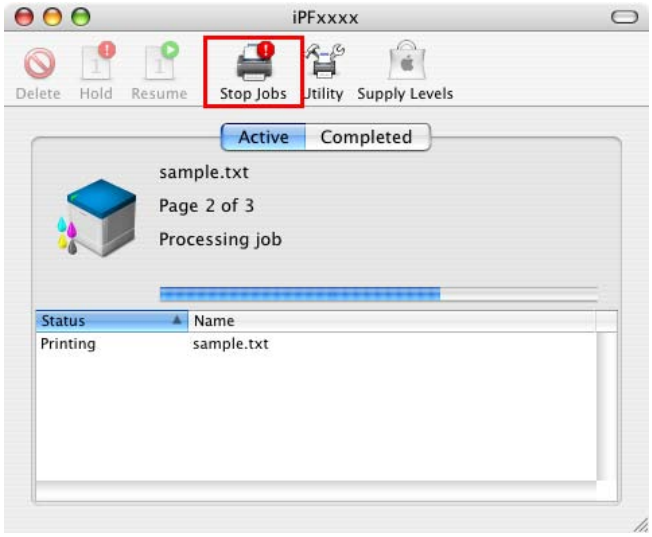
Canceling print jobs from the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are still being sent to the printer.
Otherwise, you can cancel jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor if they have been received by the printer or are currently being printed.

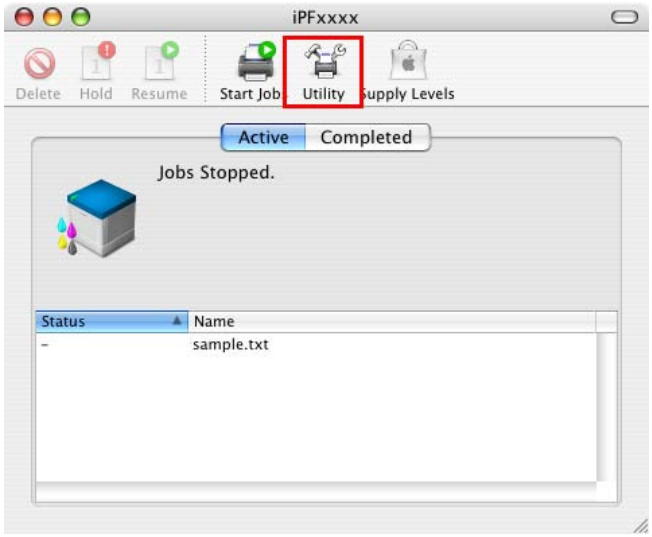
Note

- Print jobs are displayed in the printer window during the transmission of print data from the computer. After transmission, jobs are not displayed even during printing.
- Print jobs are displayed in the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor window from the moment the printer has received the print data until the moment printing is finished. They are not displayed before print data is sent to the printer, even if the computer has started preparing the print data.

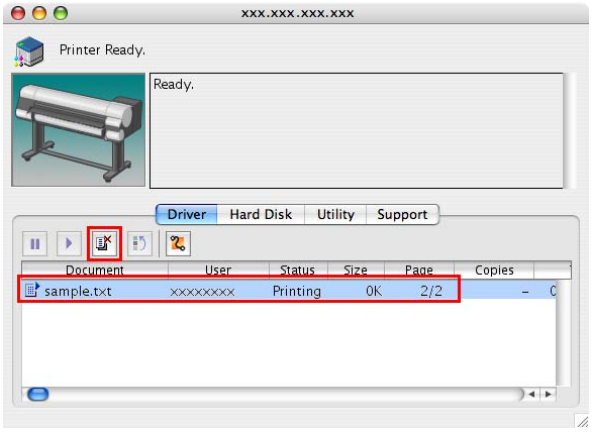
1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.
2. Click **Stop Jobs** to stop printing.



3. If there are no jobs in the printer window that can be canceled, (that is, if the print data has already been sent to the printer), click **Utility** to display imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



4. Select the print job to cancel and click to delete the print job.



The job sent to the printer is canceled.

5. Exit imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. In the printer window, click **Start Jobs**.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

Canceling print jobs from the Control Panel

Otherwise, you can cancel jobs on the Control Panel if they are being received by the printer or are currently being printed.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the Data lamp continues flashing, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to stop printing.

Handling Paper

Paper

Types of Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports (such as plain paper, coated paper, glossy photo paper, proofing paper, and CAD paper), refer to the Paper Reference Guide. The Paper Reference Guide identifies types of paper and gives specifications, printer driver settings, and tips on handling paper. (See Paper Reference Guide .)
By downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website, you can make sure the paper information indicated in the Paper Reference Guide, on the printer Control Panel, and in the printer driver is up to date.

Note

- Types of paper for which † appears next to the product name are specified as genuine Canon paper. For other paper, contact the respective manufacturer after reading instructions included with the media for further information.

Accessing the Paper Reference Guide from imagePROGRAF Support Information

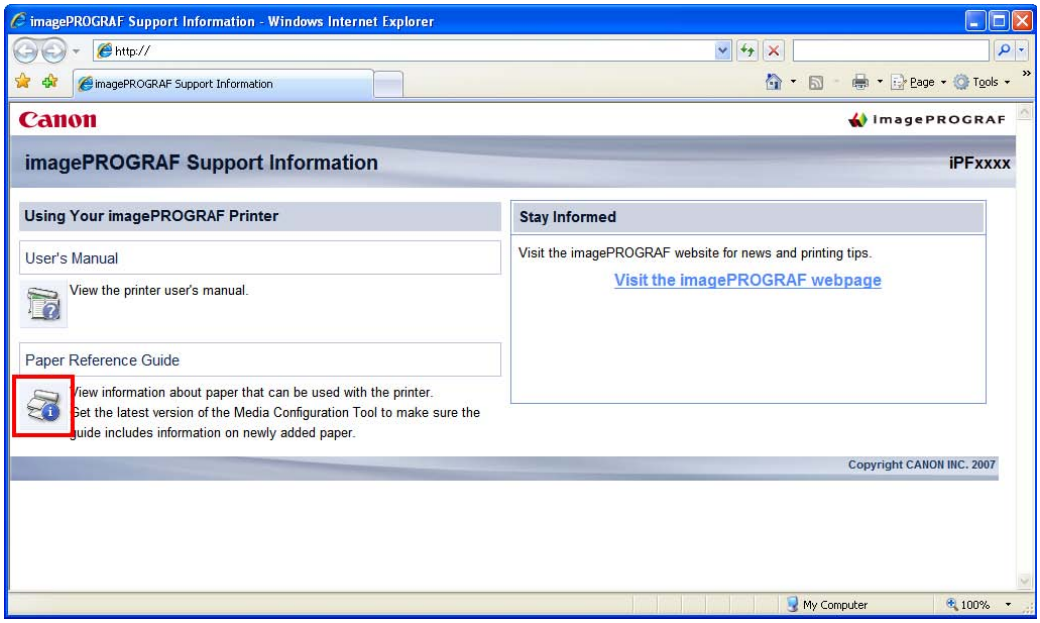
The Paper Reference Guide can also be accessed from **imagePROGRAF Support Information**. Follow these instructions, as appropriate for your operating system.

- Windows

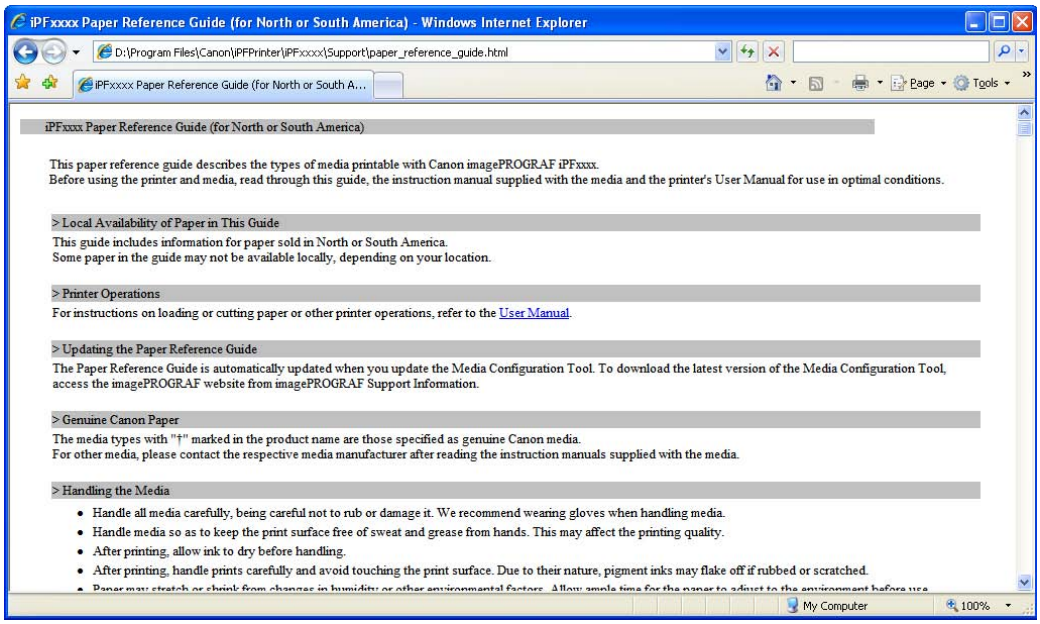
1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** desktop icon. (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model.)

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click the **Paper Reference Guide** button.



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.

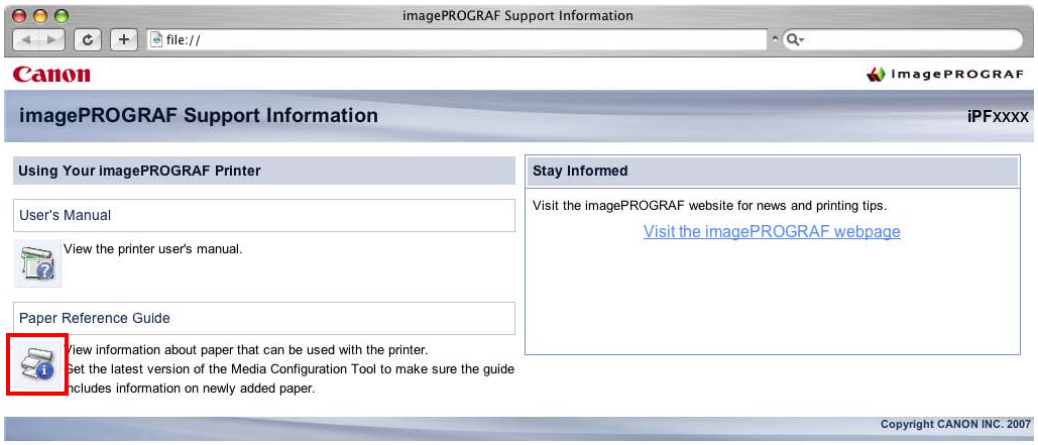


- Mac OS X

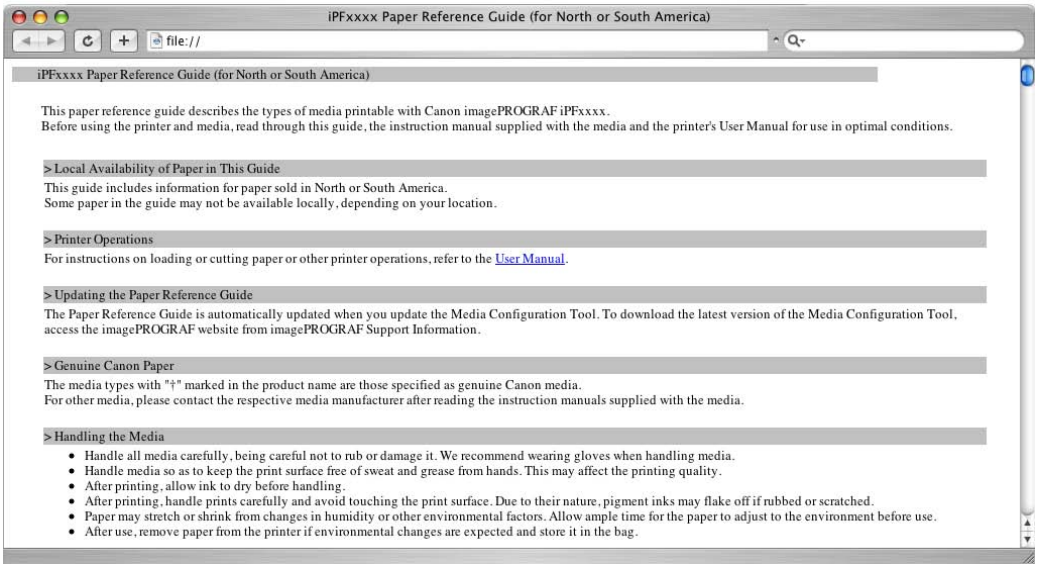
1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click the **Paper Reference Guide** button.



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



Updating Paper Information

To update the paper information in the Paper Reference Guide and on the printer, download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see Media Configuration Tool (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool (Macintosh).
The imagePROGRAF website is accessible from **imagePROGRAF Support Information**.

Important

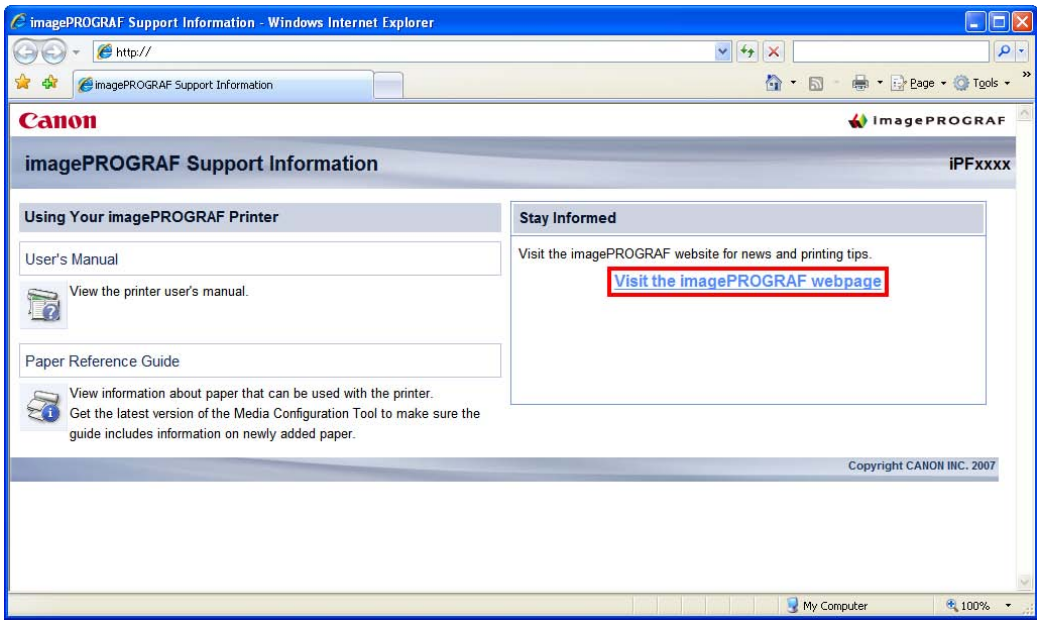
- When you use the Media Configuration Tool to update information about paper, the types of paper on the printer Control Panel, in the printer driver, and in related software are updated.

- Windows

  1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** desktop icon. (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model.)

  The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

  2. Click **Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage**.



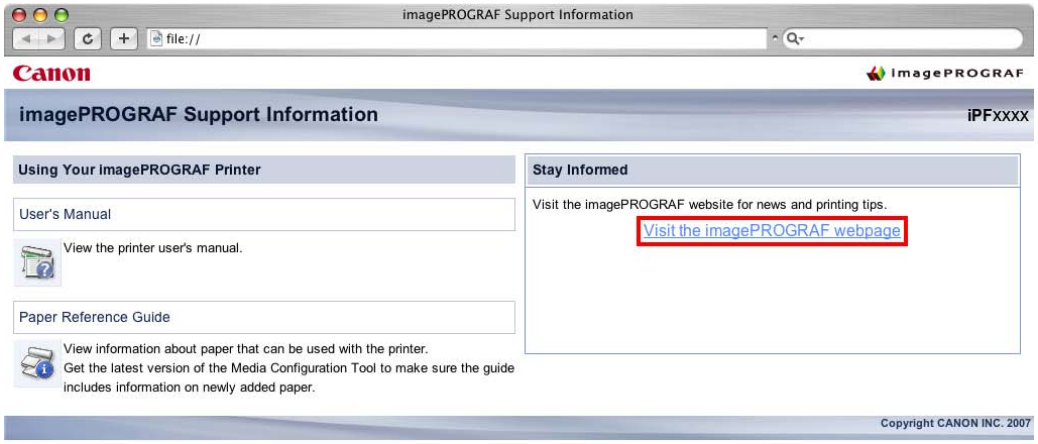
  The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click **Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage**.



The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

Note

- You can also access the imagePROGRAF website through the following operations.
  - Windows
    Click the **start** menu and select **Programs** > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model) > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool. After the Media Configuration Tool starts up, click Extra Information.
  - Macintosh
    In Finder, select Applications > Canon Utilities > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model) > MCTxxxx. After the Media Configuration Tool starts up, click Extra Information.

Paper Sizes

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: up to 150 mm (6 in.)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll Width	Roll Paper Width Settings in Printer Driver	Borderless Printing (*1)
1117.6 mm (44.00 in)	**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm)**	No
1066.8 mm (42.00 in)	**42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**	Yes
1030.0 mm (40.55 in)	**JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**	Yes
914.4 mm (36.00 in)	**36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**	Yes
841.0 mm (33.11 in)	**ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**	Yes
762.0 mm (30.00 in)	**30-in. Roll (762.0mm)**	No
728.0 mm (28.66 in)	**JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)**	No
609.6 mm (24.00 in)	**24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**	Yes
594.0 mm (23.39 in)	**ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**	Yes
515.0 mm (20.28 in)	**JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**	Yes
431.8 mm (17.00 in)	**17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**	Yes
420.0 mm (16.54 in)	**ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**	No
406.4 mm (16.00 in)	**16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**	No
355.6 mm (14.00 in)	**14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**	Yes
297.0 mm (11.69 in)	**ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**	No
254.0 mm (10.00 in)	**10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**	Yes
Custom Media Width	203.2-1118.0 mm (8.00-44.02 in.)	

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)

Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
ISO A0	841.0 × 1189.0 mm (33.11 × 46.81 in)
ISO A1	594.0 × 841.0 mm (23.39 × 33.11 in)
ISO A2	420.0 × 594.0 mm (16.54 × 23.39 in)
ISO A2+	431.8 × 609.6 mm (17.00 × 24.00 in)
ISO A3	297.0 × 420.0 mm (11.69 × 16.54 in)
ISO A3+	329.0 × 483.0 mm (12.95 × 19.02 in)
ISO A4	210.0 × 297.0 mm (8.27 × 11.69 in)
ISO B0	1000.0 × 1414.0 mm (39.37 × 55.67 in)
ISO B1	707.0 × 1000.0 mm (27.83 × 39.37 in)
ISO B2	500.0 × 707.0 mm (19.69 × 27.83 in)
ISO B3	353.0 × 500.0 mm (13.90 × 19.69 in)
ISO B4	250.0 × 353.0 mm (9.84 × 13.90 in)
JIS B0	1030.0 × 1456.0 mm (40.55 × 57.32 in)
JIS B1	728.0 × 1030.0 mm (28.66 × 40.55 in)
JIS B2	515.0 × 728.0 mm (20.28 × 28.66 in)
JIS B3	364.0 × 515.0 mm (14.33 × 20.28 in)
JIS B4	257.0 × 364.0 mm (10.12 × 14.33 in)
34"x44" (ANSI E)	863.6 × 1117.6 mm (34.00 × 44.00 in)
28"x40" (ANSI F)	711.2 × 1016.0 mm (28.00 × 40.00 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	558.8 × 863.6 mm (22.00 × 34.00 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	431.8 × 558.8 mm (17.00 × 22.00 in)
11"x17" (Ledger)	279.4 × 431.8 mm (11.00 × 17.00 in)
13"x19" (Super B)	330.2 × 482.6 mm (13.00 × 19.00 in)
Letter (8.5"x11")	215.9 × 279.4 mm (8.50 × 11.00 in)
Legal (8.5"x14")	215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.50 × 14.00 in)
36"x48" (ARCH E)	914.4 × 1219.2 mm (36.00 × 48.00 in)
30"x42" (ARCH E1)	762.0 × 1066.8 mm (30.00 × 42.00 in)
26"x38" (ARCH E2)	660.4 × 965.2 mm (26.00 × 38.00 in)
27"x39" (ARCH E3)	685.8 × 990.6 mm (27.00 × 39.00 in)
24"x36" (ARCH D)	609.6 × 914.4 mm (24.00 × 36.00 in)
18"x24" (ARCH C)	457.2 × 609.6 mm (18.00 × 24.00 in)
12"x18" (ARCH B)	304.8 × 457.2 mm (12.00 × 18.00 in)
9"x12" (ARCH A)	228.6 × 304.8 mm (9.00 × 12.00 in)
DIN C0	917.0 × 1296.0 mm (36.10 × 51.02 in)

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
DIN C1	648.0 × 917.0 mm (25.51 × 36.10 in)
DIN C2	458.0 × 648.0 mm (18.03 × 25.51 in)
DIN C3	324.0 × 458.0 mm (12.76 × 18.03 in)
DIN C4	229.0 × 324.0 mm (9.02 × 12.76 in)
20"x24"	508.0 × 609.6 mm (20.00 × 24.00 in)
18"x22"	457.2 × 558.8 mm (18.00 × 22.00 in)
14"x17"	355.6 × 431.8 mm (14.00 × 17.00 in)
12"x16"	304.8 × 406.4 mm (12.00 × 16.00 in)
10"x12"	254.0 × 304.8 mm (10.00 × 12.00 in)
10"x15"	254.0 × 381.0 mm (10.00 × 15.00 in)
8"x10"	203.2 × 254.0 mm (8.00 × 10.00 in)
US Photo 16"x20"	406.4 × 508.0 mm (16.00 × 20.00 in)
Poster 20"x30"	508.0 × 762.0 mm (20.00 × 30.00 in)
Poster 30"x40"	762.0 × 1016.0 mm (30.00 × 40.00 in)
Poster 42"x60"	1066.8 × 1524.0 mm (42.00 × 60.00 in)
Poster 44"x62"	1117.6 × 1574.8 mm (44.00 × 62.00 in)
13"x22"	329.0 × 558.0 mm (12.95 × 21.97 in)
Poster 300x900mm	300.0 × 900.0 mm (11.81 × 35.43 in)
Custom Paper Size	203.2 ×203.2 mm (8.00×8.00 in.)-1118.0×1600.0 mm (44.02×62.99 in.)

Note

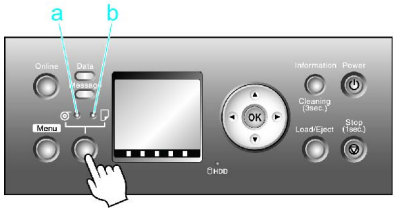
- In the printer driver, paper sizes are categorized into groups based on the “size system”, such as ISO A or JIS.
  In Windows, some size systems are not available by default. Follow these steps to make them available.
  1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
  2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.
  3. Click **Paper Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
  4. Select the Display Series check box.
- For details on non-standard paper sizes, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes”. (→P.297)
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Handling rolls

Selecting the Paper Source

When advancing paper, press the **Feeder Selection** button and select the source.
You can determine the selected source by checking which lamp is lit-either the **Roll Media lamp** (a) or the **Cut Sheet lamp** (b).

- **Roll Media lamp** : Selected when printing on Roll Media.
- **Cut Sheet lamp** : Selected when printing on Sheets.



Note

- If a sheet is loaded when you change the paper source to a roll, **Eject sheet?** is displayed. Press the **OK** button and remove the sheet.
- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - When the Message lamp is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.647)
  - When the Data lamp is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing is finished.
  - When a printer menu operation is in progress
    Wait until the operation is finished before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of loading paper
    Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of replacing Ink Tank
    Finish replacing the Ink Tank before selecting the paper source.
  - When the Top Cover is open
    Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount and Printhead height.
(→P.552)
(→P.551)

Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper, specify the roll length after the paper type. (→P.114)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll1(Uppr) Type** or **Roll2 (Lwr) Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) By default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.
- If automatic monitoring of the remaining roll is deactivated (**Off** is selected) and you have selected a type of paper for which width detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.153)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.

Note

- When you specify the roll length in the printer menu, **ManageRemainRoll** must be set to **On**.
- After you select the type of roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the roll length on the Display Screen if no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**. Select the roll length, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll1(Uppr)Lngth** or **Roll2(Lwr) Lngth**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

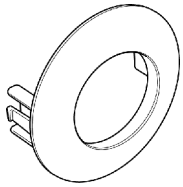
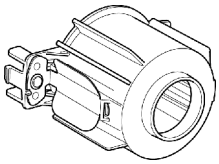
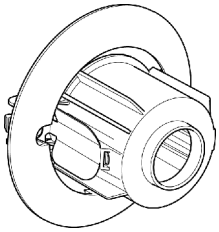
   Specify the roll length as follows.

   1. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.
   2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.
   3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls

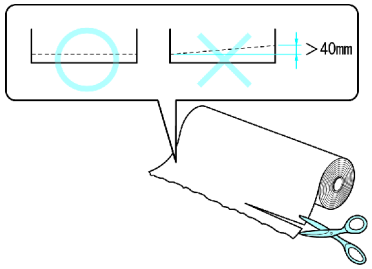
When printing on rolls, attach the Roll Holder to the roll.

Rolls have a two- or three-inch paper core. Use the correct attachment for the paper core. The printer comes equipped with the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment installed.

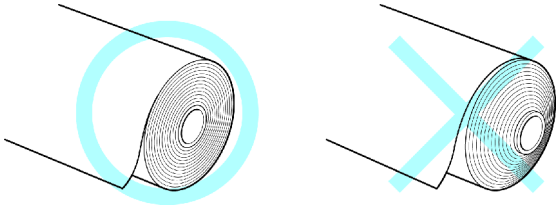
Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment		Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper Side	Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper Side
No Attachment Needed	2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 

Important

- Be sure to use the correct attachment for the size of the roll paper core. The roll edge may be damaged if you print when using an attachment that does not match, or if you print without using an attachment.
- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.
- Cut the edge of the roll paper if it is uneven, dirty, or has tape residue.
  Uneven, dirty, or sticky edges may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.

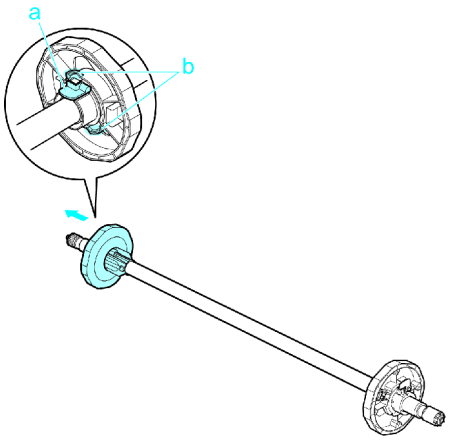


  Be careful not to cut through any barcodes printed on the roll.
- Align the edges of the paper on both ends of the roll.

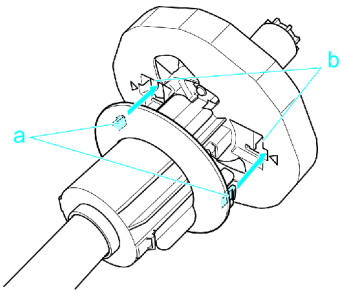


- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.109) (→P.104)
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper.

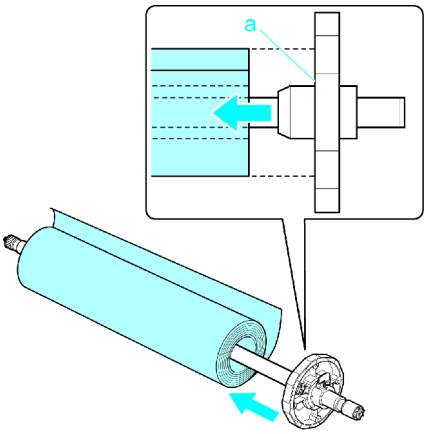
1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



2. When using a 3-inch paper core, align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 with the holes (b) of the Roll Holder and insert it firmly.



3. With the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the Roll Holder from the right of the roll. Insert it firmly until the roll touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder.

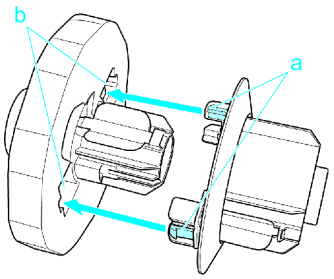


Important

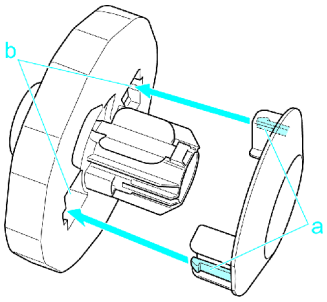
- Insert it firmly so that there is no gap between the roll and the flange of the Roll Holder. If there is a gap, it may cause feeding problems.
- When loading a roll, be careful to avoid hitting the printer hard with the roll. This may damage the Roll Holder.

4. Insert the attachments for the roll paper core on the Holder Stopper.
Align the tips (a) of the attachment with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.

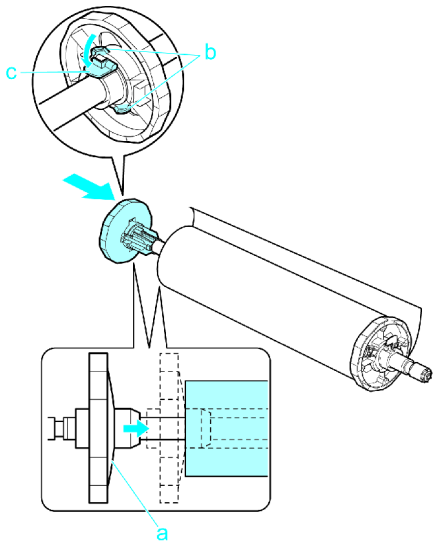
- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2



- 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment



5. Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown. Holding it at the position shown (b), push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll. Lock the Holder Stopper lever (c) by pushing it down toward the shaft side.



Important

- Insert the Holder Stopper firmly onto the roll. Otherwise, it may cause feeding problems.

Loading Rolls in the Printer

Follow these steps to load rolls in the printer.
You can load rolls in two positions, in the Roll 1 (Upper) and Roll 2 (Lower) holders.

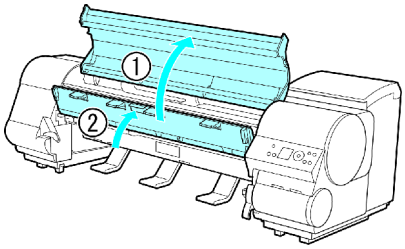
Note

- Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.
  - Rolls (→P.125)
  - Sheets (→P.155)
- If the Wheeled Output Stacker is installed, remove it in advance. (→P.159)
- If the Platen is dirty, clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.597)
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper. (→P.76)

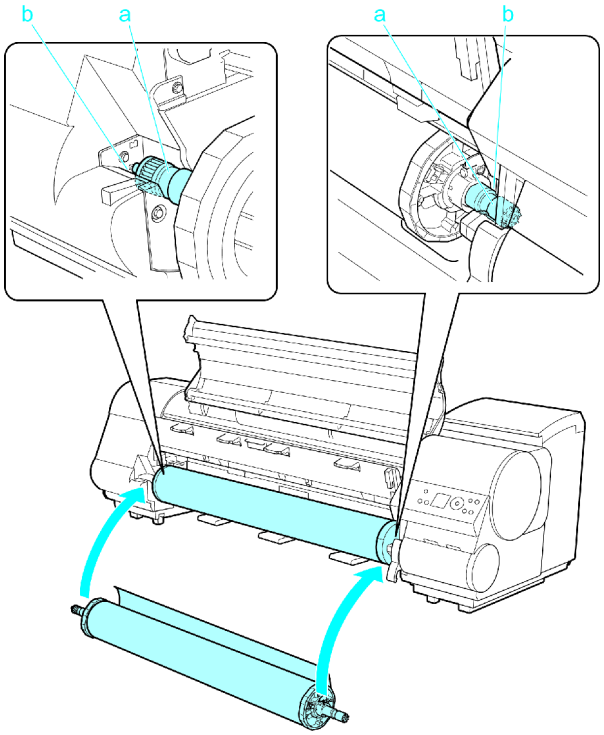
Loading rolls in the Roll 1 (Upper) holder

1. Confirm that a roll is selected as the paper source. (→P.112)

2. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



3. Holding the Roll Holder so that the side with the white gear faces the side of the Roll Holder Slot with a white gear, load the Roll Holder shaft (a) into the grooves (b) on both ends of the Roll Holder Slot.



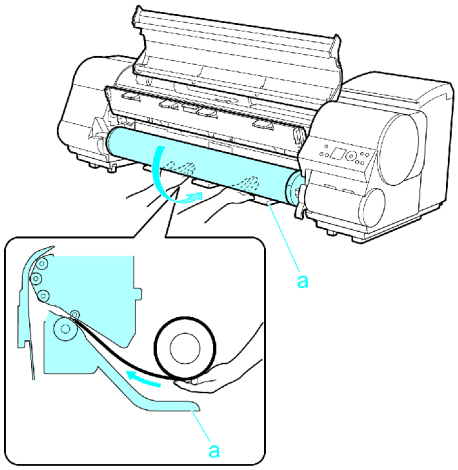
Caution

- Be careful not to drop the roll and hurt yourself when loading it.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Roll Holder shaft (a) and the guide grooves (b) when loading rolls.

Note

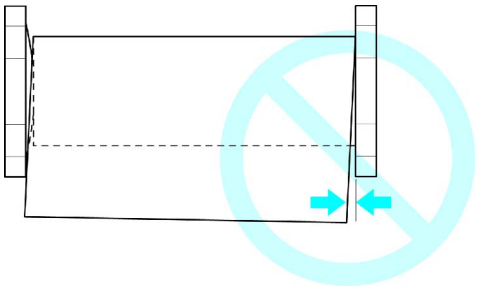
- For instructions on attaching the Roll Holder to rolls, see “Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls”. (→P.115)

4. Using both hands, pull out the roll evenly on both ends and insert it in the Paper Feed Slot (a). Advance the roll until the buzzer sounds.

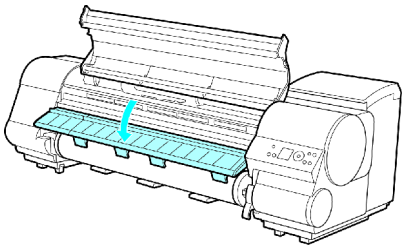


Important

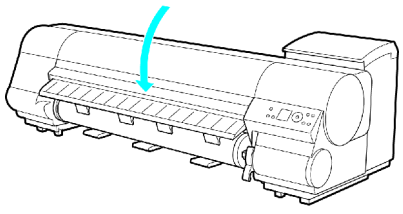
- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- Load the roll so that there is no gap between the right edge of the paper and the Roll Holder.



5. Lower the Ejection Guide.



6. Close the Top Cover.



7. Press the **OK** button.

The paper is now advanced.

After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the Display Screen.

At this point, specify the type of paper. (→P.113)

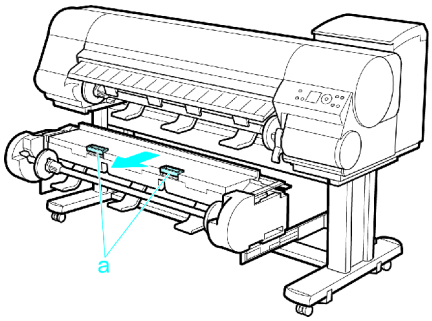
Loading rolls in the Roll 2 (Lower) holder

Caution

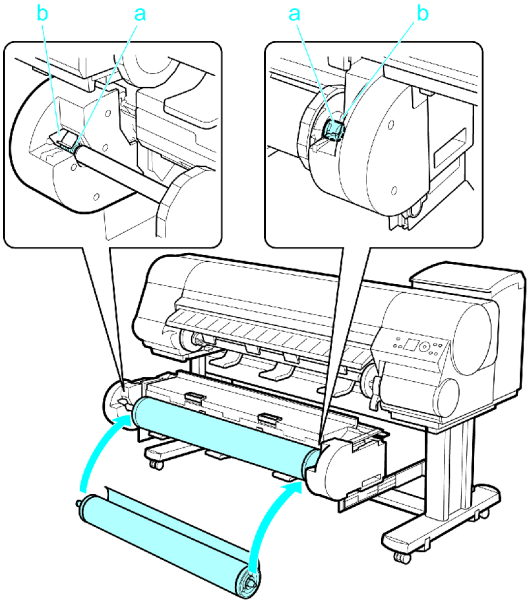
- Do not detach the Roll Unit in the following cases.
  - During printing
    Vibration from removing the Roll Unit may affect the printing quality.
  - If a sheet is loaded in the printer
    The sheet may be ejected, and (rarely) it may be bent.

1. Confirm that a roll is selected as the paper source. (→P.112)

2. Holding the Roll Unit Lever (a), pull out the Roll Unit.



3. Holding the Roll Holder so that the side with the white gear faces the side of the Roll Holder Slot with a white gear, load the Roll Holder shaft (a) into the grooves (b) on both ends of the Roll Holder Slot.



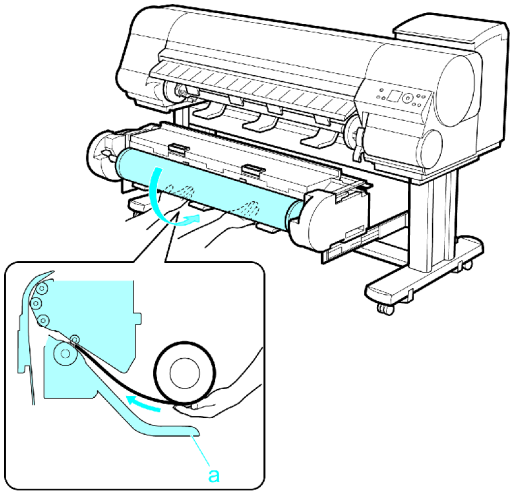
Caution

- Be careful not to drop the roll and hurt yourself when loading it.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Roll Holder shaft (a) and the guide grooves (b) when loading rolls.

Note

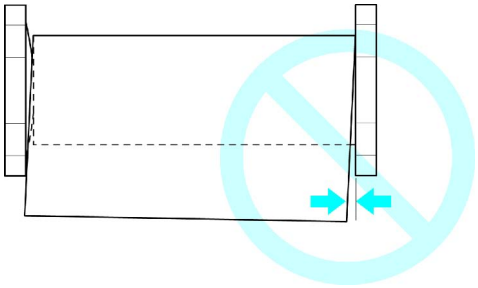
- For instructions on attaching the Roll Holder to rolls, see “Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls”. (→P.115)

4. Pull out the roll evenly on both ends and insert it in the Paper Feed Slot (a). Advance the roll until the buzzer sounds.

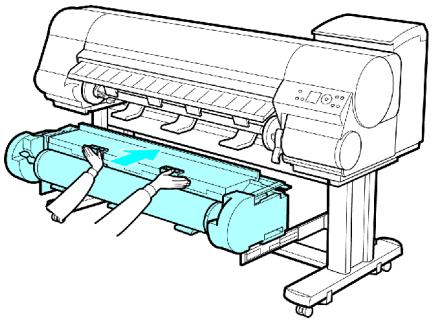


Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- Load the roll so that there is no gap between the right edge of the paper and the Roll Holder.



5. In a crouching position, push the Roll Unit into the printer.



6. Position the Wheeled Output Stacker by the printer. (→P.159)
7. Press the **OK** button.

   The paper is now advanced.

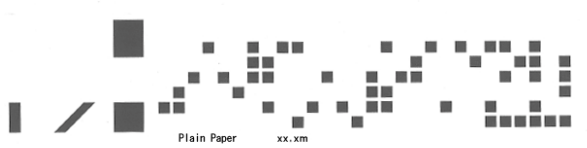
After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the Display Screen.
At this point, specify the type of paper. (→P.113)

Removing the Roll from the Printer

Remove rolls from the printer as follows.

Note

- If the Wheeled Output Stacker is installed, remove it in advance. (→P.159)
- If you need to cut a printed roll, select **Paper Cutting** in the printer menu and cut the roll at the desired position. (→P.139)
- If you have selected **Media Menu** > **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** in the printer menu, a barcode indicating the amount of paper left is printed on the leading edge of the roll. However, barcodes are not printed on some types of paper, and only a text message indicating paper information is printed.



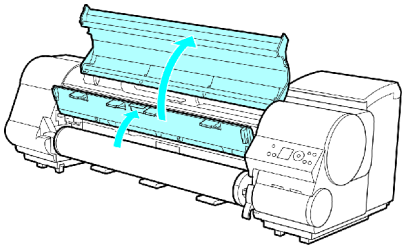
Caution

- If you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper, do not remove the roll before the barcode is printed. You will be unable to manage the amount of roll paper left if you move the Release Lever and remove the roll before the barcode is printed on it.

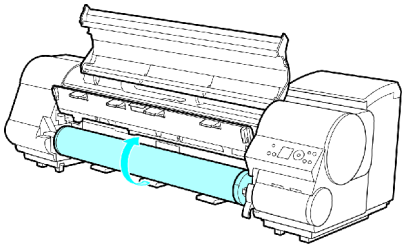
Removing rolls from the Roll 1 (Upper) position

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.

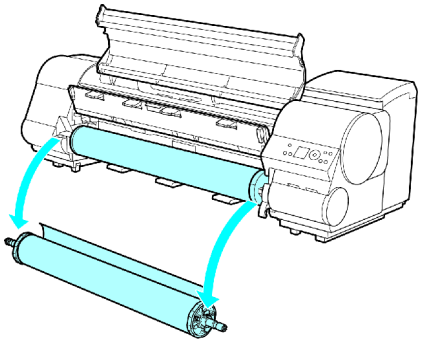
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Remove Roll**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll 1 (Upper)**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The roll can now be removed.
4. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



5. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder in the direction of the arrow to rewind the roll.



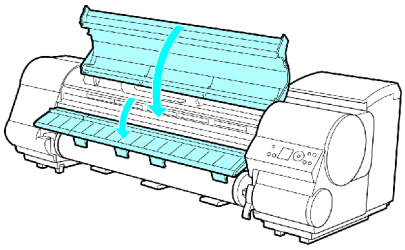
6. Remove the Roll Holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



Note

- For instructions on removing the Roll Holder from rolls, see “Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls”. (→P.129)

7. Lower the Ejection Guide and close the Top Cover.



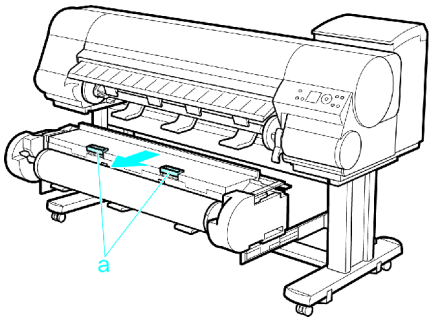
Note

- To load new paper in the printer at this point, see “Loading Rolls in the Printer”. (→P.118)

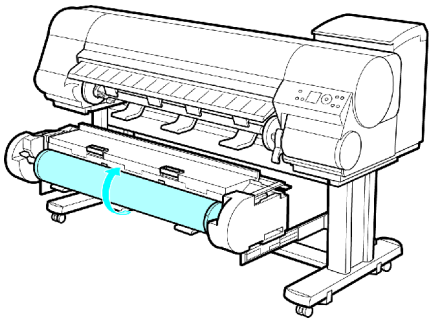
Removing rolls from the Roll 2 (Lower) position

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.

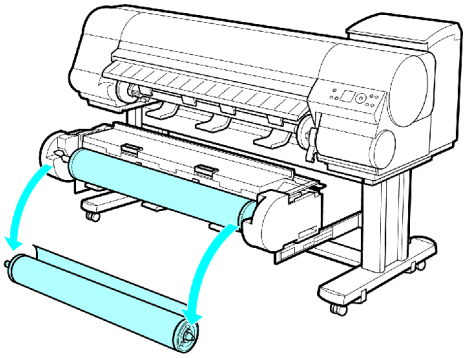
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Remove Roll**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll 2 (Lower)**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The roll can now be removed.
4. After confirming that the Online lamp is off, hold the Roll Unit Lever (a) and pull out the Roll Unit.



5. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder in the direction of the arrow to rewind the roll.



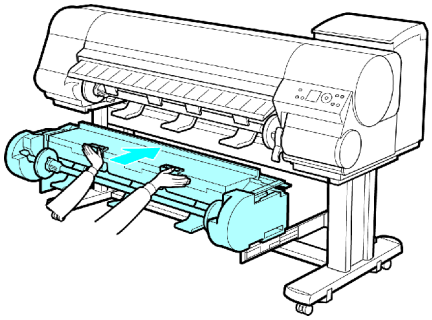
6. Remove the Roll Holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



Note

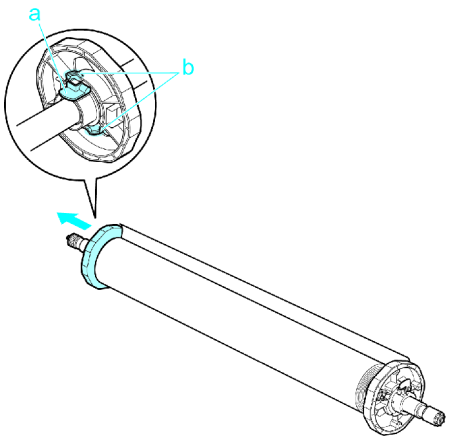
- For instructions on removing the Roll Holder from rolls, see “Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls”. (→P.129)
- To load new paper in the printer at this point, see “Loading Rolls in the Printer”. (→P.118)

7. In a crouching position, push the Roll Unit in with both hands.

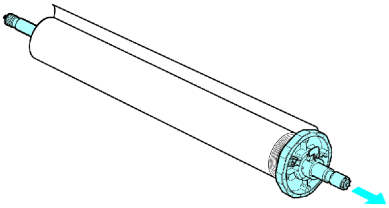


Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls

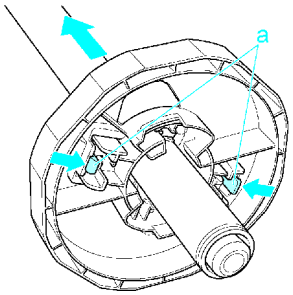
1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



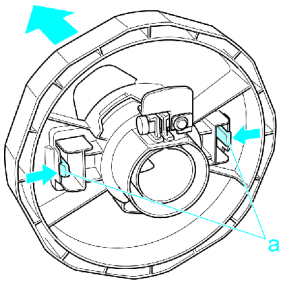
2. Remove the Roll Holder from the roll.



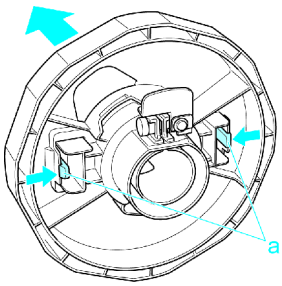
3. When removing attachments, push the tips (a) in as you remove the attachment.
   - 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 (Roll Holder side)



   - 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 (Holder Stopper side)



- 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment



Important

- Store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

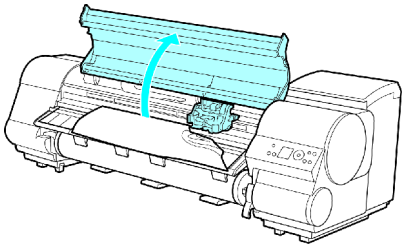
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

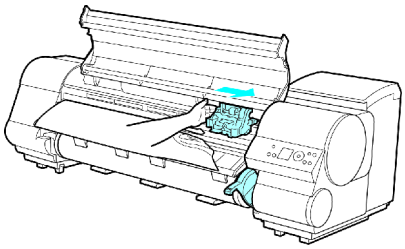
Note

- If you do not find any scraps or jams, see “Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found”. (→P.615)

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.25)
2. Open the Top Cover.

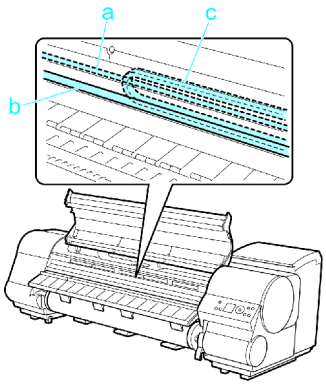


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper.

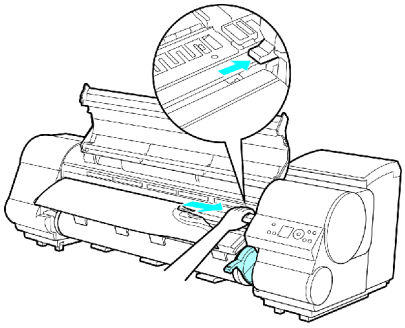


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



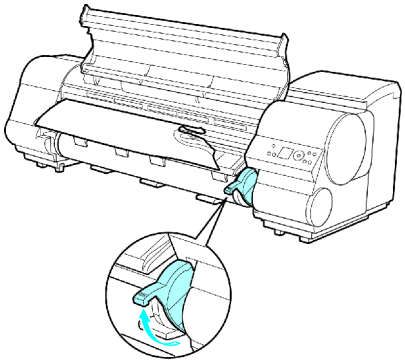
4. If the Cutter is out, move the Cutter to the right side, away from the paper.



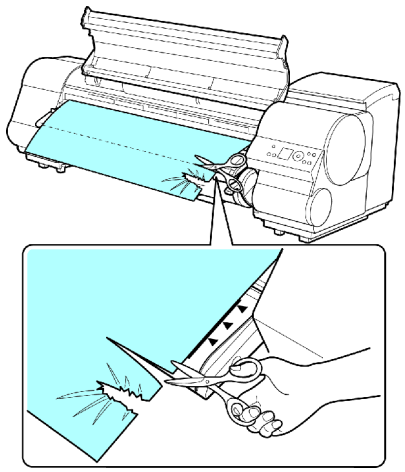
Important

- If the Cutter is on the left side, be sure to move it to the right. If the Cutter is on the left side when you turn the printer on, the printer may rip the paper.

5. Lift the Release Lever.



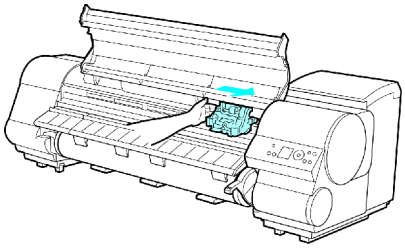
6. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use a scissors or cutting tool to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

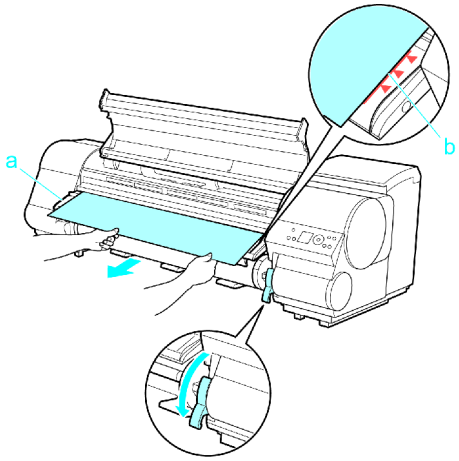
7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

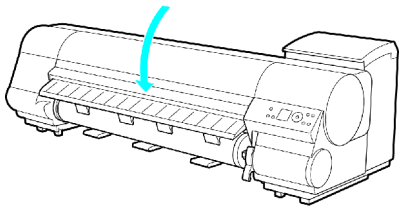
8. Hold the edge of the roll paper in the middle as you gently pull it evenly to the position of the Ejection Guide (a). Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b), keeping this side parallel to the line, and then lower the Release Lever.



Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.
- If you pull out too much of the roll, an excessive amount will be cut away.

9. Close the Top Cover.



10. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

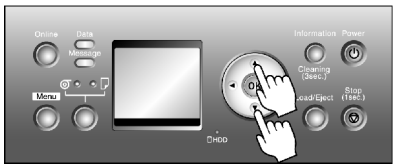
The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

Note

- You can ensure that the edge is cut neatly by selecting **Paper Cutting** in the printer menu. (→P.139)

Feeding Roll Paper Manually

When the printer is offline, you can advance or retract the roll on the Platen by pressing ▲ or ▼.



1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.
2. Confirm that a roll is selected as the paper source. (→P.112)
3. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to advance or retract the roll.

   Press ▲ to retract the roll manually.

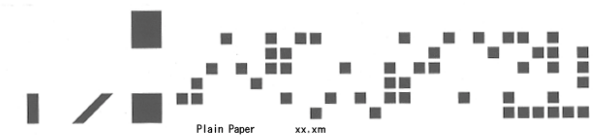
   Press ▼ to advance the roll manually.

Note

- Holding down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second moves the roll about 1 mm (0.04 in).
  Holding down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second moves the roll until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates **End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.**.

Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left

If you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper, when the roll is ejected, a barcode with text is printed on the roll paper that identifies the type of paper and amount left. When this function is activated and barcodes are printed on the roll paper, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected after rolls are loaded. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.



Note

- If the document is not cut but kept in the printer, only the text message is printed.

Important

- Because this function is not compatible with clear film, an error message may be displayed (**The roll is empty.**) after you load clear film. For this reason, deactivate the function before loading clear film.
- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to activate monitoring of the remaining roll paper.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

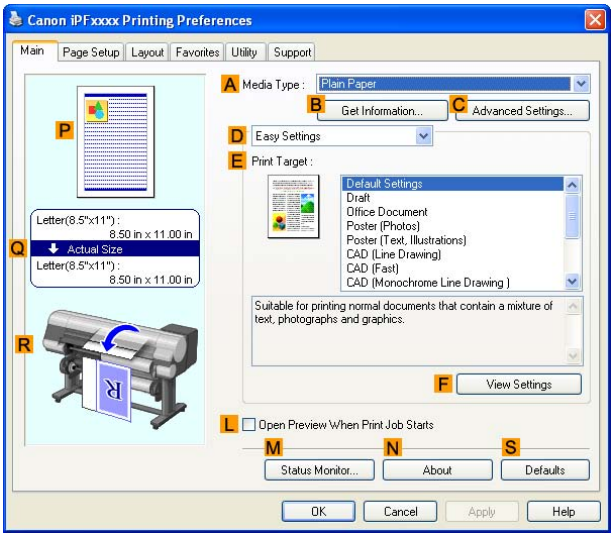
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ManageRemainRoll**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the setting, and then press the **OK** button.

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

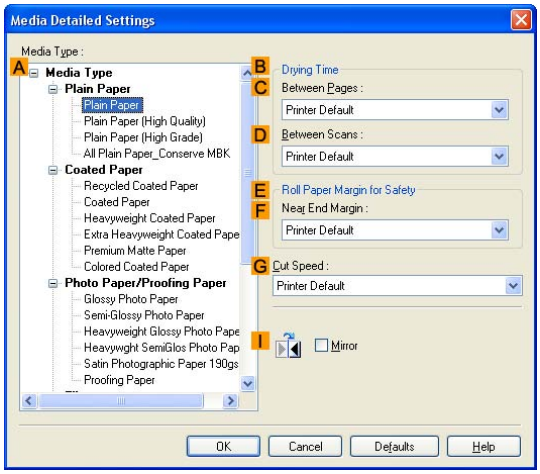
When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, if the Cutter touches printed surfaces that are still wet, it may damage the paper or cause rough cut edges. Also, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. You can prevent problems by adjusting the drying time after printing before the paper is cut.

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
   (→P.383)
2. Select the **Main** sheet and click C **Advanced Settings** in A **Media Type**.

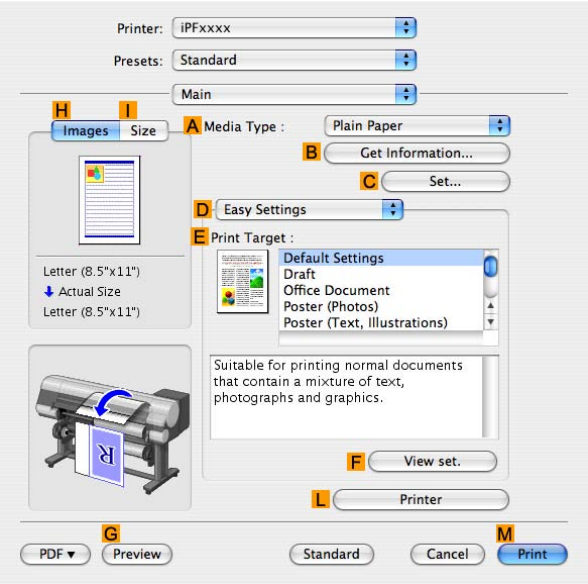


3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in C **Between Pages** and D **Between Scans** in B **Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
   (→P.389)

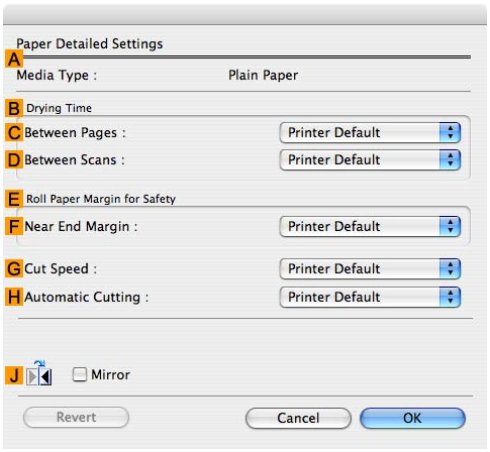


Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **C Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.430)



Note

- By factory default, **Drying Time** is deactivated (**Off**) for all paper types.
- To have the printer wait for ink to dry immediately after printing without releasing paper, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject** in the printer menu.
(→P.139)

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How a roll is cut after ejection varies depending on the printer settings.

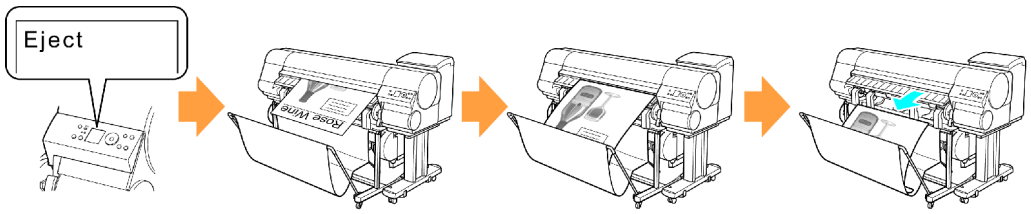
Cutting Method		Menu Settings		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	**Cutting Mode**	**Automatic**	**Auto Cut**	**Yes**
Eject (→P.140)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll using the Cutter Unit, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.		**Eject**		**Yes**
Manual (→P.141)	Choose this setting when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit. Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), in **Auto Cut**, select **Yes**, or select **Print Cut Guideline**. (→P.366)		**Manual**		**No Yes Print Cut Guideline**
Paper Cutting (→P.142)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when the printer driver is configured to **Auto Cut** > **No** or **Print Cut Guideline**. Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	**Paper Cutting**	**Yes**		**No Print Cut Guideline**

Note

- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have specified **Auto Cut** > **Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:

Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)



Select **Eject** | Print | Stopped automatically at the cut position | As you support the document to prevent it from dropping, cut by pressing the **Stop** button

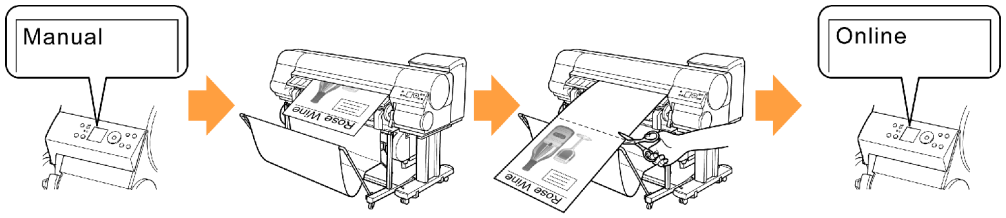
Important

- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, have two people support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.
   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
7. As you support the printed document to prevent it from dropping, hold down the **Stop** button for at least a second to cut the roll.

Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit)



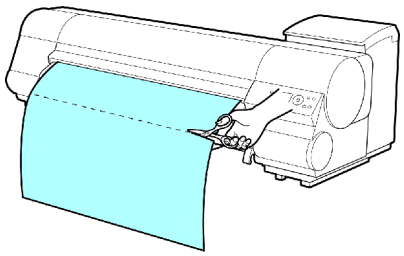
Select **Manual** | Print | Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Online** button and cut manually | Rewind paper by pressing the **Online** button

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Start printing.

   The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.
7. Press the **Online** button.

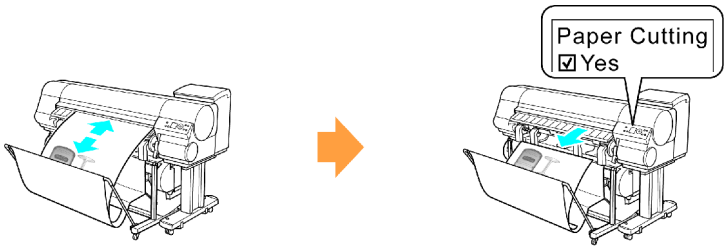
   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
8. Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.



9. Press the **Online** button.

   The roll is rewound, and rewinding stops automatically.

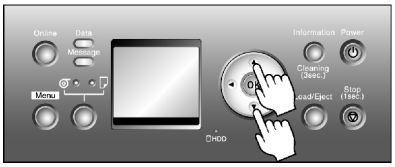
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



Feed paper the cutting position by pressing ▲or ▼

Paper Cutting

1. After pressing the **Online** button to bring the printer offline, press ▲ or ▼ to advance the roll paper to the position for cutting.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Cutting**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

Caution

- If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

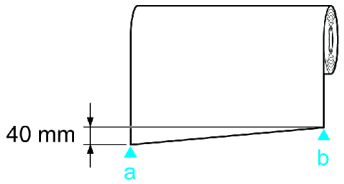
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

  If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 40 mm (1.6 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 40 mm. However, paper may sometimes be cut, depending on the state of the leading edge.

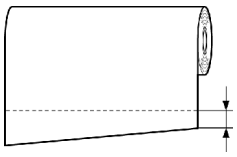


- **Off**

  The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed. This setting is **Off** for most types of paper, by default. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)

- **On**

  The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut off from the leading edge varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)



Note

- If you print on paper that has an irregular width, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold or to **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

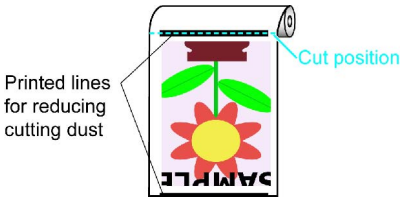
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

   This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

The printer is equipped with a function to reduce cutting dust for media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut. This may improve printing quality and help prevent Printhead damage. You can set up this function to be activated for some types of paper.
When this function is activated, black lines are printed at the leading and trailing edges of documents.



Important

- Do not activate this function for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or thin paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when this function is activated. Deactivate this function before borderless printing.

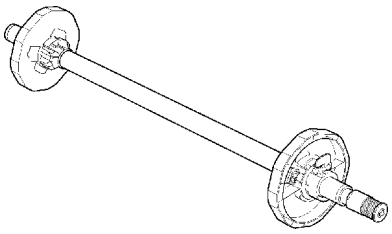
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The function to reduce cutting dust is now activated.

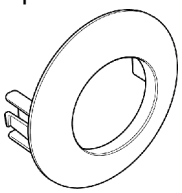
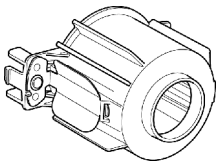
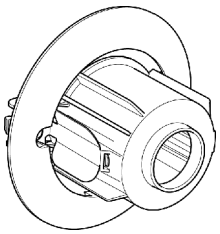
Roll Holder Set

Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-44 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. (→P.115)

- Roll Holder Set RH2-44
  - Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



  - Attachments

Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment	Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 

Automatic Roll Switching

Two rolls can be loaded on the printer, in the Roll 1 (Upper) position and in the Roll 2 (Lower) position. Selecting **Roll Paper (Auto)** in **Paper Source** in the printer driver enables automatic selection and printing on the roll that suits the print job from the loaded rolls.

The printer determines which roll to use based on these conditions, in the following order.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, neither paper feed slot is loaded with paper suitable for the print job. Check the print job and replace the paper. (→P.125)

1. When **ManageRemainRoll** in the printer menu is set to **On**, the roll longer than the length of a single page of the print job is used.
   When **ManageRemainRoll** is set to **Off** and both rolls are longer than the print job, the second condition determines which roll is used.

   Note

   - When the roll currently advanced is a type of paper that cannot be cut and the printed pages have not been cut, the currently advanced roll is used.
   - If both rolls are too short, an error message is displayed.

2. Use a type of paper that matches the print job.
   When both or neither loaded roll matches the type of paper in the print job, the third condition determines which roll is used.

   Note

   - When **Detect Mismatch** in the printer menu is set to **Warning** or **None**, the roll is determined by the following conditions.
   - When neither loaded roll matches the type of paper in the print job and **Detect Mismatch** in the printer menu is set to **Pause**, an error message is displayed.

3. If **Roll Switching** in the printer menu is set to **No RollSwitching**, the currently advanced roll is used.
   If **Roll Switching** in the printer menu is set to **Use Optimal Size**, the fourth condition determines which roll is used.
4. When the print job calls for borderless printing, the roll compatible with borderless printing is used.
   When the print job does not specify borderless printing, or if both rolls are compatible with borderless printing, the fifth condition determines which roll is used.

   Note

   - If neither roll is compatible with borderless printing, an error message is displayed.

5. Use a size of paper that matches the width specified in the print job.
   When both loaded rolls match the width of paper in the print job or the width is not specified in the job, the sixth condition determines which roll is used.
   When **Width Detection** is set to **Off**, the seventh condition determines which roll is used.

   Note
   - When neither loaded roll matches the width specified in the print job, an error message is displayed.

6. Use a size of paper that accommodates the width specified in the print job.
   When both loaded rolls can accommodate the width specified in the print job, the seventh condition determines which roll is used.

   Note
   - When **Detect Mismatch** in the printer menu is set to **Warning** or **None**, the roll is determined by the following conditions.
   - When neither loaded roll is wide enough for the print job and **Detect Mismatch** in the printer menu is set to **Pause**, an error message is displayed.

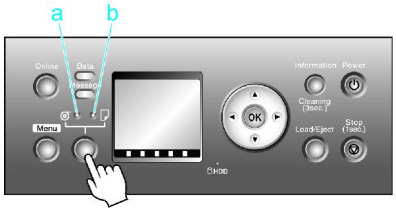
7. The roll closest to the roll width specified in the print job is used.
   If both rolls are equally close to the specified width, the currently advanced roll is used.

Handling sheets for paper feed slots

Selecting the Paper Source

When advancing paper, press the **Feeder Selection** button and select the source.
You can determine the selected source by checking which lamp is lit-either the **Roll Media lamp** (a) or the **Cut Sheet lamp** (b).

- **Roll Media lamp** : Selected when printing on Roll Media.
- **Cut Sheet lamp** : Selected when printing on Sheets.



Note

- If a sheet is loaded when you change the paper source to a roll, **Eject sheet?** is displayed. Press the **OK** button and remove the sheet.
- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - When the Message lamp is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.647)
  - When the Data lamp is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing is finished.
  - When a printer menu operation is in progress
    Wait until the operation is finished before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of loading paper
    Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of replacing Ink Tank
    Finish replacing the Ink Tank before selecting the paper source.
  - When the Top Cover is open
    Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. In this case, select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cut Sheet Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
  If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to Plain Paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.153)

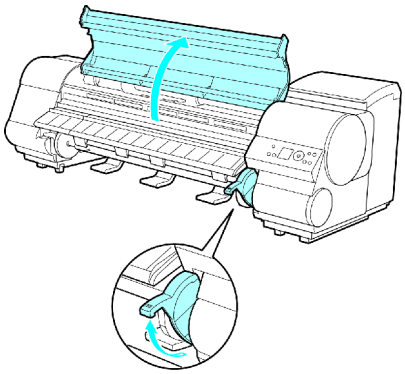
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Loading Sheets in the Printer

Note

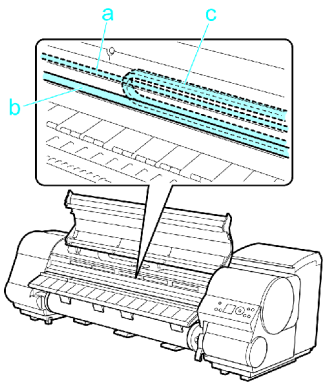
- For details on supported types and sizes of paper, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.109) (→P.104)
- If the Platen is dirty, clean inside the Top Cover before loading paper. (→P.597)
- After pressing the **Load/Eject** button, you can refer to instructions on the Display Screen as you load the paper. (→P.76)

1. If you send a print job from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Lift the Release Lever and open the Top Cover.



Important

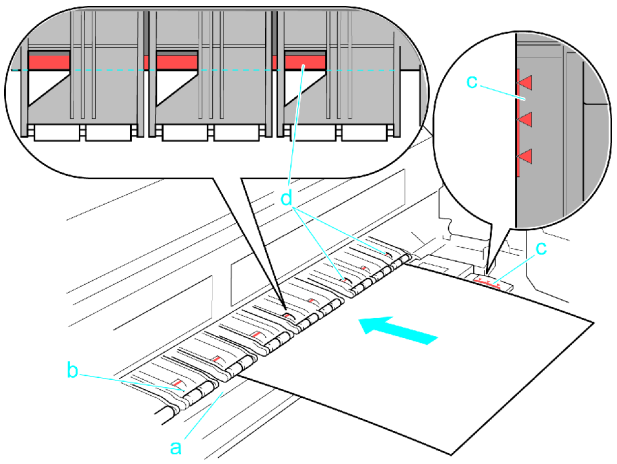
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



2. With a sheet lengthwise and printing-side up, insert it between the Platen (a) and the Paper Retainer (b). Align the edges of the sheet as follows.

1. Align the sheet with the Paper Alignment Line (c) at right.

2. Align the inserted edge of the sheet with the leading edge of the Paper Alignment Line (d), as shown.



When inserted, sheets are automatically held by suction against the Platen.

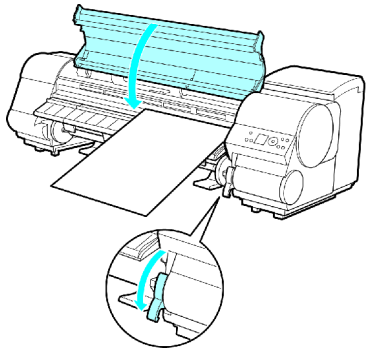
Important

- Load a sheet so that it is parallel to the Paper Alignment Line at right (c). Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Warped paper may rub against the Printhead. Straighten paper if it is warped before loading it.

Note

- You can adjust the strength of suction holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is up. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Set suction stronger by pressing the ▲ button or weaker with the ▼ button. Three settings are available. However, even if you increase the suction, it may not be sufficient to hold some types of paper against the Platen well. In this case, use your hand to load the paper.
- Sheets are held in place by suction through holes on the Platen. Although the suction may produce a noise when paper is loaded in some positions, it does not indicate a problem. If the noise is distracting, try moving the paper over slightly to the left or right (up to 1 mm [0.039 in]) while keeping it parallel to the Paper Alignment Line.
- The suction remains on for about 30 seconds during loading. If you cannot finish loading a sheet during this time, pull the sheet away and reinsert it to start the suction again.

3. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



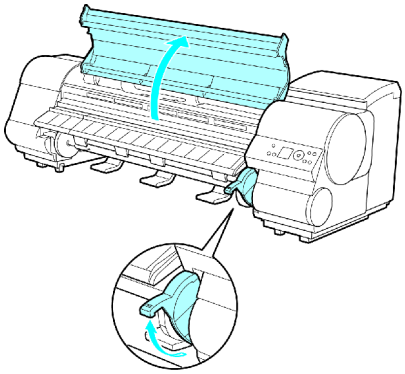
The printer now starts feeding the paper.
After the paper is advanced, the printer automatically goes online and starts printing.
If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the Display Screen.
In this case, select the type of paper. (→P.149)

Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing

When printing on non-standard sizes of paper or to specify a particular position to start printing, in the printer menu set **Width Detection** to **Off** for the paper used.
Setting **Width Detection** to **Off** will prevent paper from being automatically advanced to the position for printing. In this case, manually load paper at the position for printing.

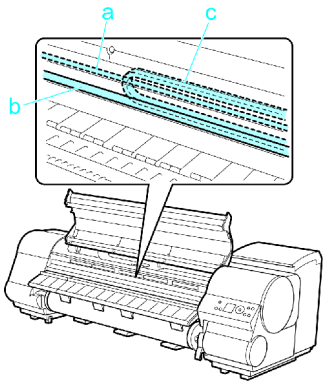
Instructions for manually loading paper at the position for printing when **Width Detection** is set to **Off** are as follows.

1. If you send a print job from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen. Lift the Release Lever and open the Top Cover.

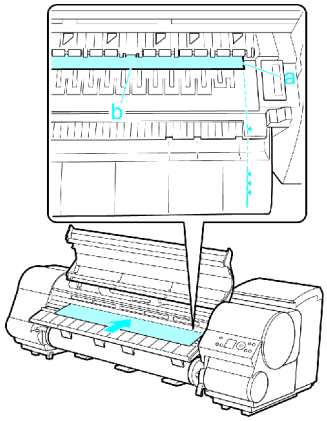


Important

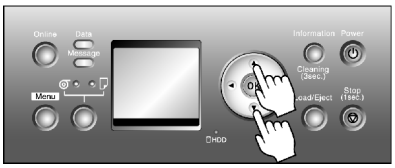
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



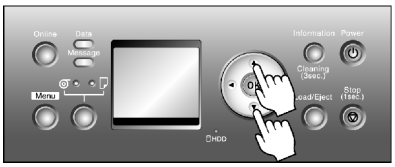
2. Keeping the right edge of the paper aligned with the extended line of the Paper Alignment Line (a) on the right side of the printer, load the paper so that the near edge is aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the Platen.
   In this case, advance the paper as far into the paper feed slot as possible because it will be printed starting at that position.



3. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.
4. If no print job has been received from the computer, press ▲ or ▼ to select of the type of paper loaded, and then press the **OK** button.
5. When **Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?** is shown on the Display Screen, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Leave OFF** and then press the **OK** button.



6. Check the position of the loaded paper and press the **OK** button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If a print job received requires paper larger than the selected paper, it may soil the Platen.

Removing Sheets

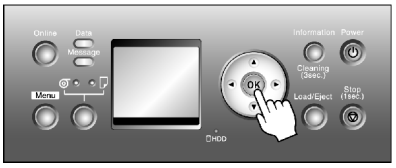
Remove sheets from the printer as follows.

1. Press the **Load/Eject** button.

Note

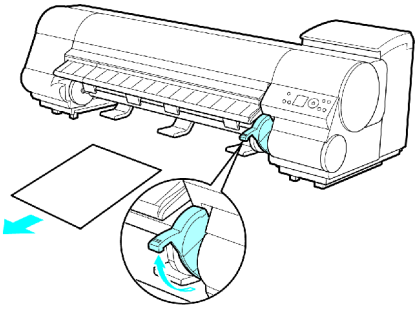
- Paper cannot be ejected by using the **Load/Eject** button when print jobs are in progress or during the ink drying period. Before ejecting paper, press the **Stop** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

2. Press the **OK** button to eject the paper.

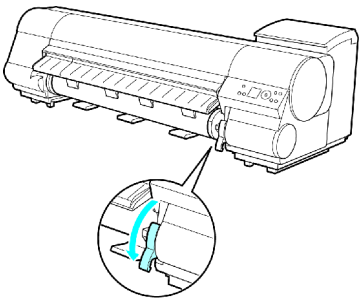


The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

3. As you hold the sheet, lift the Release Lever and remove the sheet.



4. Lower the Release Lever.



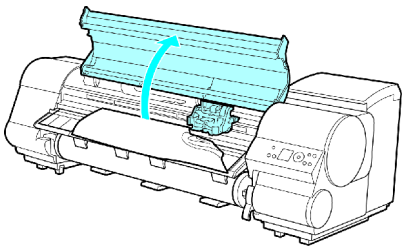
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

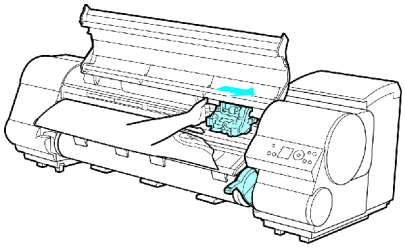
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.25)
2. Open the Top Cover.

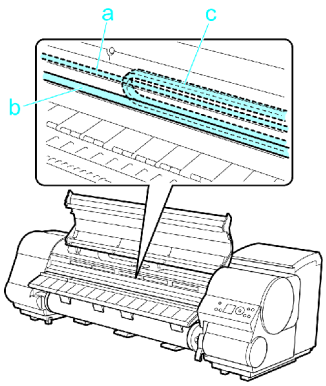


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper.

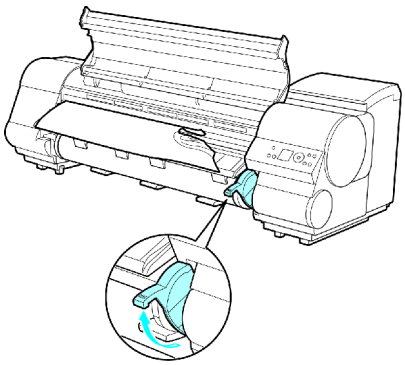


Important

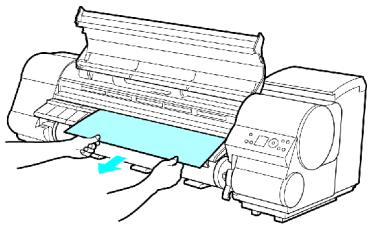
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



4. Lift the Release Lever.



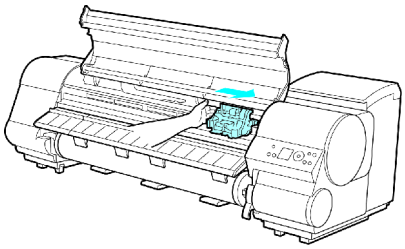
5. Hold the paper and pull it out, toward the front.



Note

- If you do not find any scraps or jams, see “Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found”. (→P.615)

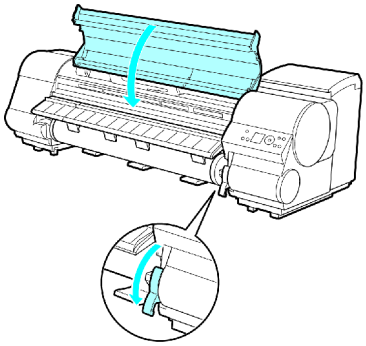
6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

7. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.

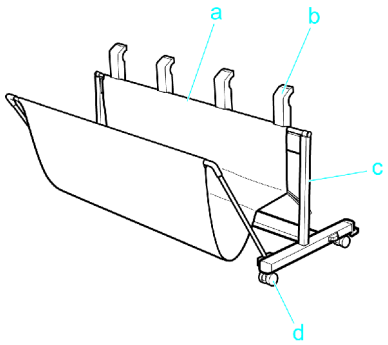


8. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

Output Stacker

Wheeled Output Stacker

An output stacker with casters, positioned in front of the printer.



a. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents.

The Output Stacker can be opened and closed using the rod in front.

b. Output Stacker Ejection Guides

Prevent printed documents from winding around the Roll Holder or being drawn into the Paper Feed Slot.

Hold the Wheeled Output Stacker by these guides when moving it.

c. Output Stacker Foot Stand

Equipped with casters to facilitate moving it.

d. Stopper

Locks the Stand casters.

Always release the Stopper before moving the printer. Moving the printer while the Stopper is locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

Note

- For instructions on assembling the Wheeled Output Stacker, see the setup guide provided with the Wheeled Output Stacker.

Using the Wheeled Output Stacker

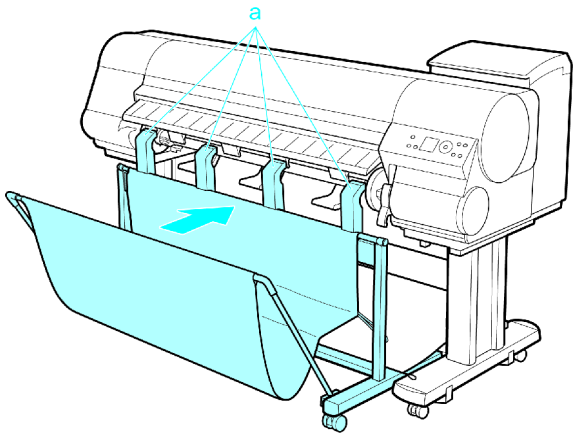
Positioning the Wheeled Output Stacker by the printer will prevent rolls from dropping on the floor after printing. The stacker is equipped with casters to facilitate moving it.

Important

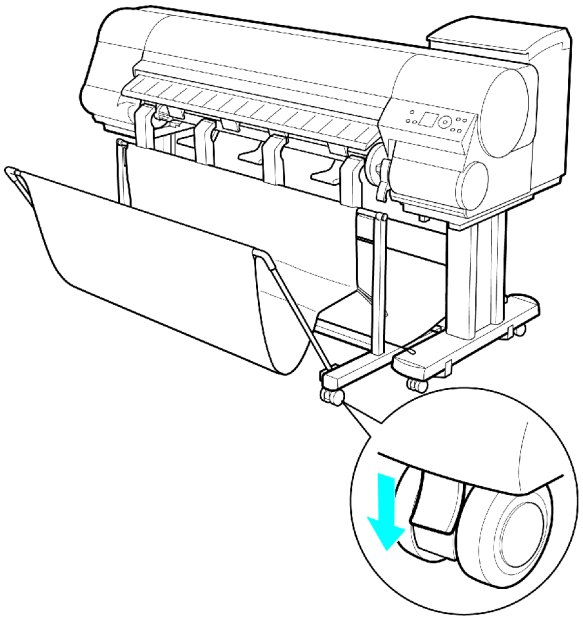
- The Output Stacker can accommodate one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.

Positioning the Wheeled Output Stacker by the printer

1. Holding the Output Stacker Ejection Guides (a), move the stacker between the printer Stand.



2. Lock the casters.

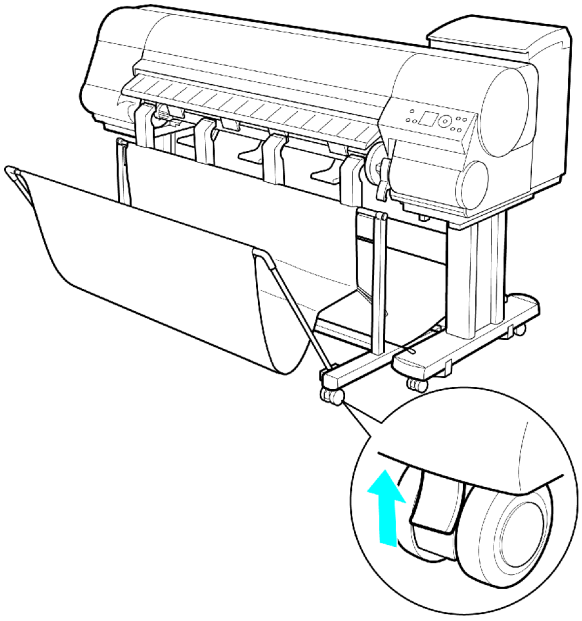


Removing the Wheeled Output Stacker from the printer

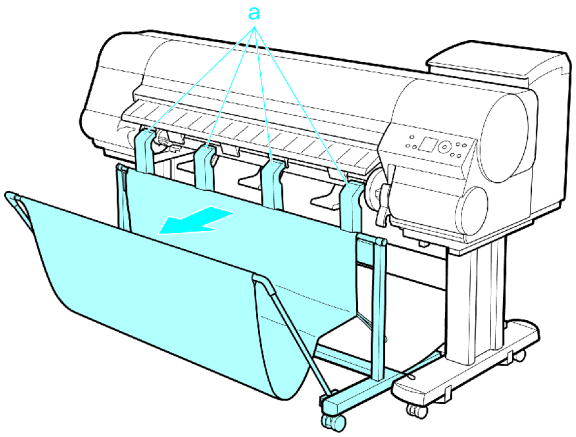
Note

- If there is not enough space to move the Wheeled Output Stacker, remove any printed documents inside the Output Stacker and fold the Output Stacker up.

1. Release the caster lock.



2. Holding the Output Stacker Ejection Guides (a), move the stacker away from the printer.



Working With Various Print Jobs

Printing Photos and Images

Printing Photos and Images

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photo	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Poster (Photos)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos.
	Poster (Text, Illustrations)	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.211)

For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

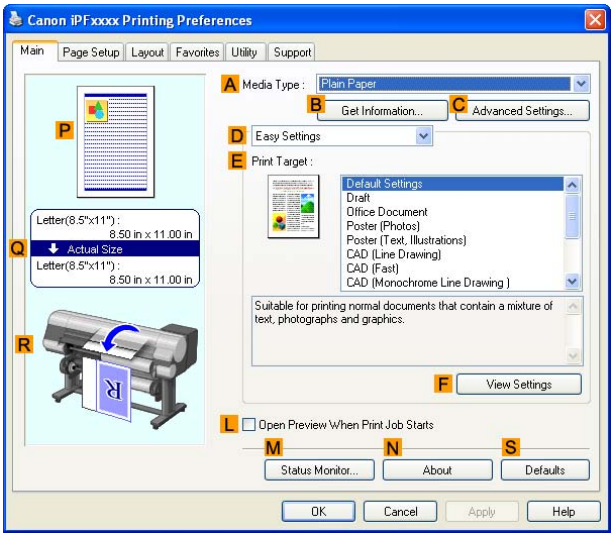
- Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.163)
- Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.165)

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



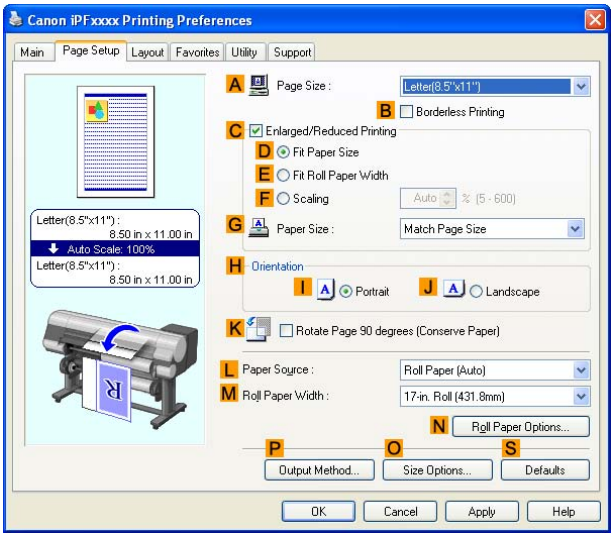
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
   In A **Media Type**, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

   Note
   - The type of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (from digital camera)** in the E **Print Target** list.

   Note
   - You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.370)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

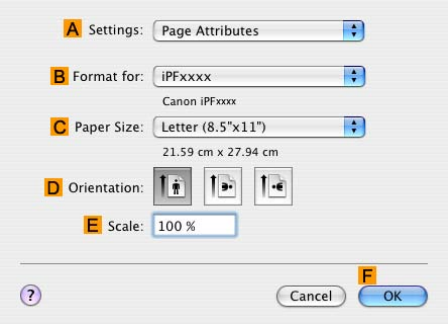
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

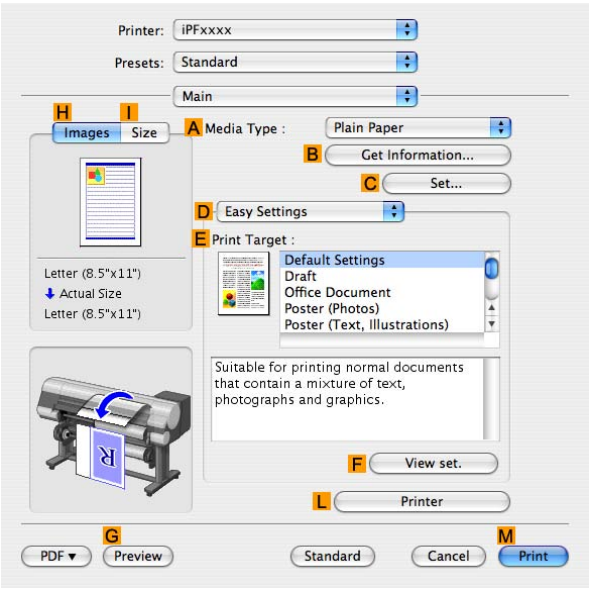
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

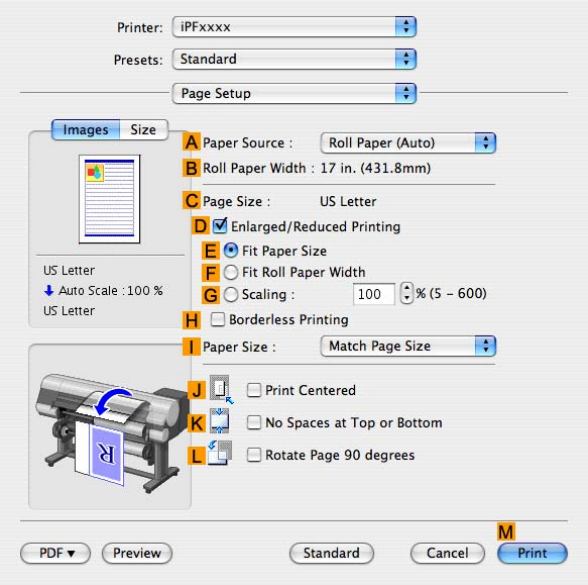
- The type of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images”. (→P.161)
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

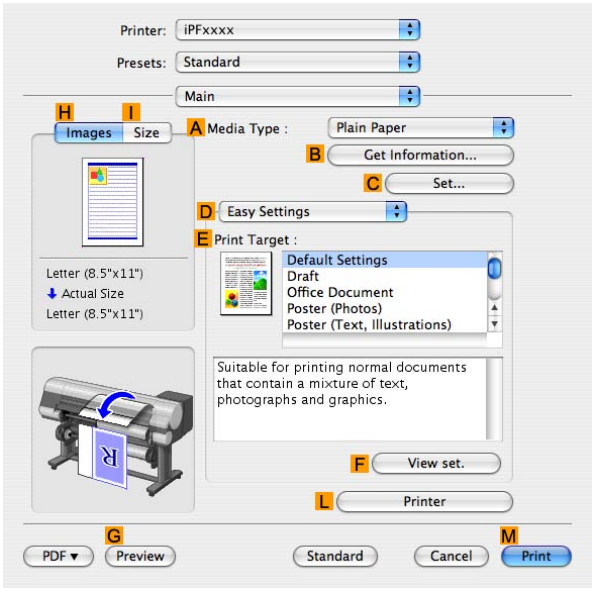


10. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

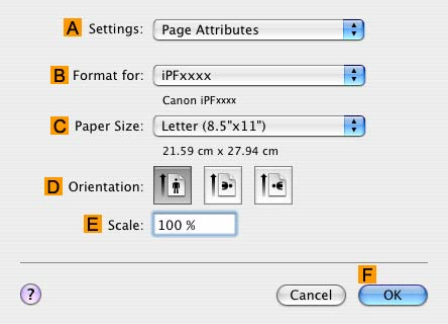
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.418)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing Photos in Monochrome

Printing Photos in Monochrome

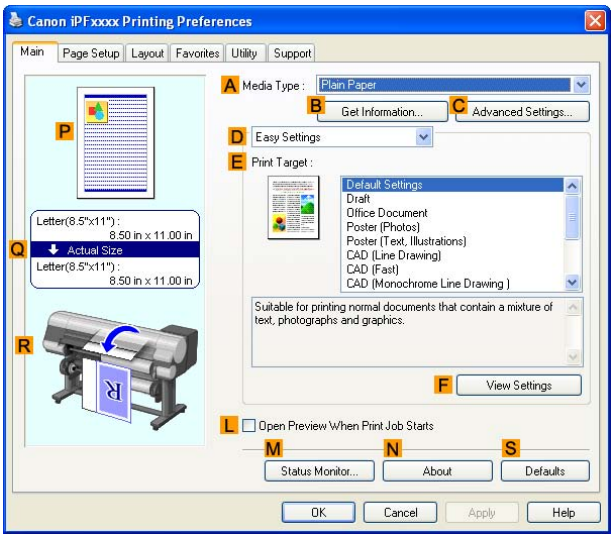
The following settings are available for monochrome printing.

Main	**Advanced Settings**	**Color Mode**	**Monochrome**	Deactivates color printing so that images are printed in monochrome, with continuous-tone color data printed using gray midtones. • Even more detailed adjustment is possible on the **Color Adjustment** sheet. • Because color ink is used to produce gray continuous-tone images, the gray may appear to have a tinge of color. Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) (→P.169) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) (→P.171)

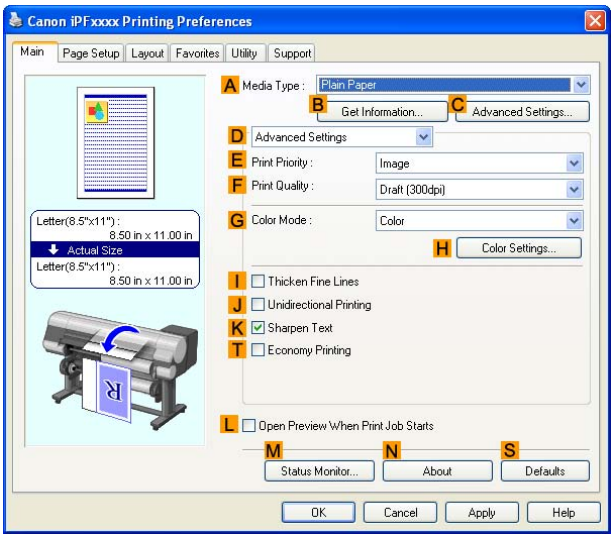
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

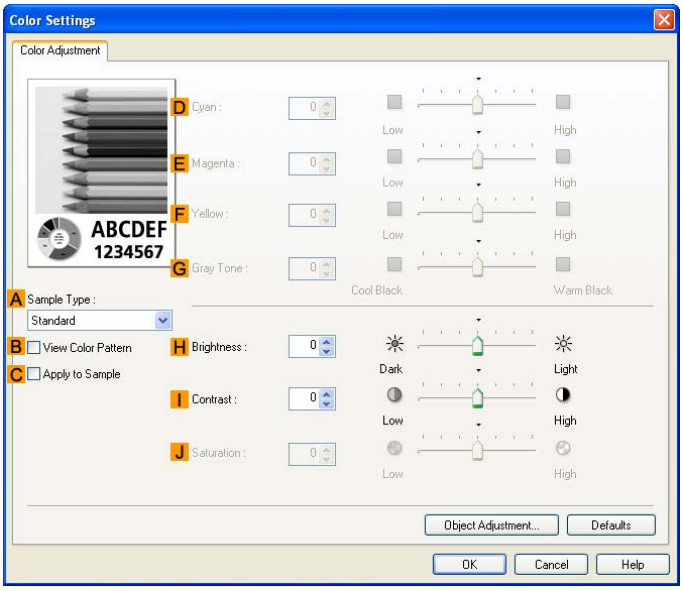


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

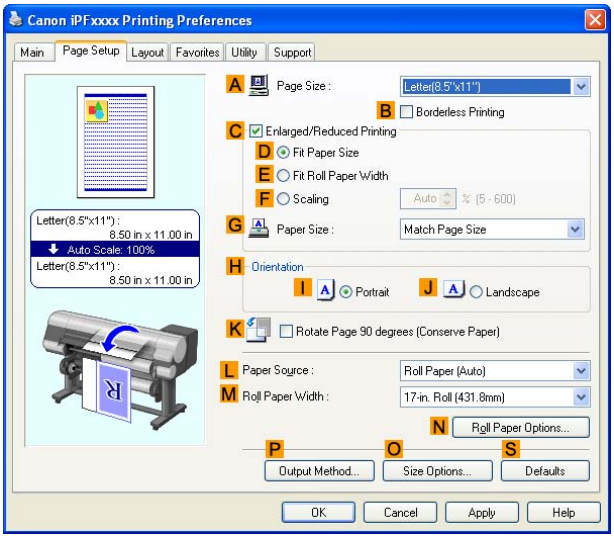


6. Click **Monochrome** in the G **Color Mode** list.

7. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings for monochrome printing on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.
9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Paper Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

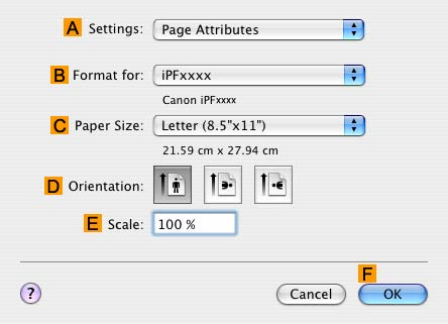
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

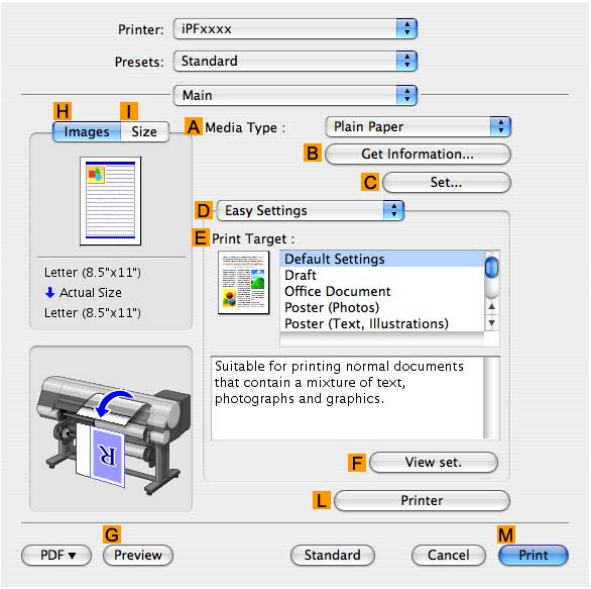
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

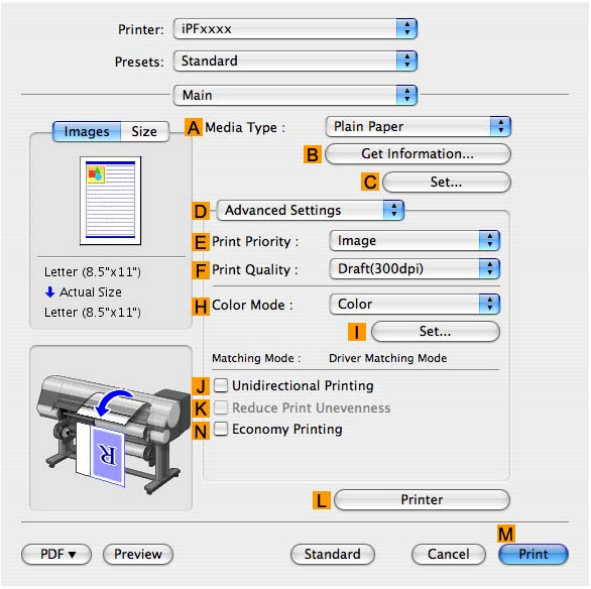


2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.

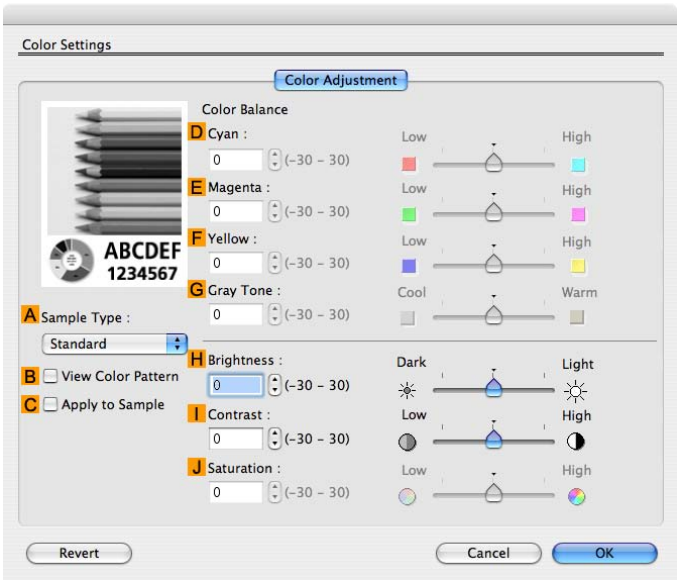


7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

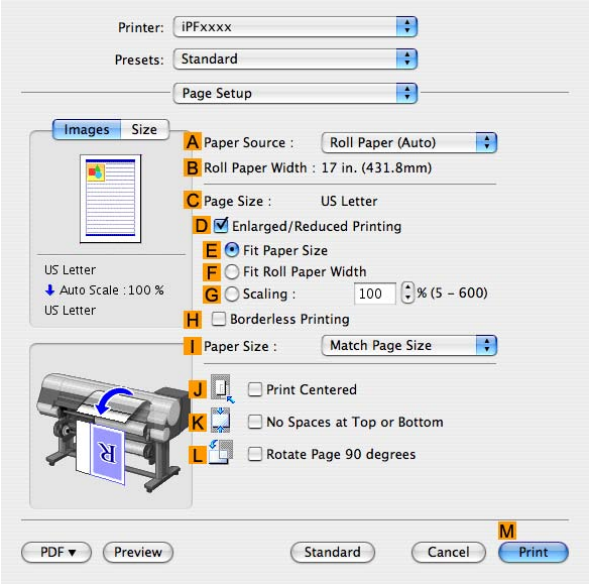


9. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** pane.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A** **Paper Source** and **C** **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.

Note

- In Windows, you can print highly precise drawings using the provided imagePROGRAF HDI Driver for AutoCAD/AutoCAD LT.
  For details on the HDI driver, see HDI Driver .

For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.176)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.178)

Printing Line Drawings and Text

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

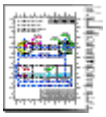
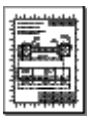
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	**CAD (Fast)**	Settings optimized for fast printing of CAD drawings.
	**CAD (B/W Line Drawing)**	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (High Accuracy)	Settings optimized for attractive printing of highly precise documents such as CAD drawings with smooth lines and small text.

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D CAD, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.211)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

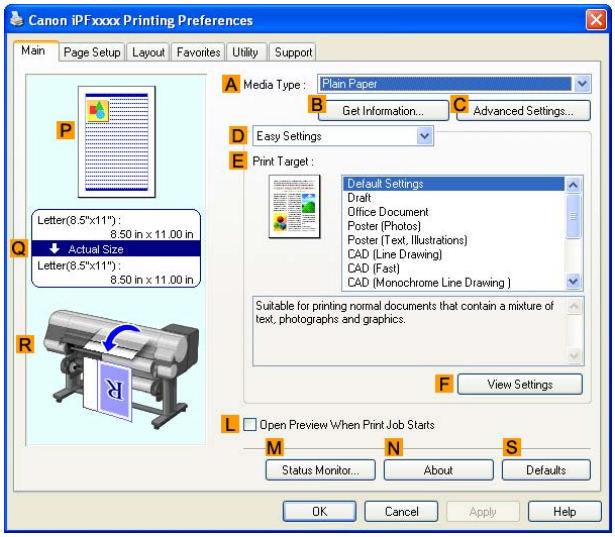
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.176)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.178)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in.])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in.])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

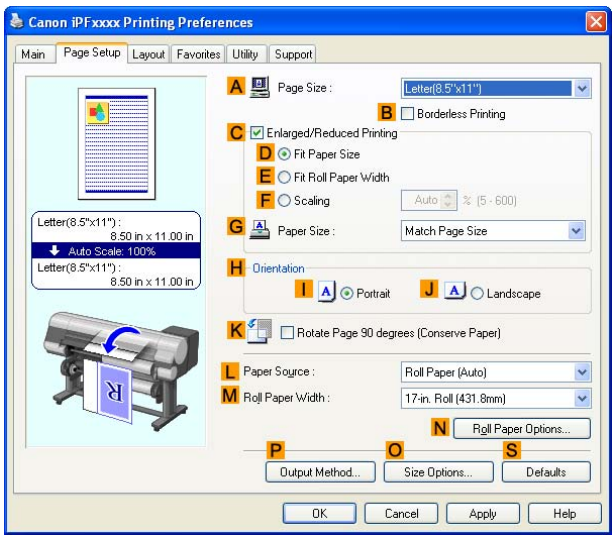


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.370)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

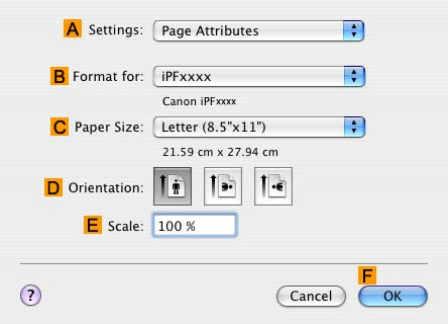
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

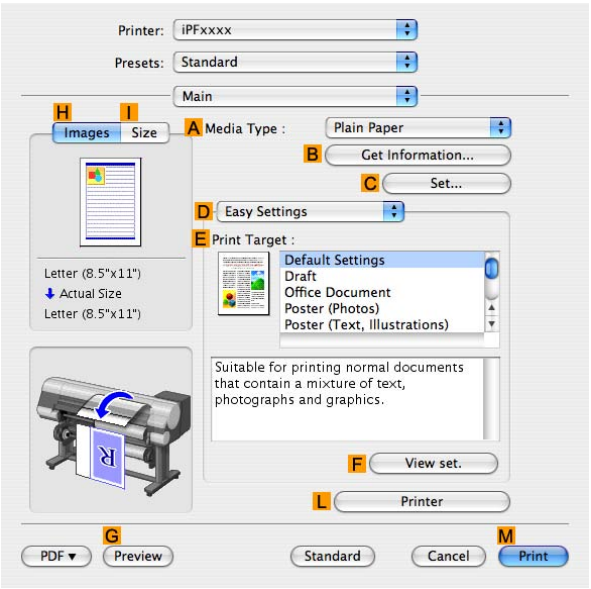
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in.])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in.])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.

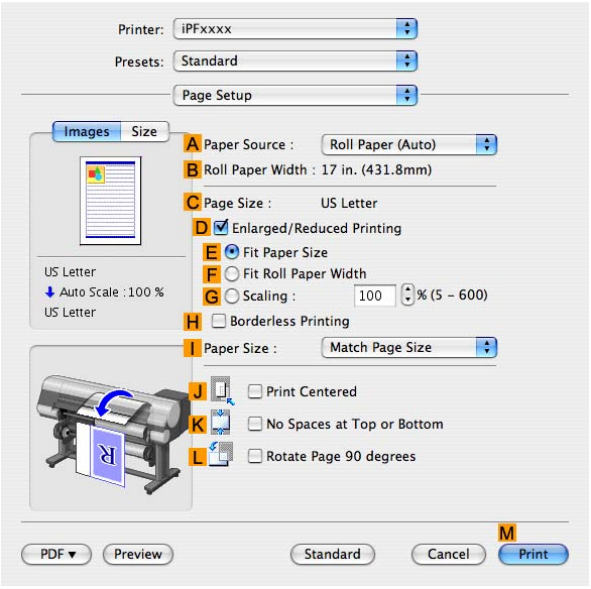


7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

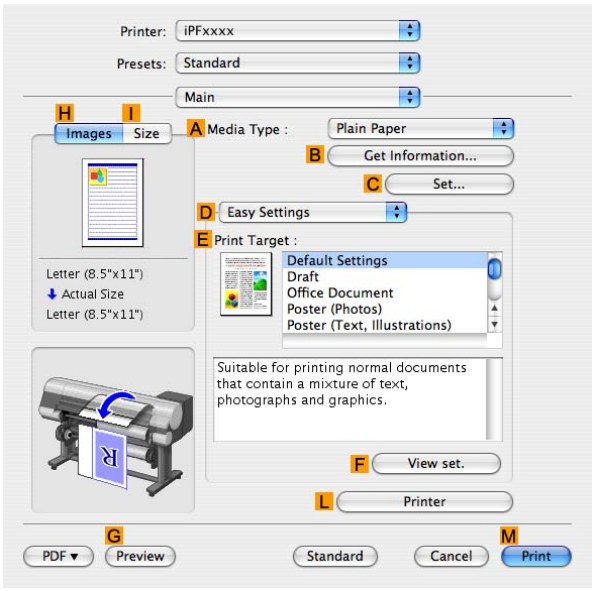


10. In the **A** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

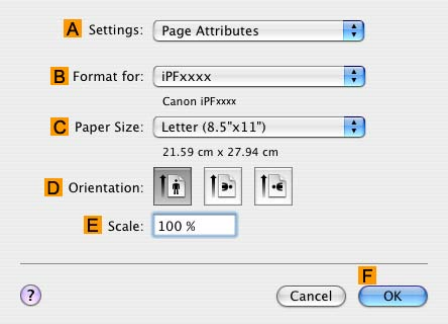
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.418)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing CAD Drawings in Monochrome

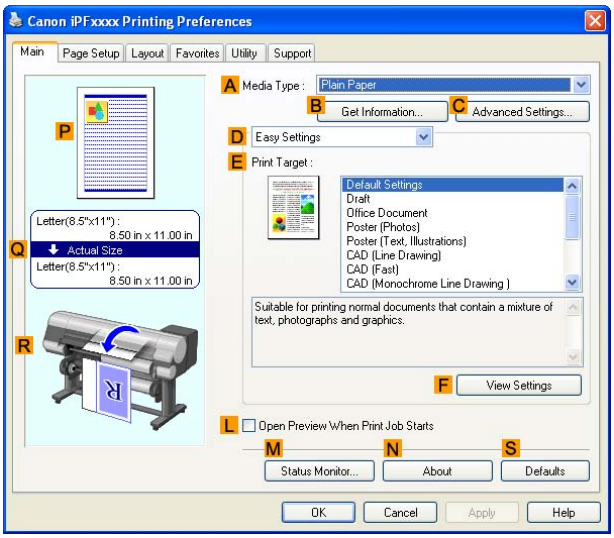
The following settings are available for monochrome printing of line drawings such as CAD documents.

Main	**Easy Settings**	**Print Target**	**CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)**	Settings optimized for monochrome printing of line drawings, such as CAD drawings. When you select **Easy Settings** > **Print Target** > **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)**, color is printed as shades of gray using black ink, for monochrome printing. • This mode may not be available for all types of paper. • Trace amounts of color ink are also used, to enhance the paper adhesion of black ink. Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.176) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.178)
	Advanced Settings	**Color Mode**	**Monochrome (BK ink)**	Monochrome printing, using black ink. Color is printed in grayscale. Use this mode when printing CAD drawings or similar line drawings in monochrome. • This mode may not be available for all types of paper. • Trace amounts of color ink are also used, to enhance the paper adhesion of black ink. Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows) (→P.182) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X) (→P.184)
			Monochrome Bitmap	All colors except white are printed in black. Colors are shown not in grayscale but solid black. Use this mode to print documents with fine color lines that might be difficult to distinguish unless printed in black, or to print sharp black lines when making copies of diazo prints. • This mode may not be available for all types of paper. • Trace amounts of color ink are also used, to enhance the paper adhesion of black ink.

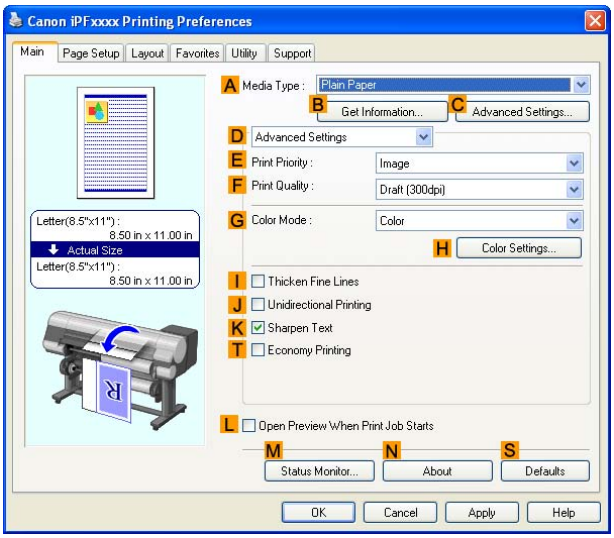
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

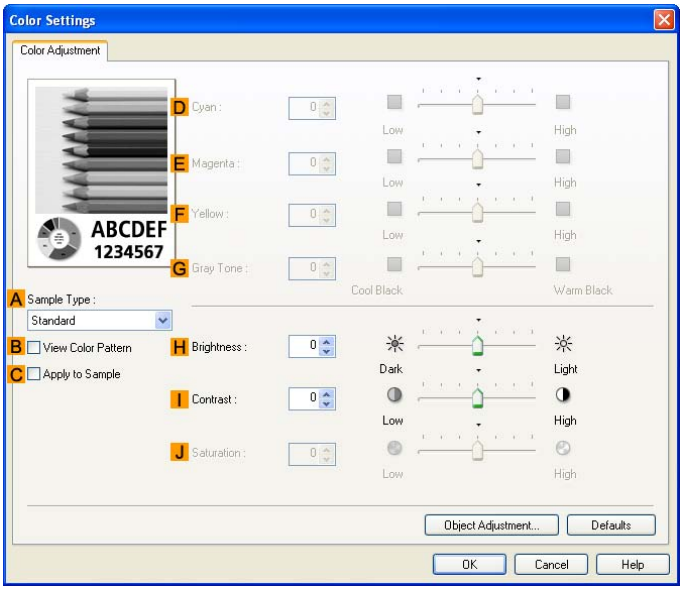


6. Click **Monochrome** in the G **Color Mode** list.

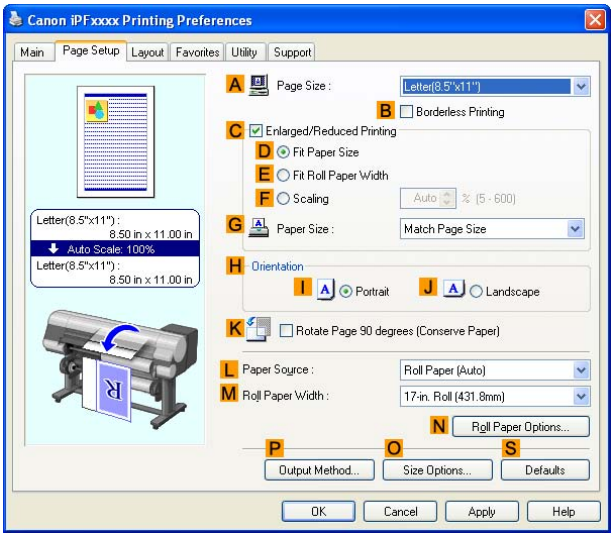
Note

- **Monochrome (BK ink)** may not be available for all types of paper.

7. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** sheet pane.
9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Paper Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

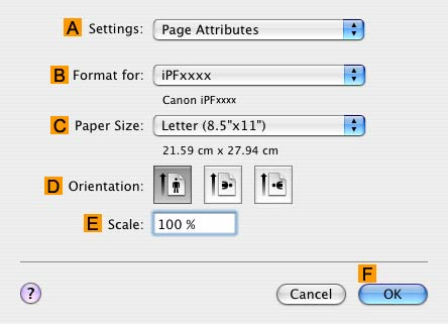
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

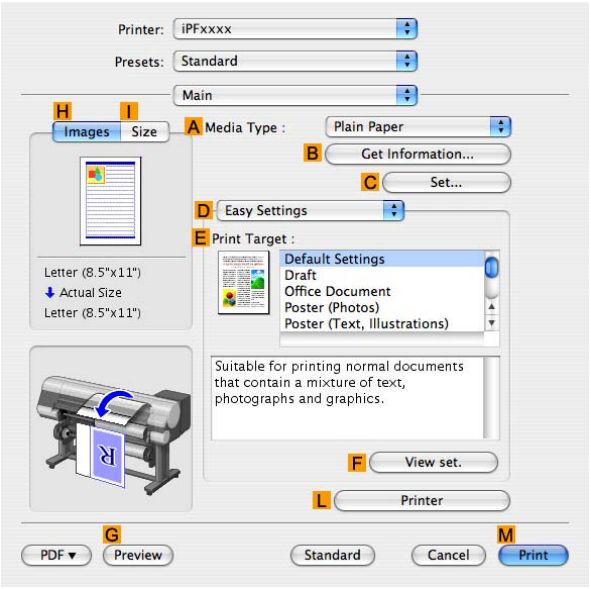
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

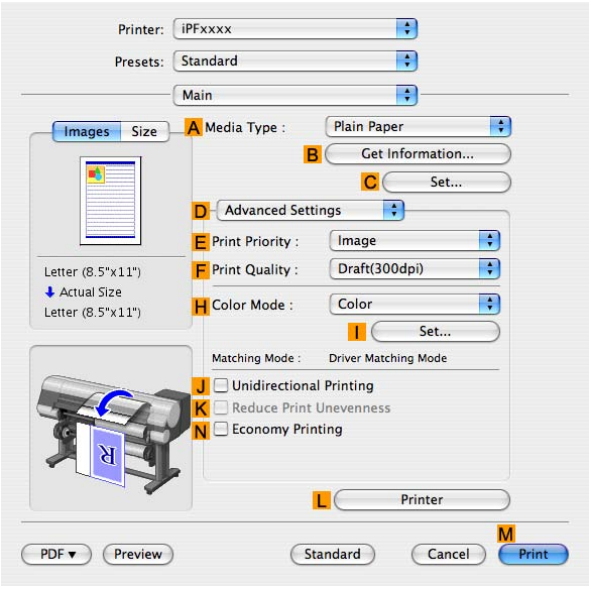


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

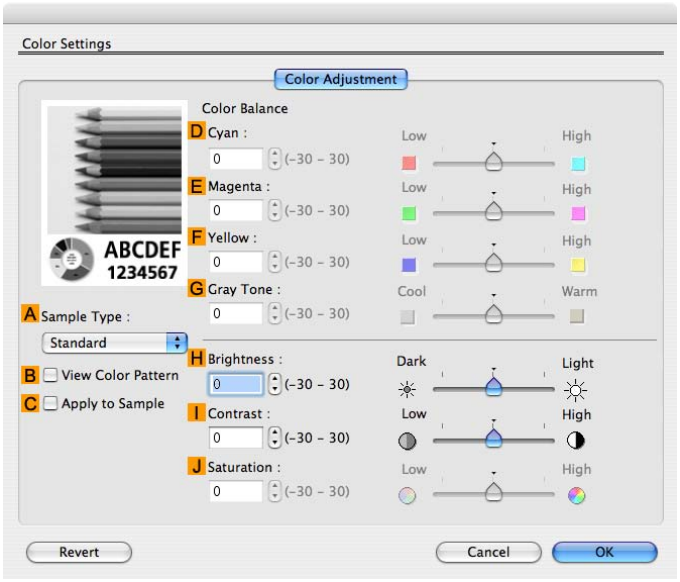


9. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.

Note

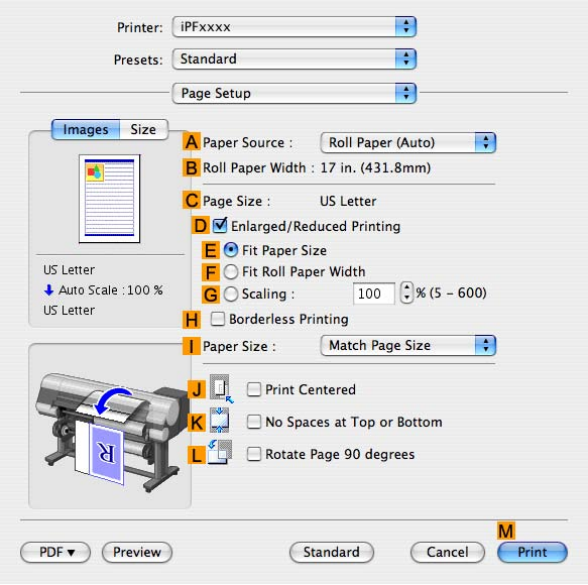
- **Monochrome** may not be available for all types of paper.

10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. Adjust the **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and other settings on the **Color Settings** pane.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of **A** **Paper Source** and **C** **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings

You can complete color settings when **Color (CAD)** is selected in **Color Mode**.
Colors can be adjusted before printing as follows when **Color Compatibility** is selected.

Note

- **Color (CAD)** is displayed when you select **Advanced Settings** on the **Main** sheet and set **Print Priority** to **Line Drawing/Text**.

Color Compatibility

Color Setting Item

Color Setting	Description
Color (CAD) 1	Print in standard colors.
Color (CAD) 2	Print in brighter colors.
Color (CAD) 3	Print emulating the Canon BJ-W3000/W3050, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.
Color (CAD) 4	Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.
Color (CAD) 5	Print emulating the HP Designjet 1000, in colors resembling colors produced by this printer.
Color (CAD) 6	Print emulating the HP Designjet 4000/4500, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.

Important

- If you have selected **Color (CAD) 3**, **Color (CAD) 4**, **Color (CAD) 5**, or **Color (CAD) 6**, it is not possible to match the colors and image quality produced by the specified printer exactly.

For instructions on configuring **Color Compatibility**, refer to the following topics.

- Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) (→P.188)

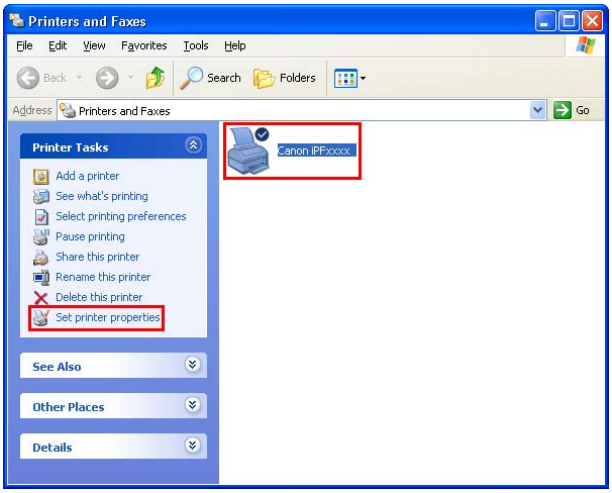
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows)

You can complete color settings when **Color (CAD)** is selected in **Color Mode**.

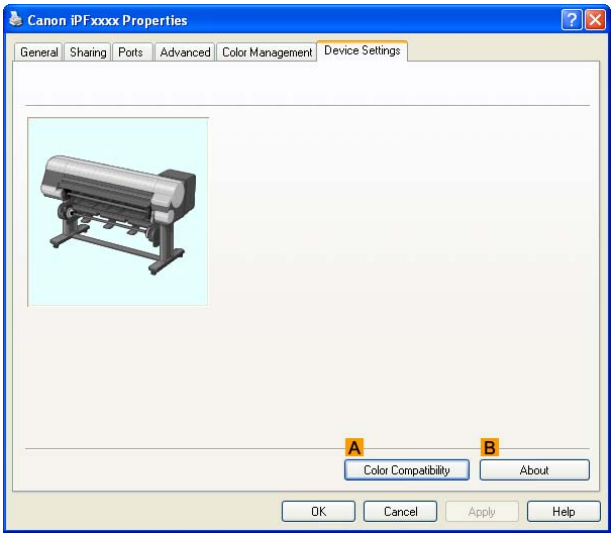
Note

- **Color (CAD)** is displayed when you select **Advanced Settings** on the **Main** sheet and set **Print Priority** to **Line Drawing/Text**.

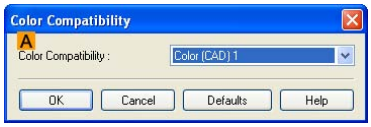
1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



3. Click the **Device Settings** tab to display the **Device Settings** sheet.



4. Click A **Color Compatibility** to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box.



5. Select the desired color settings in the A **Color Compatibility** list.

Note

- For details on color settings, see “Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings”. (→P.187)

For printing instructions, refer to the following topic.

- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.215)

HP-GL/2 Printing

This printer supports the GARO language as well as HP-GL/2 and HP RTL (*1) emulation. *2) When printing from applications that support HP-GL/2 output, specify HP-GL/2 in the application's plotter output settings.

Note

- For instructions on configuring these settings, refer to the software documentation.

The printer automatically switches to the corresponding processing when GARO, HP-GL/2, or HP RTL jobs are received. Configure the settings especially for HP-GL/2 emulation on the printer control panel. (→P.53)
This printer can emulate the following printers.

Emulated Printers	
Canon	W3000 and W3050 (*3)
Hewlett-Packard	Designjet 450c, Designjet 750c Plus, and Designjet 750c

*1: HP-GL/2 : Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language 2; HP RTL: Hewlett-Packard Raster Transfer Language
*2: It may not be possible to print jobs with excessively large amounts of data correctly.
*3: Layout templates are not supported.

Printing Office Documents

Printing Office Documents

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for office documents

	Print Target	Description
	Office Document	Settings optimized for clear printing of office documents such as handouts.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.211)

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

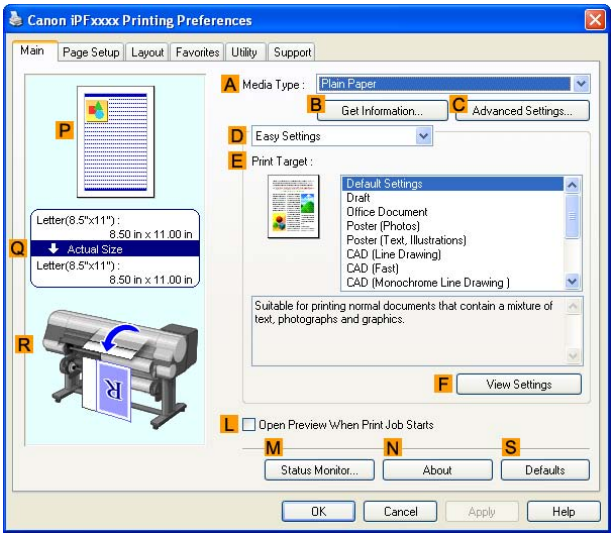
- Printing Office Documents (Windows) (→P.192)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) (→P.194)

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main**sheet is displayed.

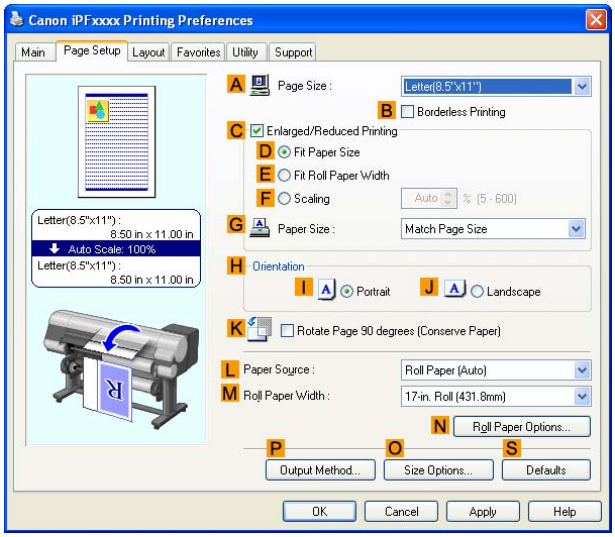


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup**sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Select sheets in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
   For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.370)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

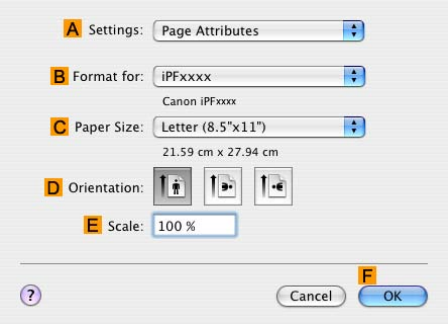
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

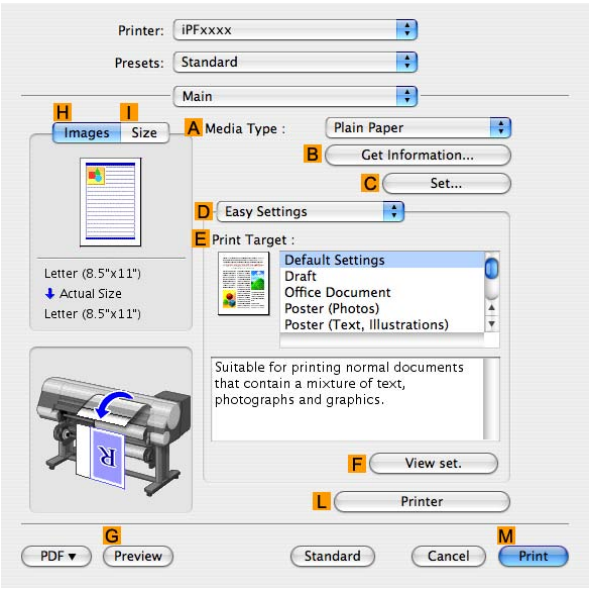
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in.])/Letter

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Cut Sheet**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.

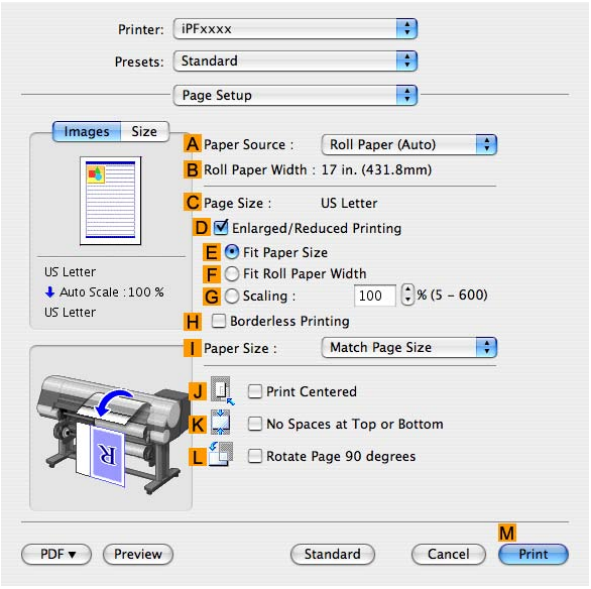


7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

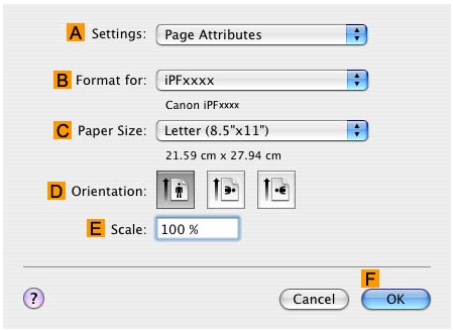
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Select sheets in the A **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.418)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Using the Printer With a Color imageRUNNER

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.196)
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.199)

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

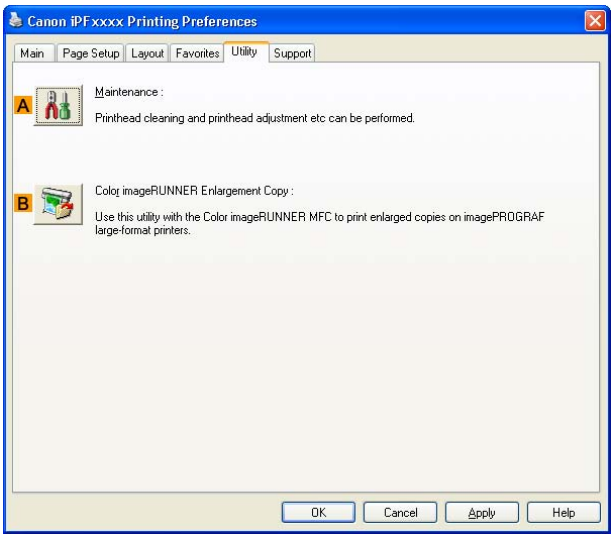
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.383)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

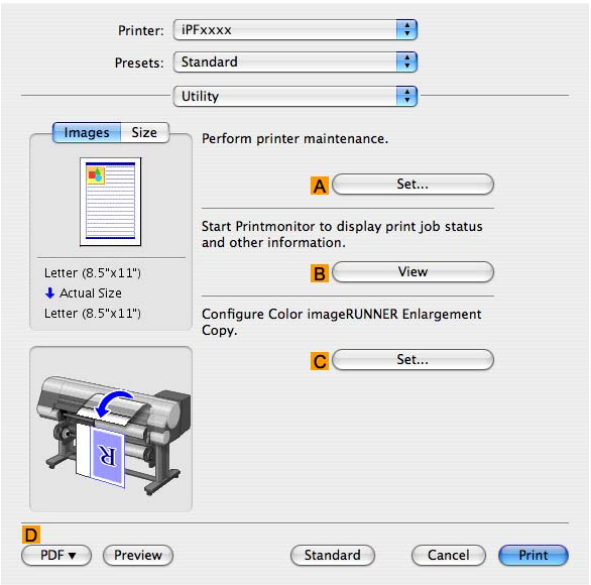
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, either double-click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon after navigating to **Canon Utilities** - **imagePROGRAF** in the **Applications** folder or click C **Set** in the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Enhanced Printing Options

Adjusting Images

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.
The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can adjust the color balance and color-matching method.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
Color (CAD)	A color mode optimized for line drawings (2D-CAD). Lines in red, yellow, and other colors are printed especially clearly. **Color (CAD)** enables adjustment of color settings. (→P.187)	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome (BK ink)	A color mode for printing line drawings. Only Black ink is used.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome Bitmap	Print in a color mode for CAD, using Color Ink, with all non-white portions printed in black.	No color adjustment is supported.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Gray Tone	Adjust gray tones to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.
By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Matching Mode	Description	Notes
Driver Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on the original color profile of the printer driver	This is the default color-matching method. Normally, use **Driver Matching Mode**.
ICC Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on ICC color profiles (an international standard) using the printer driver	You can select the printer profile in the **Printer Profile Settings** list.
Driver ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. The printer driver adjusts the colors.	Available when using Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008.
Host ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. Windows adjusts the colors.	
ColorSync	Color adjustment based on the standard Mac OS ColorSync function. Mac OS adjusts the colors.	Available when using Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4.
Off (No Correction)	No color-matching	Choose this option for color-matching by the software application or with your own color profile, when you want to disable color-matching by the printer driver.

Matching Method	Description	Notes
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text	The available options and their display order vary depending on your selection in Color-Matching Mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for photos. Print images with smooth gradations and colors closer to those as displayed on the screen.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching with adjustment to remove color from white area. Colors in data are reproduced accurately.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	Color-matching without white adjustment to reflect the profile of original data. Colors in data are reproduced accurately. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white areas.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for graphics. This option emphasizes color saturation.	

Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

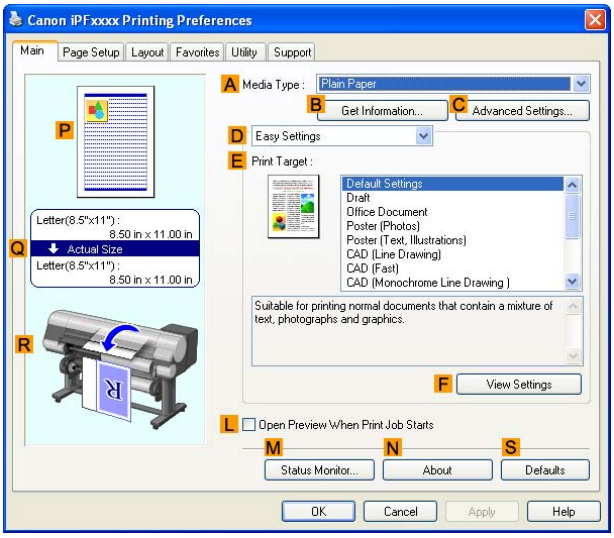
For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.205)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.208)

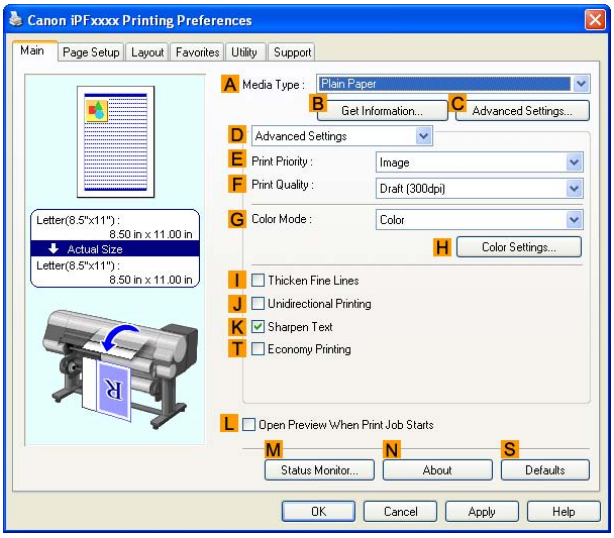
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

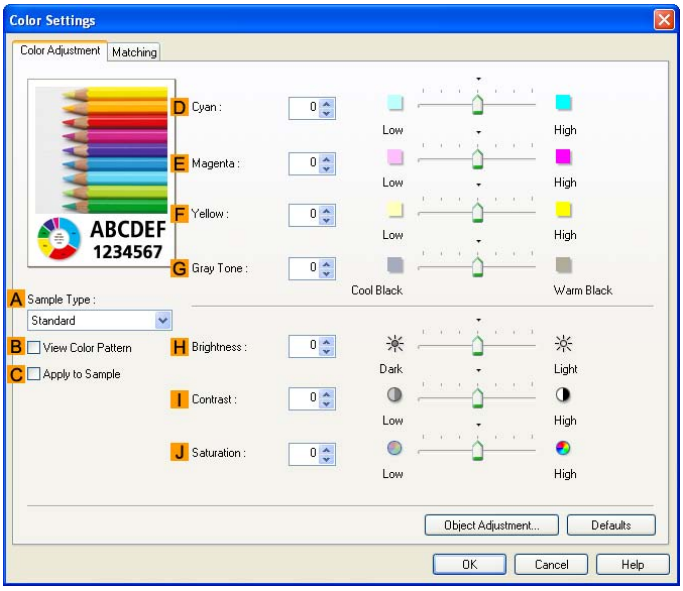


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.

7. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

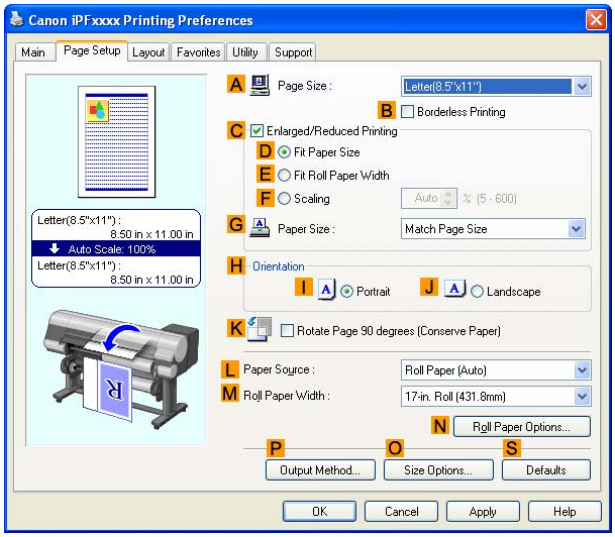


8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Paper Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

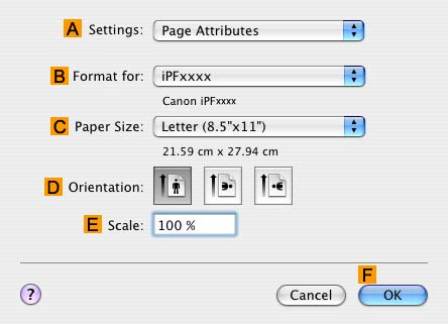
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

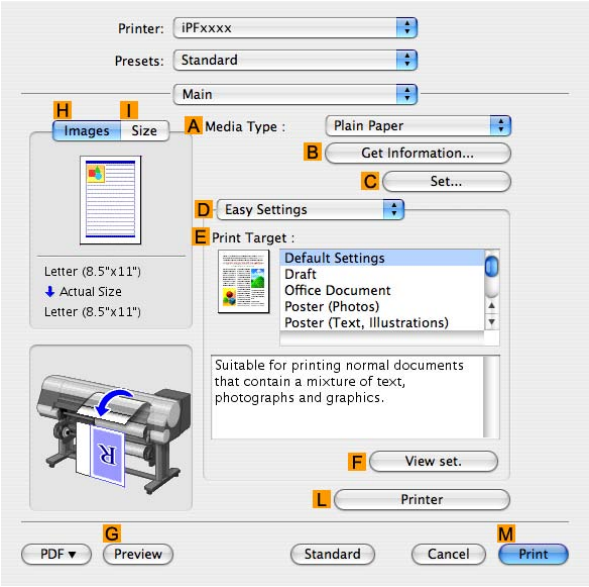
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

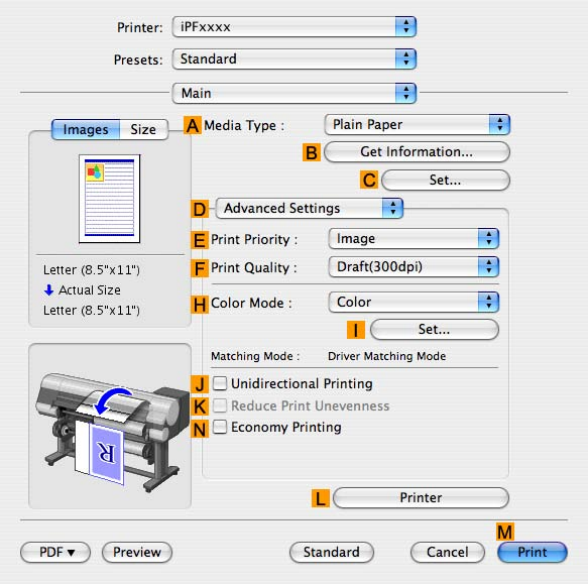


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.

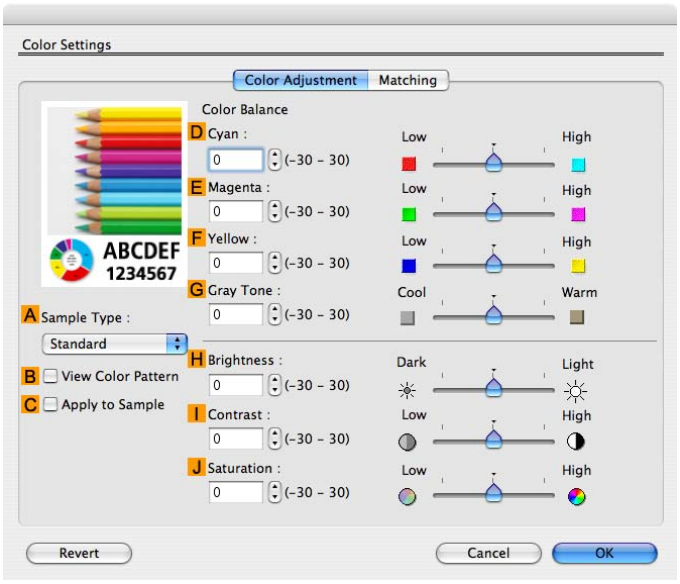


7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the H **Color Mode** list.
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

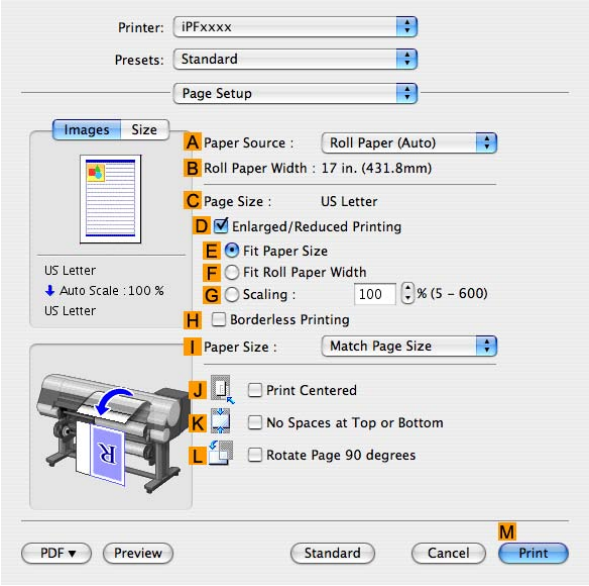


11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Paper Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.

Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.
  For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.
  - Printing Photos and Images (→P.161)
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text (→P.174)
  - Printing Office Documents (→P.191)

Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in printed documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose “Image” instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected type of paper are listed under Print Priority.

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.
The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	**Image**
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in “Standard” or “Draft” modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in “Highest” or “High” mode.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Office Document**
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Color settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	**Color** **Monochrome** **Color (CAD)** **Monochrome (BK ink)** **Monochrome Bitmap**	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (→P.201)
Color Adjustment	**Cyan** **Magenta** **Yellow** **Gray Tone** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Saturation**	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tones. If you choose **Monochrome** or **Monochrome (BK ink)** in **Color Mode** only **Brightness** and **Contrast** can be adjusted. **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text** are available as **Object Adjustment** options. (In Windows and Mac OS X 10.5 only.)
Color-Matching Modes	**Driver Matching Mode** **ICC Matching Mode** **Driver ICM Mode** **Host ICM Mode** **Off**	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	**Auto** **Perceptual** **Colorimetric** **Saturation** other	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in “Color-Matching Mode.”

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.

*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.

Enhancing printing quality

Setting Item	Description
Unidirectional Printing	Choosing unidirectional printing can improve printing results if lines are printed crooked or images are uneven. However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Thicken Fine Lines (Windows) **Thicken Fine Lines** (Mac OS X)	Choose this option to make fine lines clearer in CAD drawings or similar documents.
Sharpen Text (*1)	Choose this option to print intricate text more distinctly.
Reduce Print Unevenness (*2)	Choose this option to counteract uneven printing.
Economy Printing	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

*1: Displayed in Windows and Mac OS X 10.5.
*2: Displayed in Mac OS X.

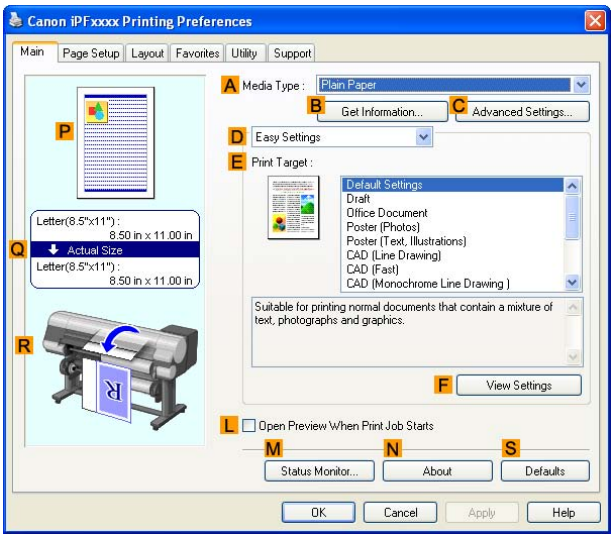
Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.
- For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.215)
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) (→P.217)

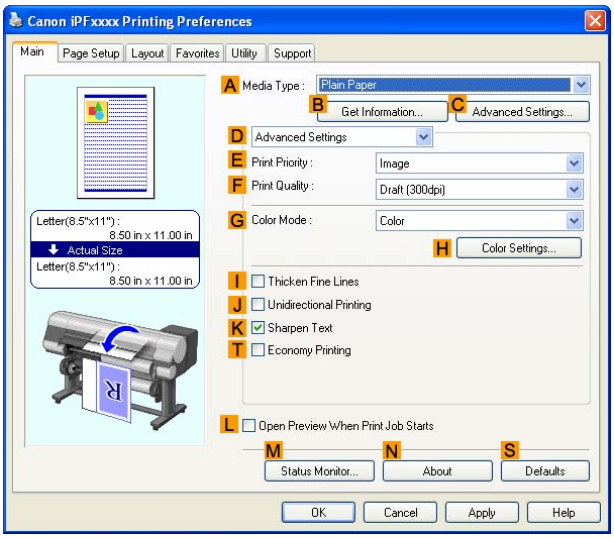
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Line Drawing/Text** in the E **Print Priority** list.
7. Click **High (1200dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

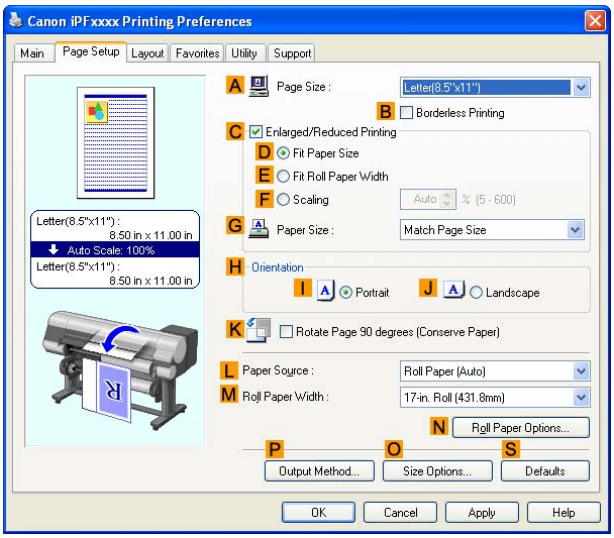
- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Color (CAD)** in the G **Color Mode** list.
9. To adjust the color, click H **Color Settings**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

10. Select the K **Sharpen Text** check box.
11. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



12. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Paper Source**, and so on.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

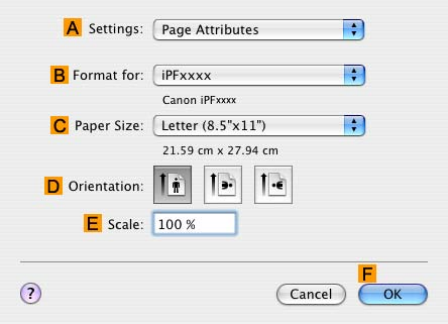
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

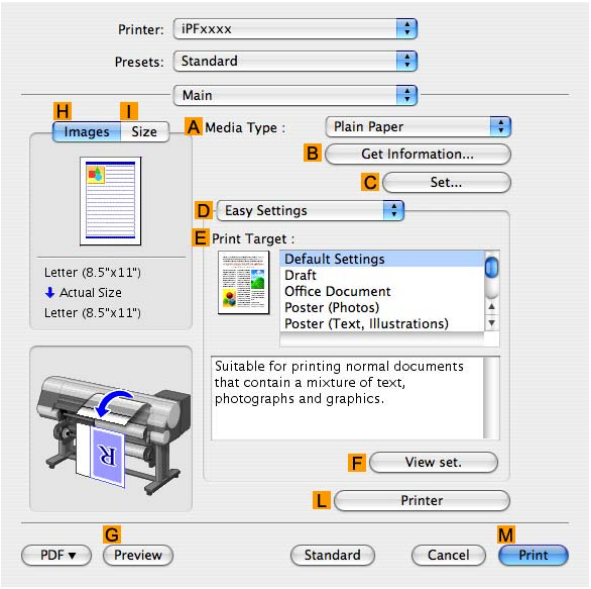
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

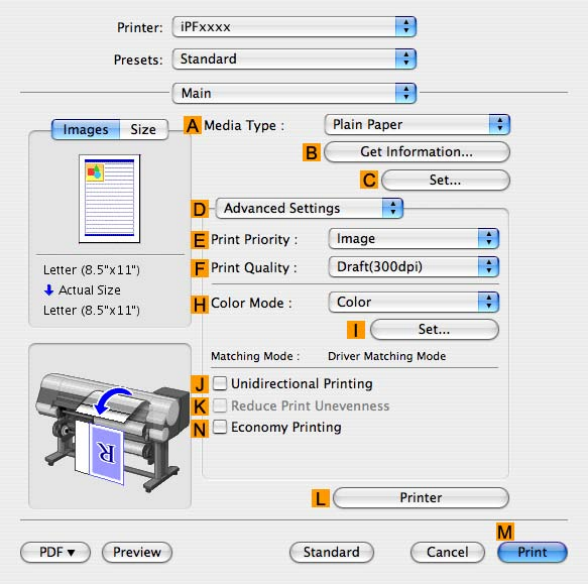


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the **E Print Priority** list.
10. Click **High(1200dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.

Note

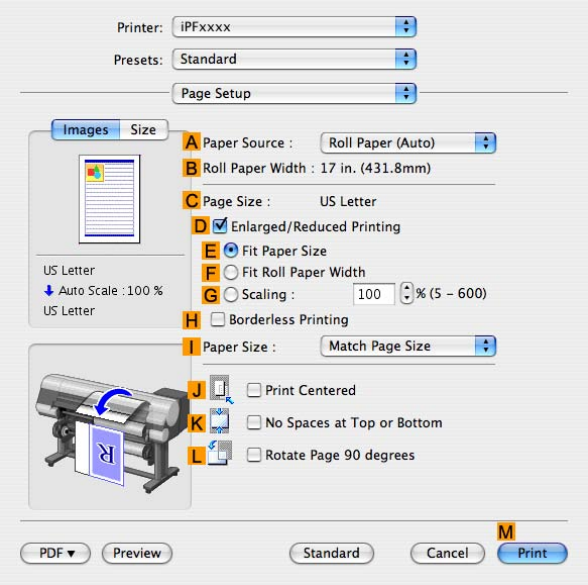
- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Color (CAD)** in the **H Color Mode** list.
12. To adjust the color, click **I Set**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Paper Source** and C **Page Size**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Choosing Paper for Printing

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

Media type

The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

If the paper type is not listed for selection

If the type of paper loaded cannot be selected, try specifying glossy paper or proofing paper as a special paper (Special 1 to Special 5, in this order). BK (Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Try specifying other types of paper as Special 6 to Special 10. MBK (Matte Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.
For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics.

- Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.113)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.149)

Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount and Printhead height.
(→P.552)
(→P.551)

Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic monitoring of the remaining roll paper, specify the roll length after the paper type. (→P.114)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll1(Uppr) Type** or **Roll2 (Lwr) Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) By default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.
- If automatic monitoring of the remaining roll is deactivated (**Off** is selected) and you have selected a type of paper for which width detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.153)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you load the sheet, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen. In this case, select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Media Menu**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cut Sheet Type**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104) Plain Paper is selected by factory default.
  If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to Plain Paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.
- If you select a type of paper for which Media Width Detection is deactivated (**Off** is selected), you must advance the paper manually to the position for printing. (→P.153)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.
For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.224)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.226)

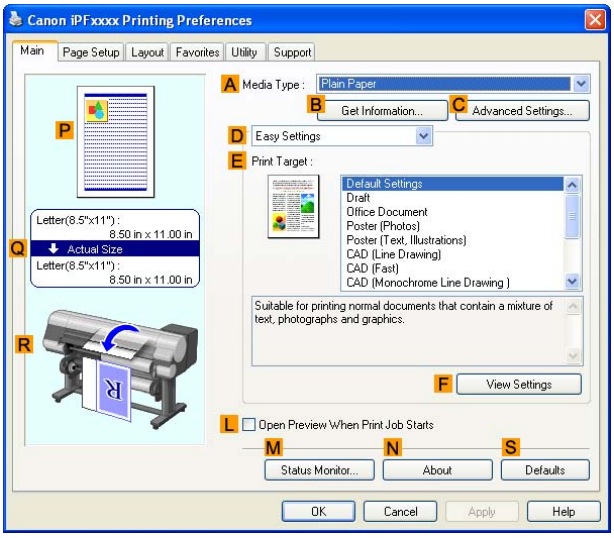
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

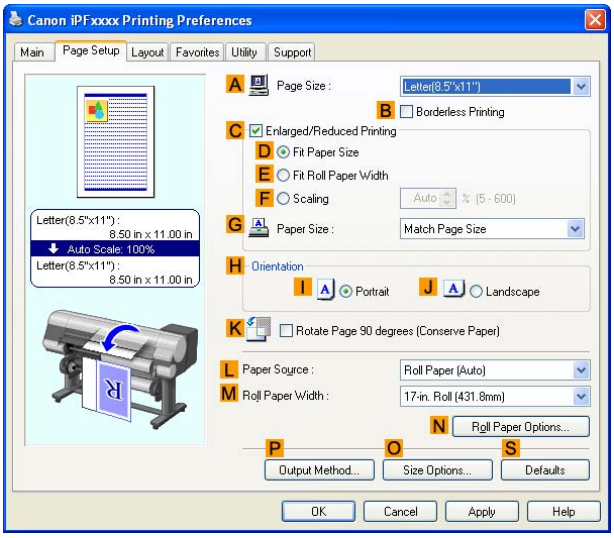
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the L **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

8. If you have selected **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2** in L **Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in M **Roll Paper Width**.

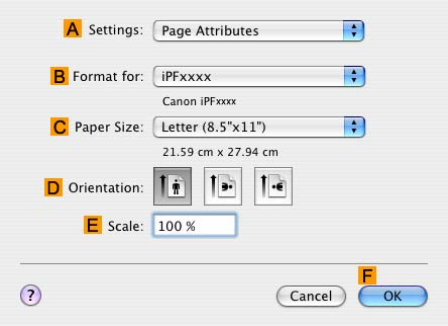
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.370)

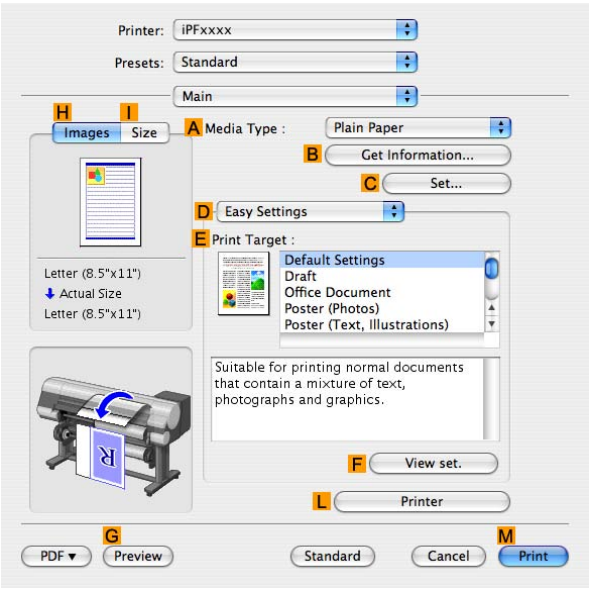
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

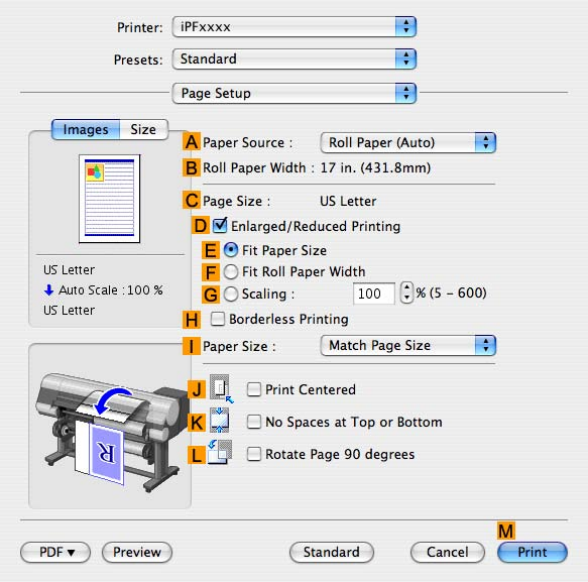


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

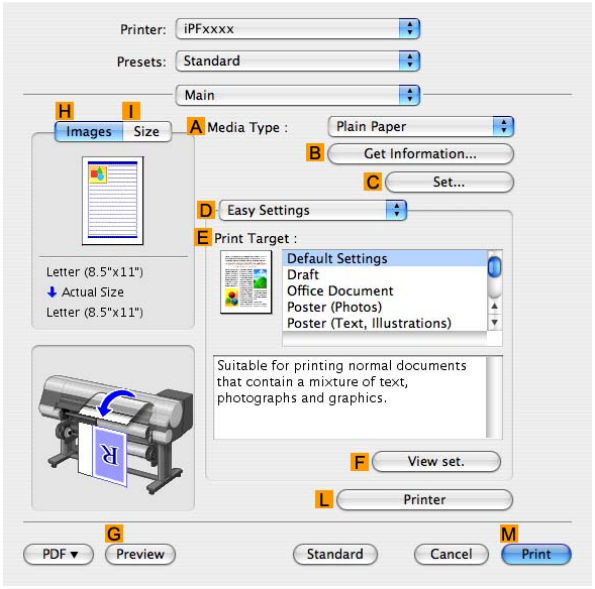


9. In the **A Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.418)

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

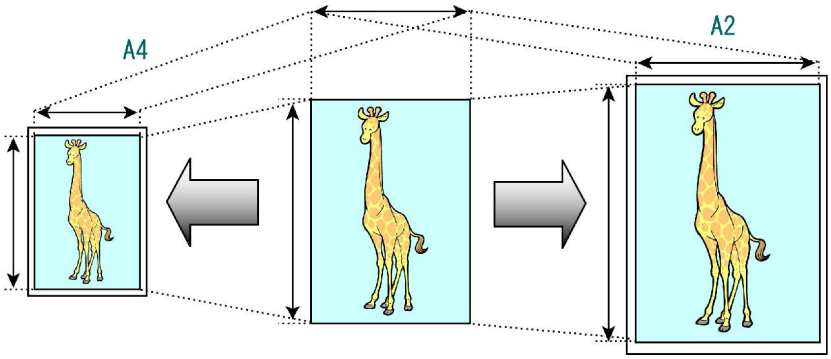
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.229)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.231)

Note

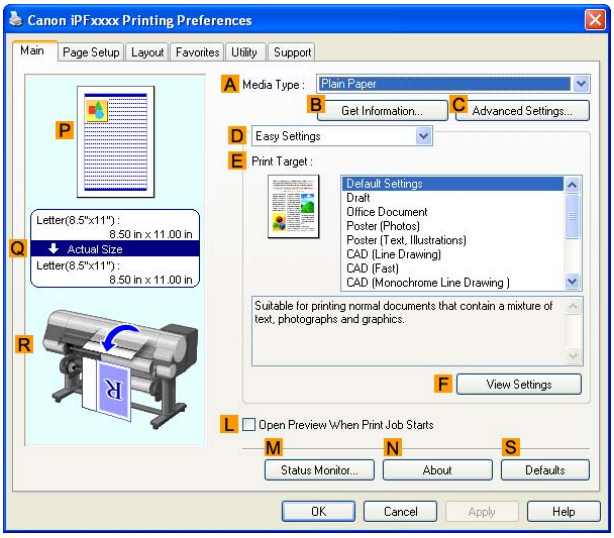
- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

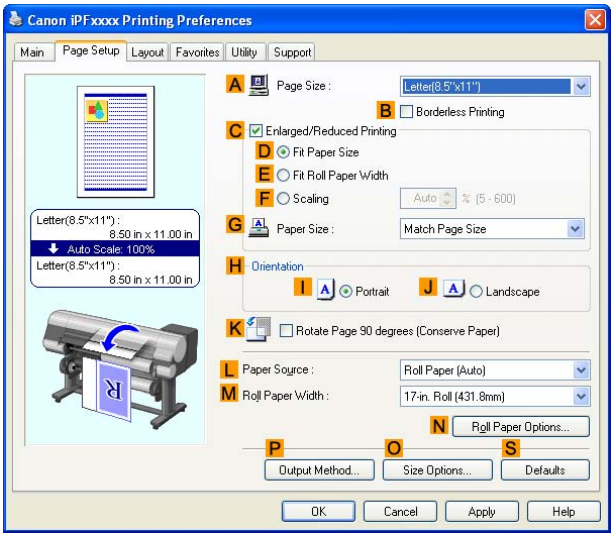
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click D **Fit Paper Size**.
12. Click **ISO A3** in the G **Paper Size** list.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

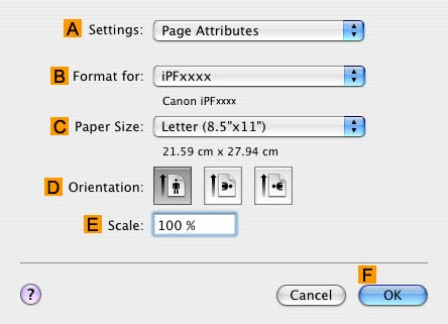
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

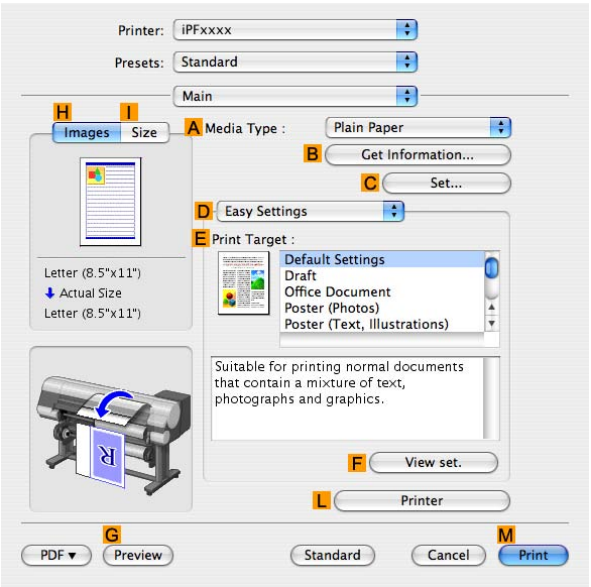
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

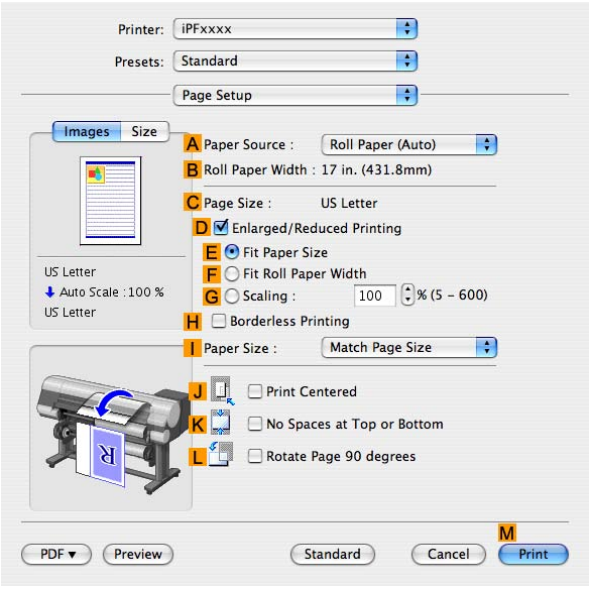


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

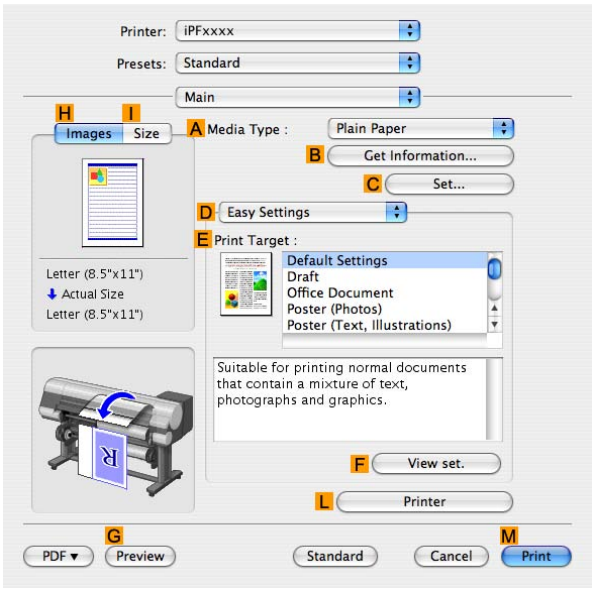


10. In the **A** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

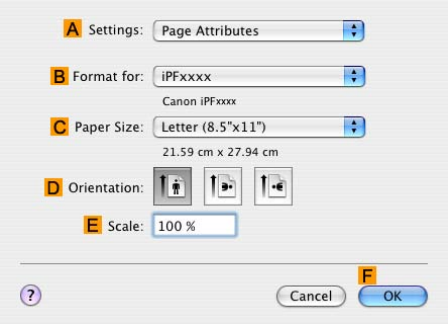
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Make sure E **Fit Paper Size** is selected.
15. Click **ISO A3** in the I **Paper Size** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

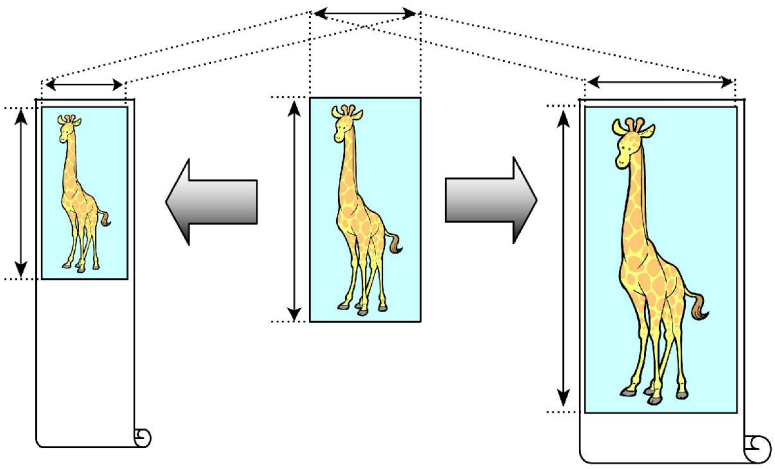
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.235)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.237)

Note

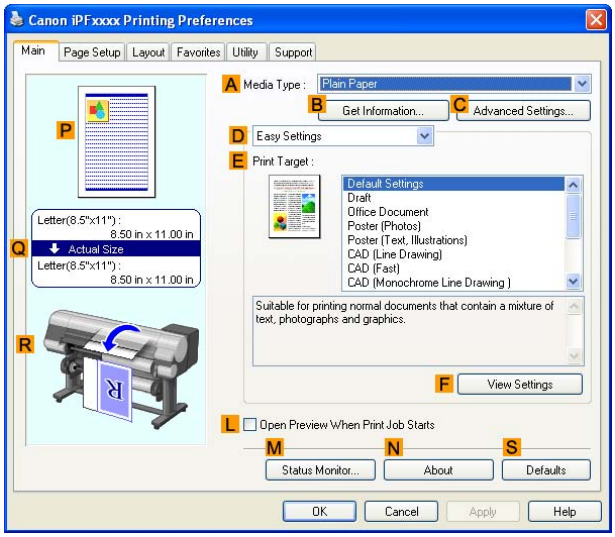
- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

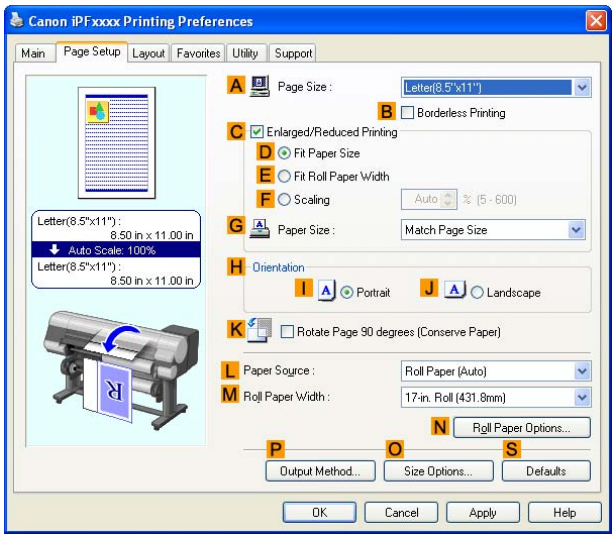
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

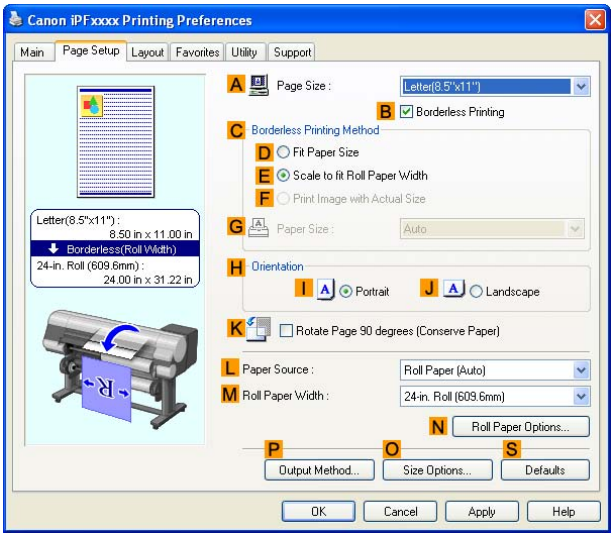


7. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
9. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the B **Borderless Printing** check box.



10. Click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- After you click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

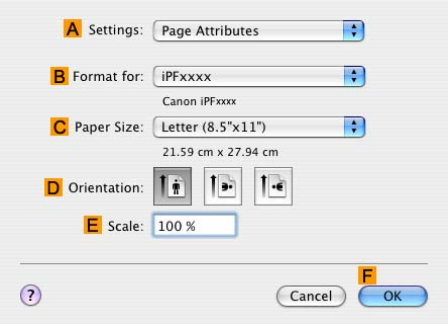
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

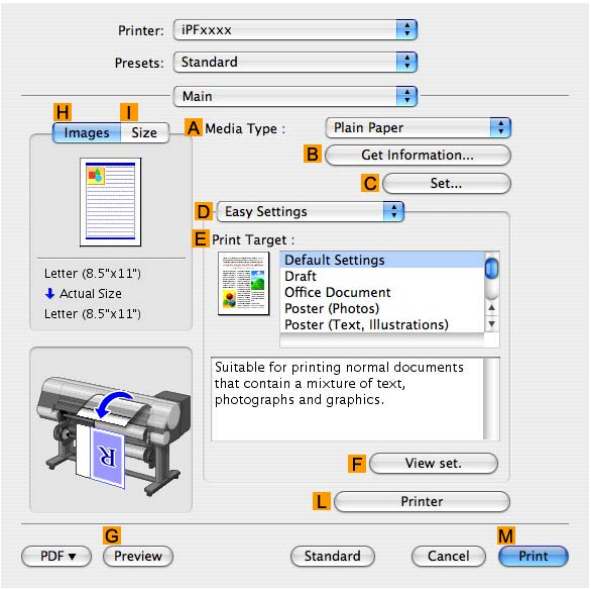
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

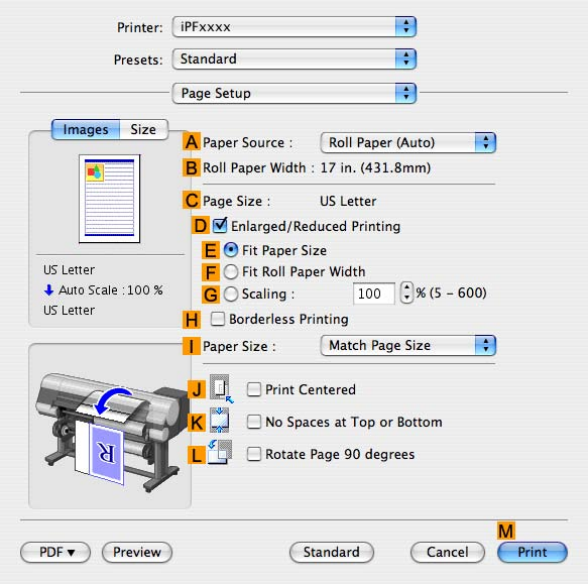


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

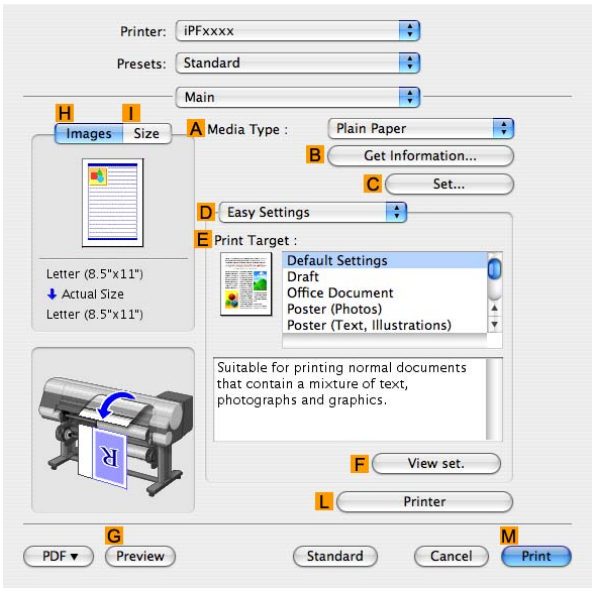


10. In the **A** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

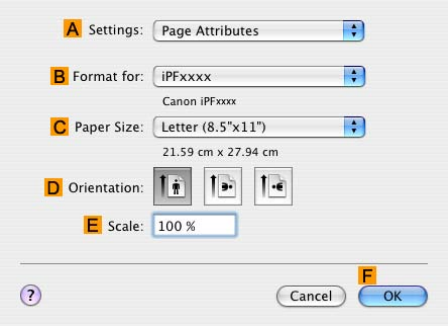
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

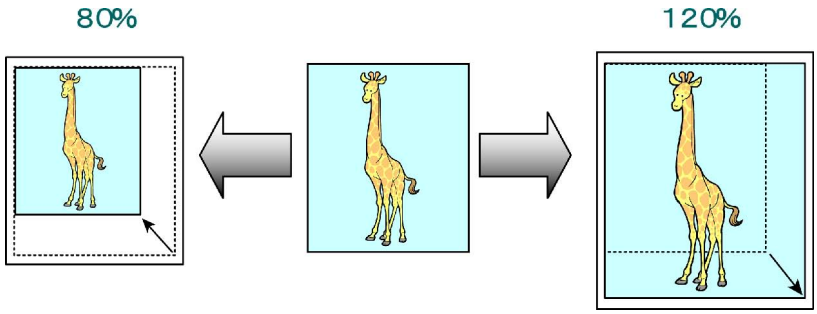
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) (→P.241)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) (→P.243)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

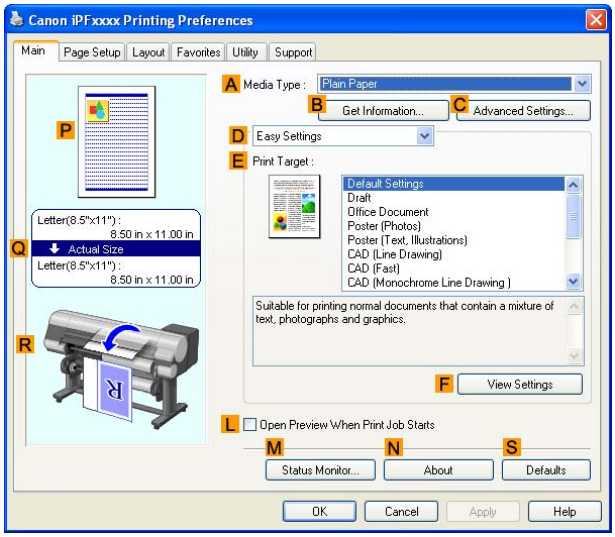
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

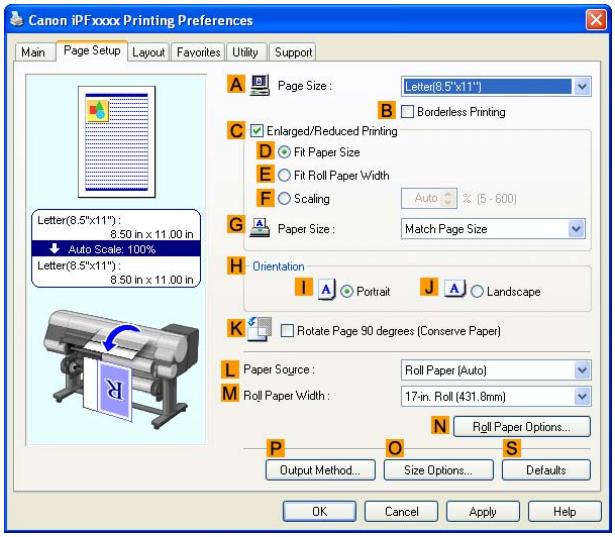
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



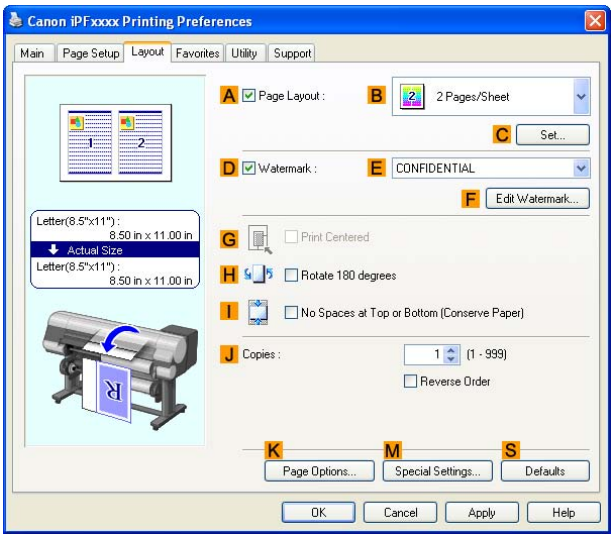
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **ISO A4** in the G **Paper Size** list.
12. Click F **Scaling** and enter “120”.

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting G **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

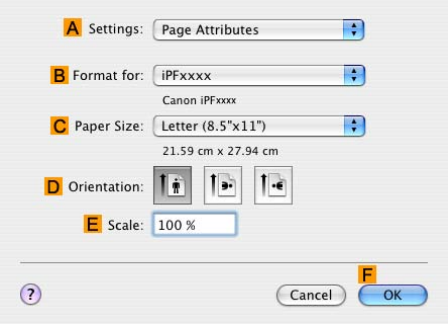
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

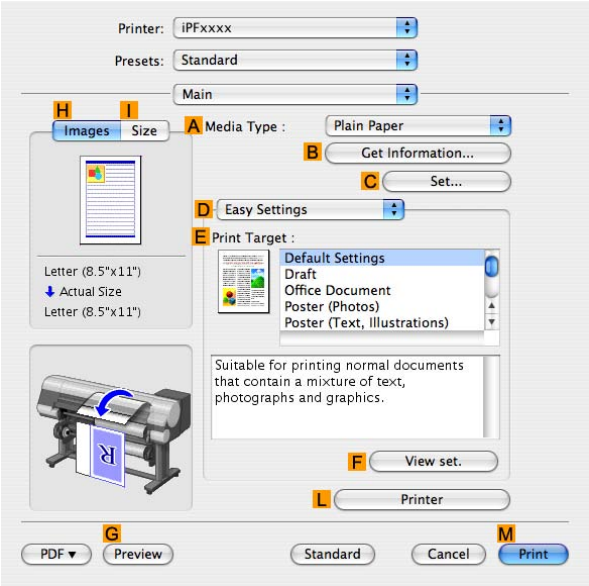
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

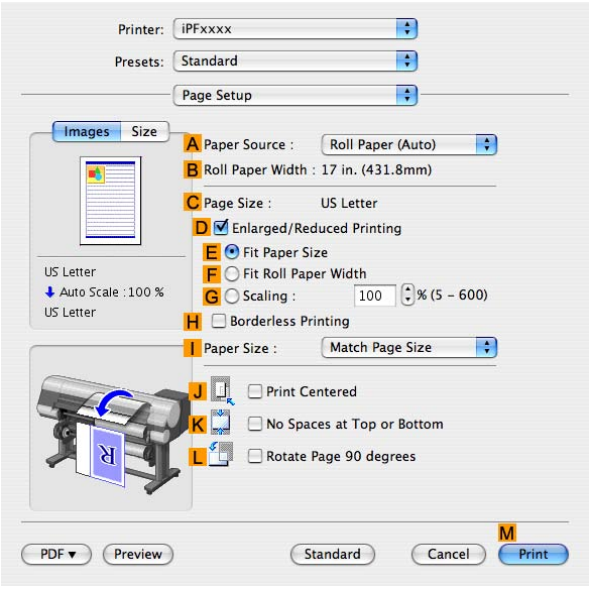


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

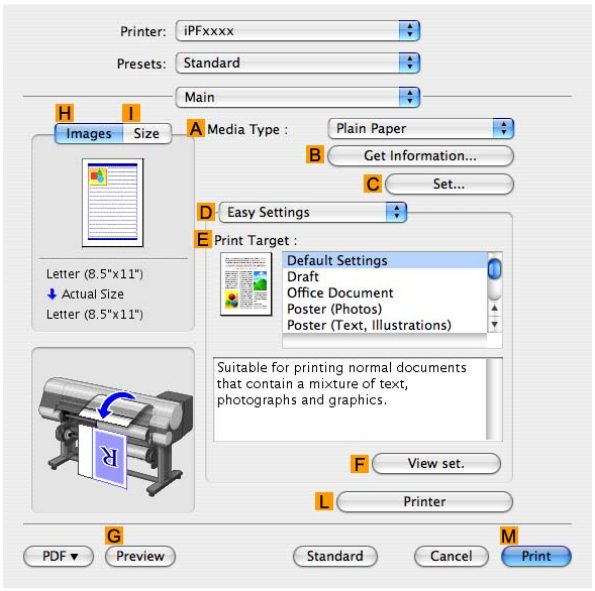


10. In the **A** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

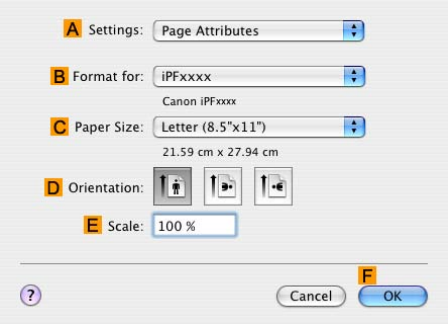
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click G **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the J **Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.247)
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.249)

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

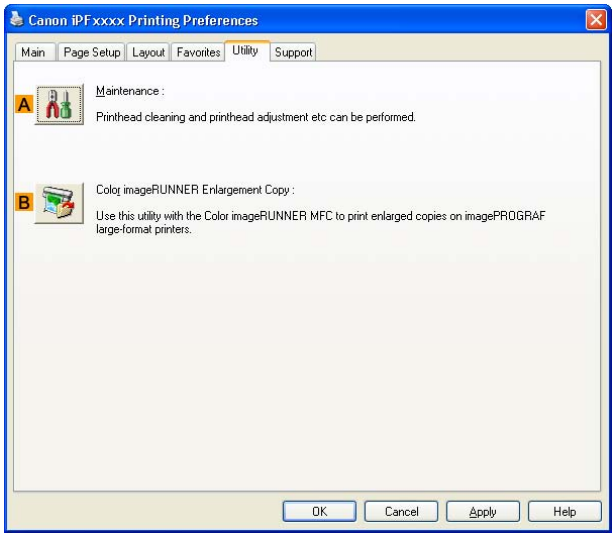
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.383)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **B** **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

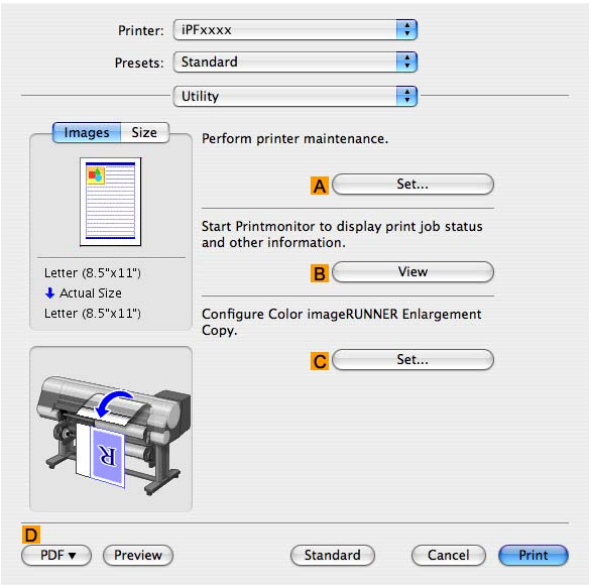
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, either double-click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon after navigating to **Canon Utilities** - **imagePROGRAF** in the **Applications** folder or click **Set** in the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

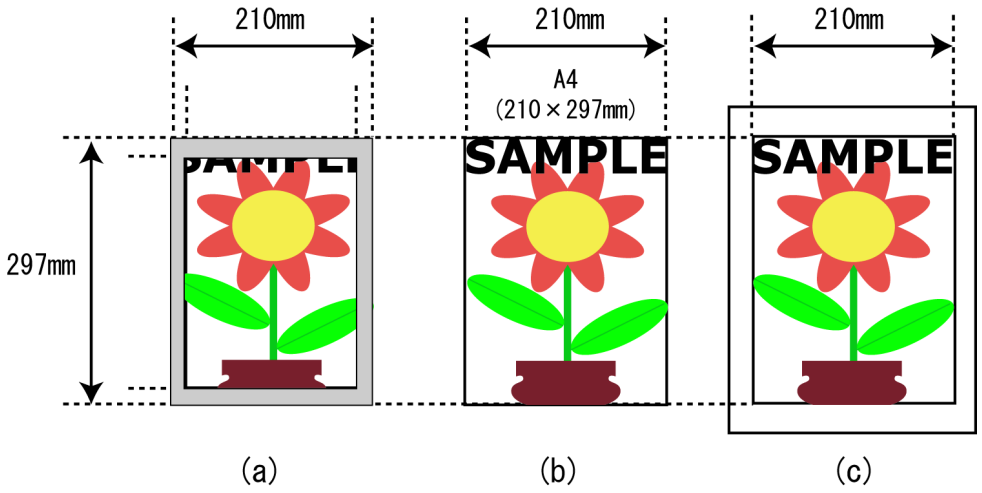
Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin. (→P.85) To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.
For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the “outside” of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



a.

Regular paper size: Gray area not printed

b.

Page Size

c.

Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)

Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size-a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
  - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 26 mm (1 in) higher than the page size
  - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm (0.24 in) higher than the page size
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (→P.109)

Note

- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows. For oversized printing on sheets, choose **Cut Sheet** as the paper source.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a **Custom Paper Size**. Oversized printing is not available with “Custom Size.” (→P.297)

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

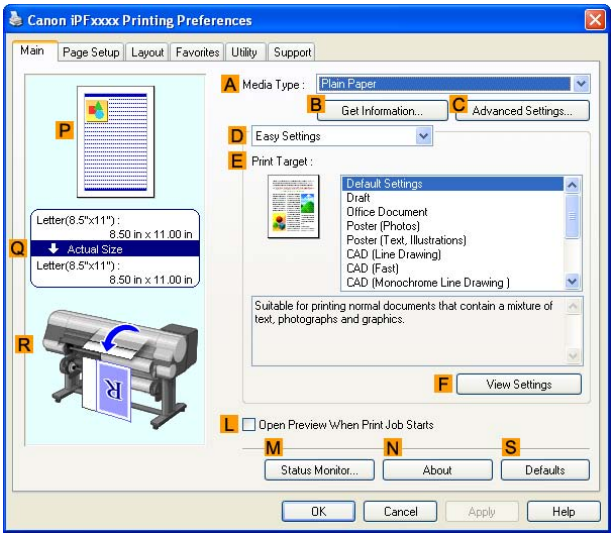
- Printing at Full Size (Windows) (→P.253)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) (→P.255)

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

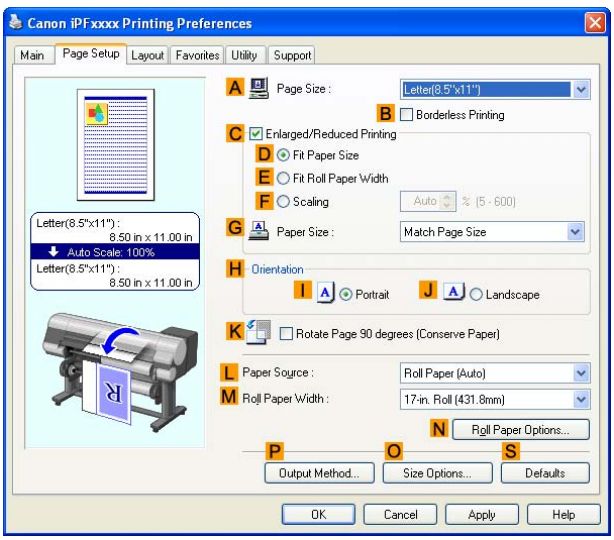
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4/Letter (210.0×297.0 mm) (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click O **Paper Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
7. In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the A **Page Size** list.
10. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Note

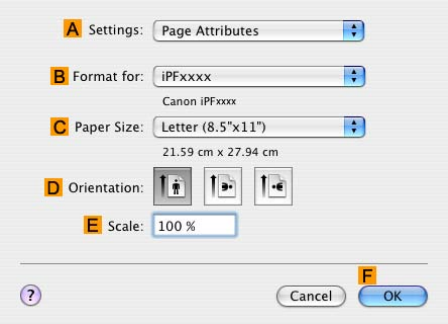
- You can select **Oversize** in **Display Series** to make all oversized versions of paper in the selected **Display Series** available for printing. These sizes are displayed in the **Page Size** list in the format **Oversize - xxxxxx**.

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

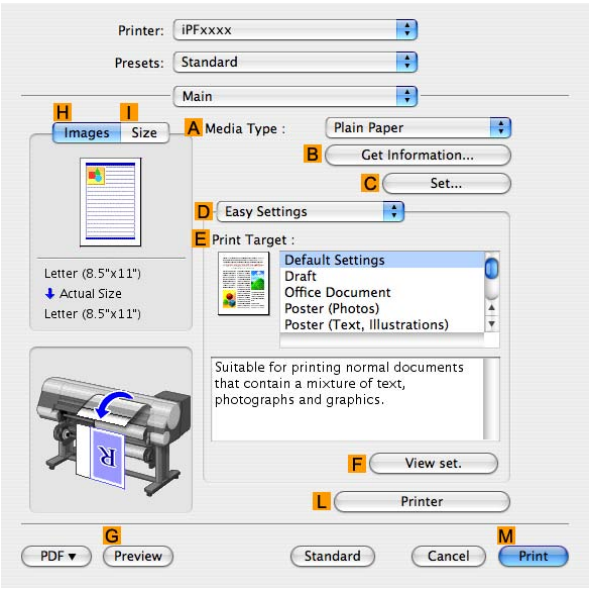


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.

Note

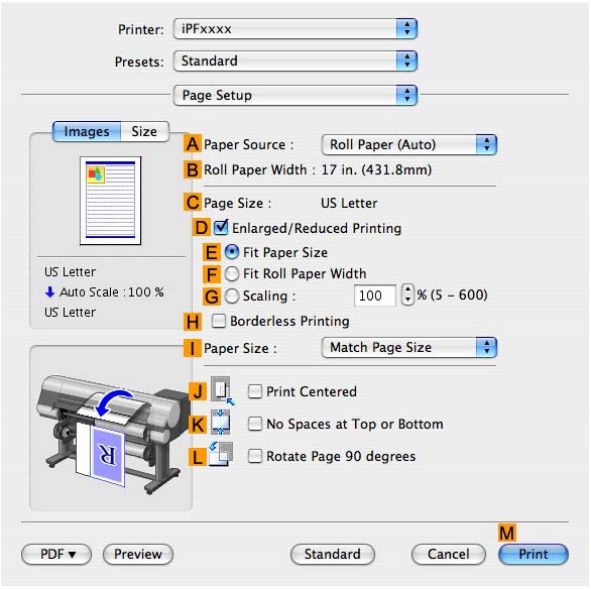
- For oversized printing, choose paper identified by the regular paper name followed by “- Oversize”.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

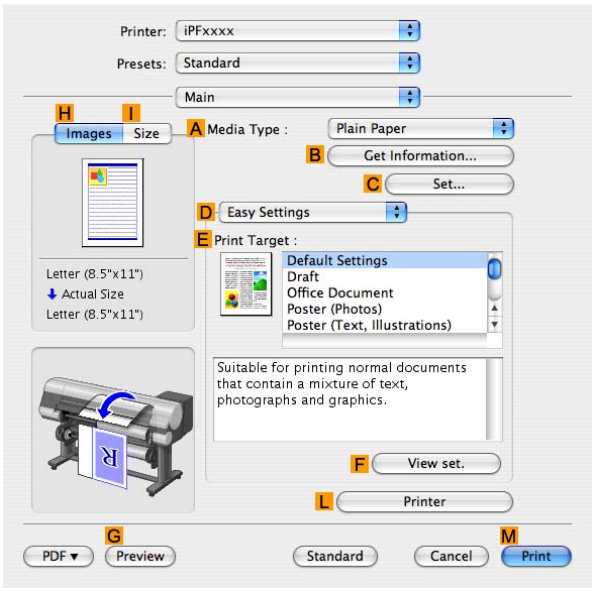


10. In the **A** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

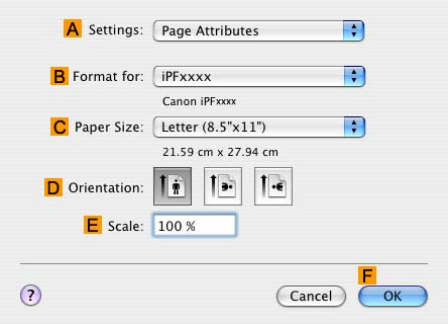
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

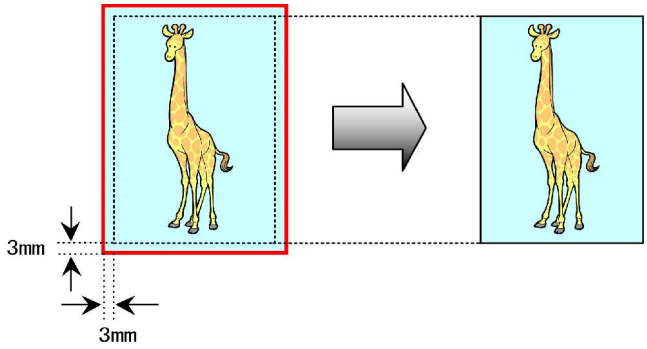
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.
- Before borderless printing, make sure the blue Switch on the platen is set toward the ● side. (→P.629)

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.260)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.262)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

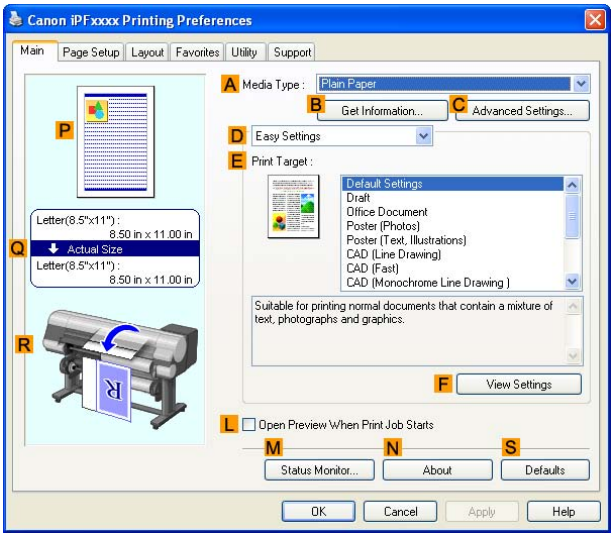
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in.) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10×12 in.)-that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2×12.2 in.).

   Note

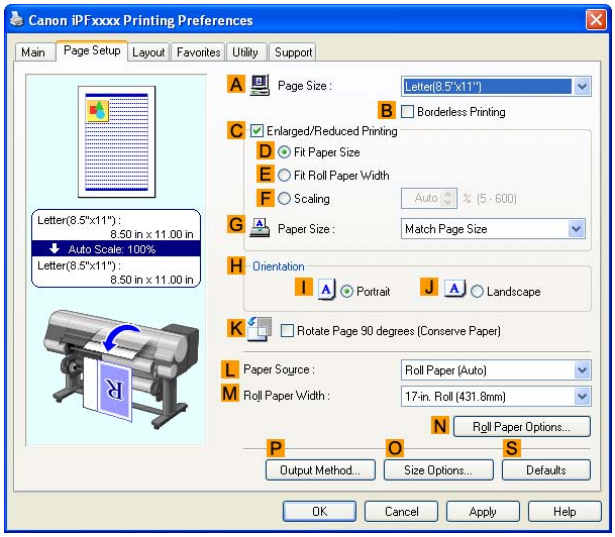
   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

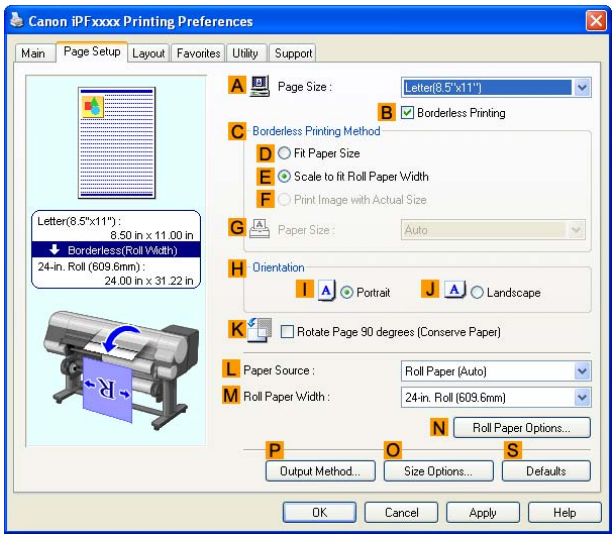


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

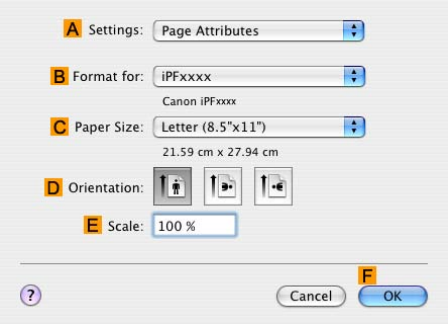
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

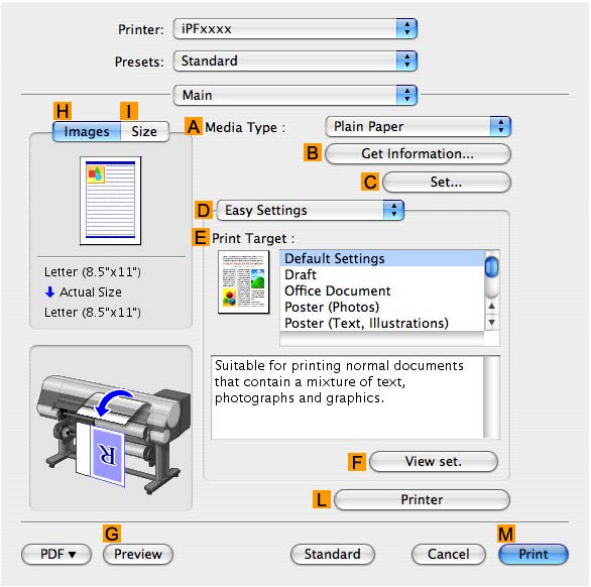


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

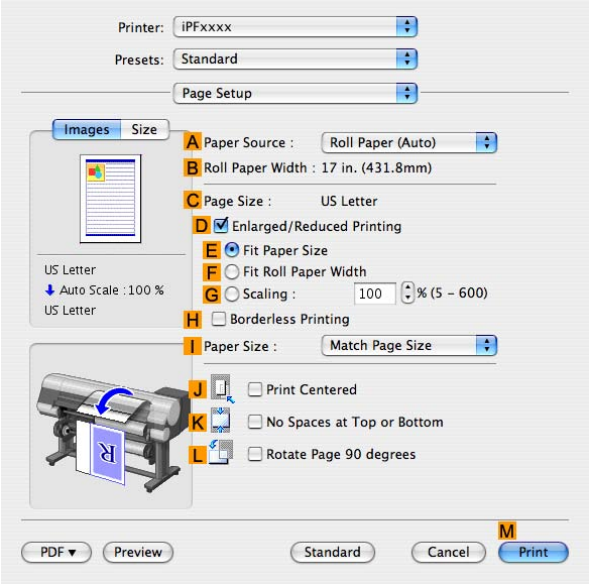
Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



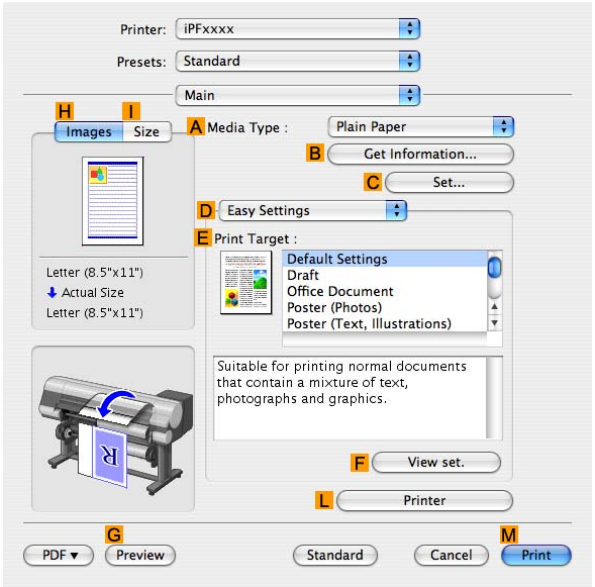
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



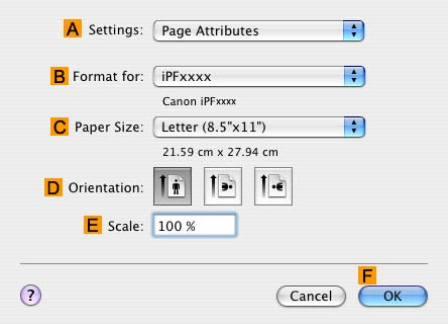
11. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

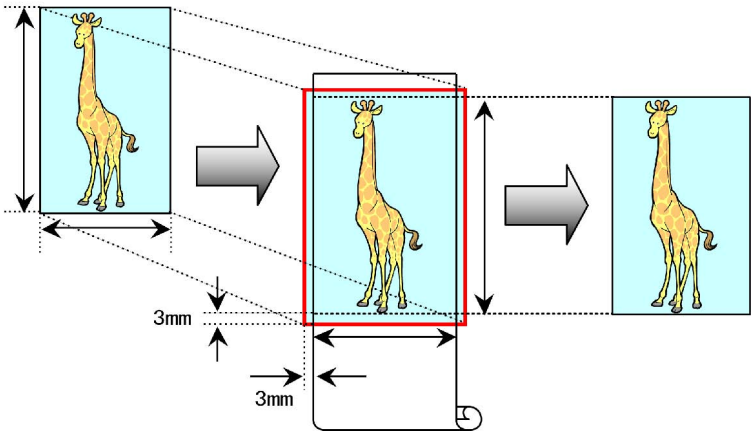
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.
- Before borderless printing, make sure the blue Switch on the platen is set toward the ● side. (→P.629)

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.267)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.269)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

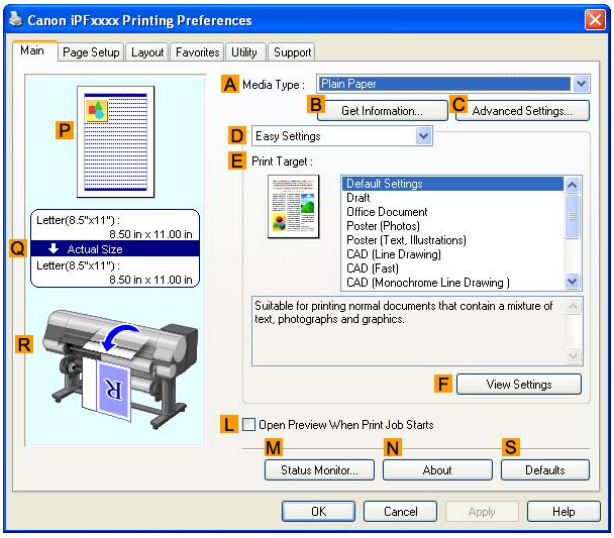
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note

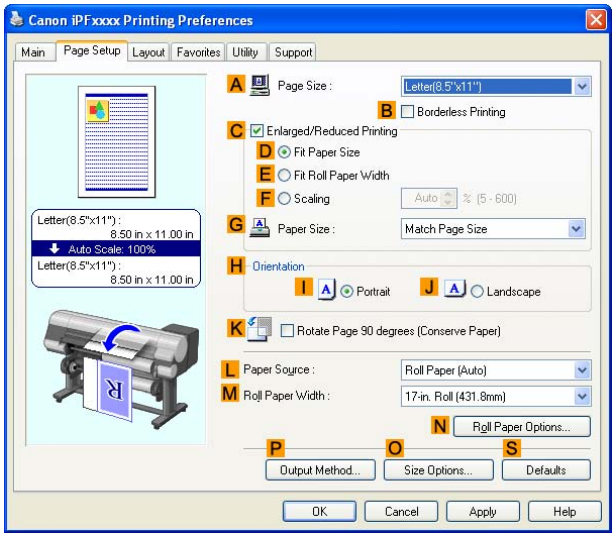
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

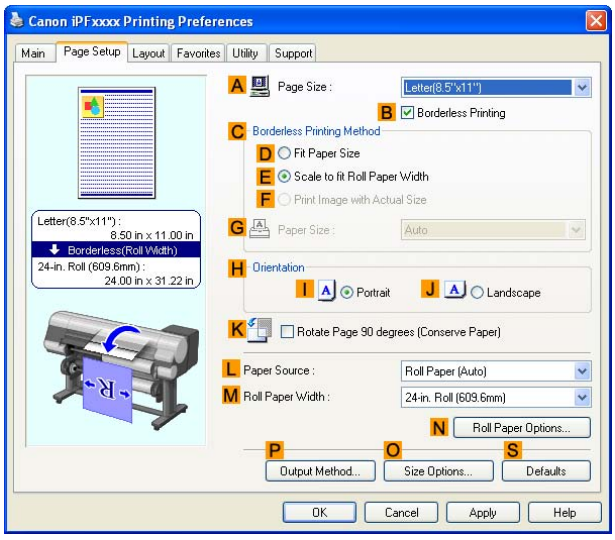


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click D **Fit Paper Size**.
14. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Paper Size** list.
15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

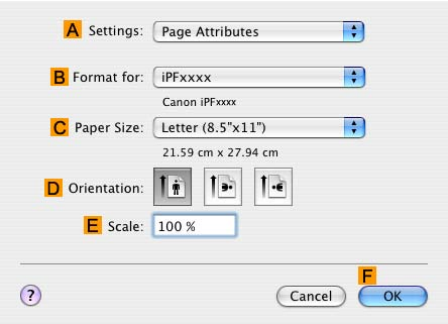
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

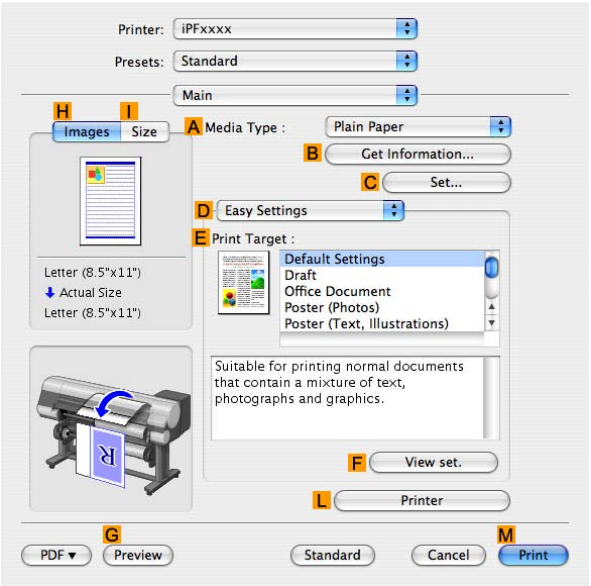


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

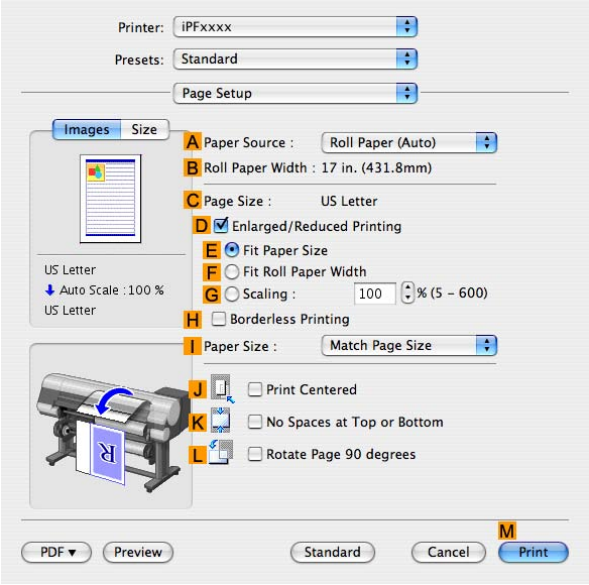
Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



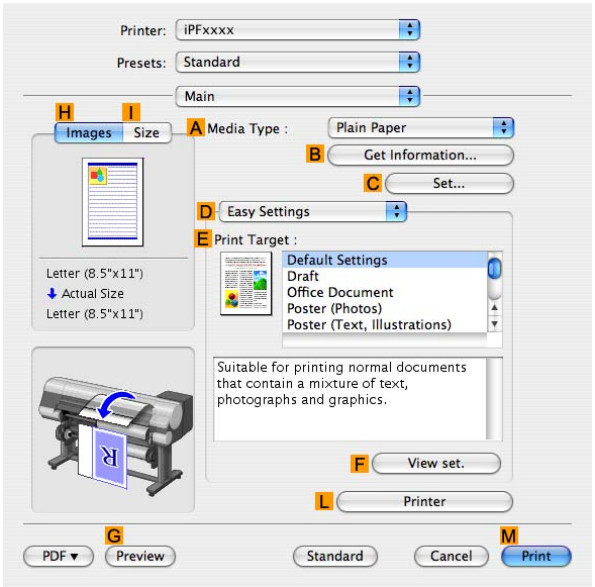
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



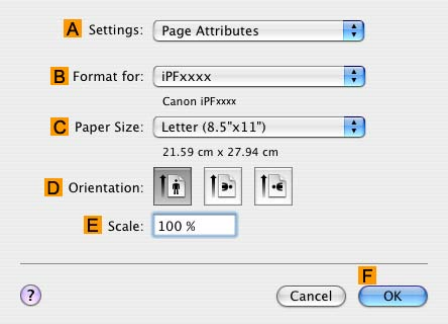
11. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



14. On the **Page Setup** pane, select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
16. Click E **Fit Paper Size** under D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. In I **Paper Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
18. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

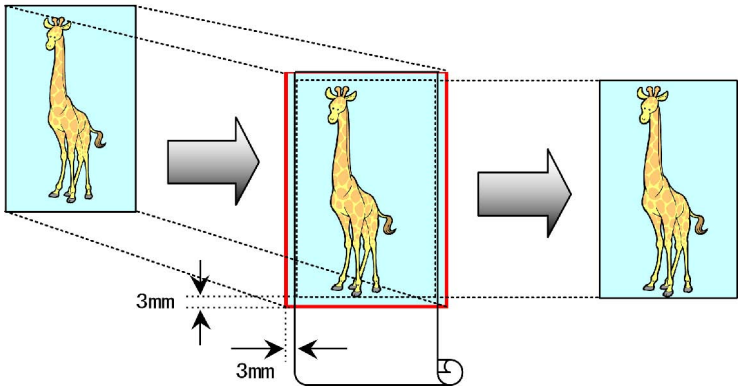
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.
- Before borderless printing, make sure the blue Switch on the platen is set toward the ● side. (→P.629)

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.274)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.276)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

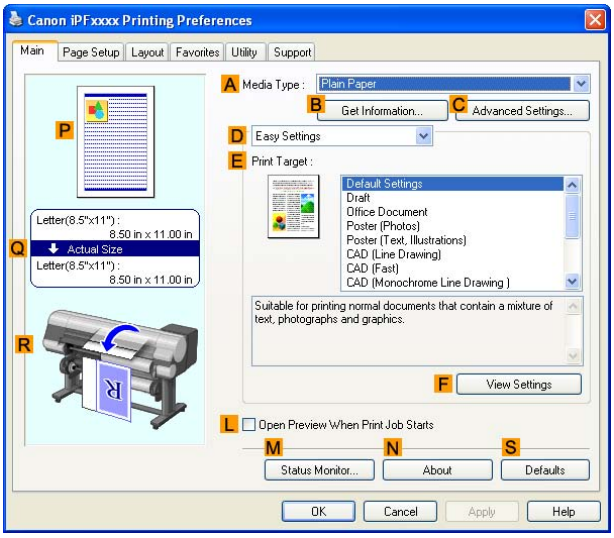
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

   Note

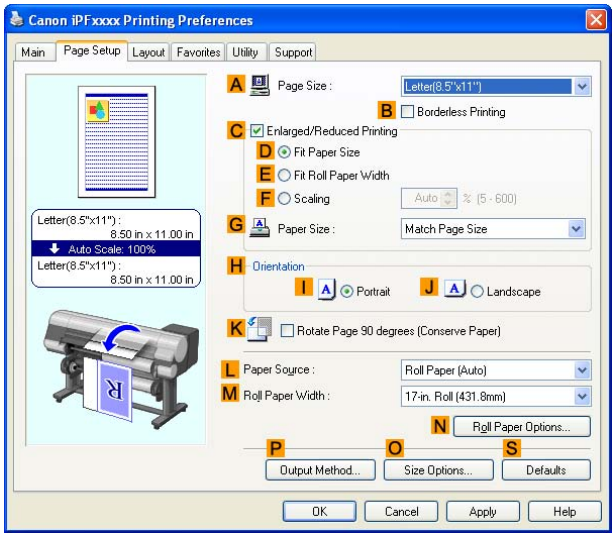
   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

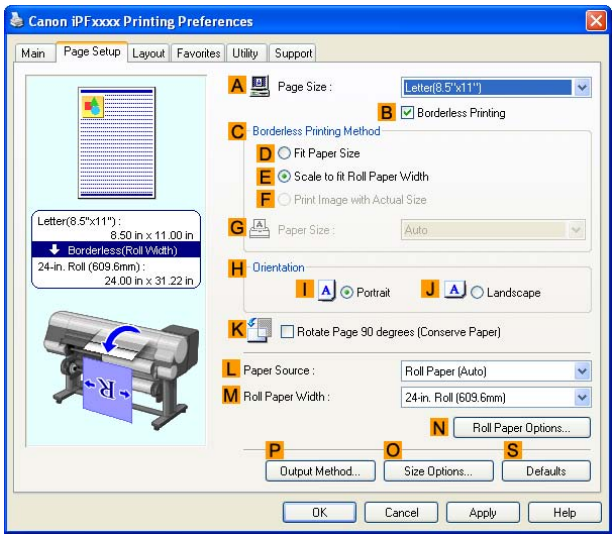


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
9. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, make sure E **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

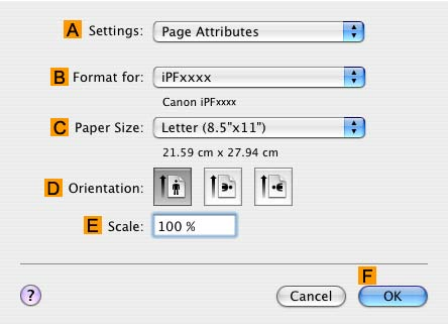
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

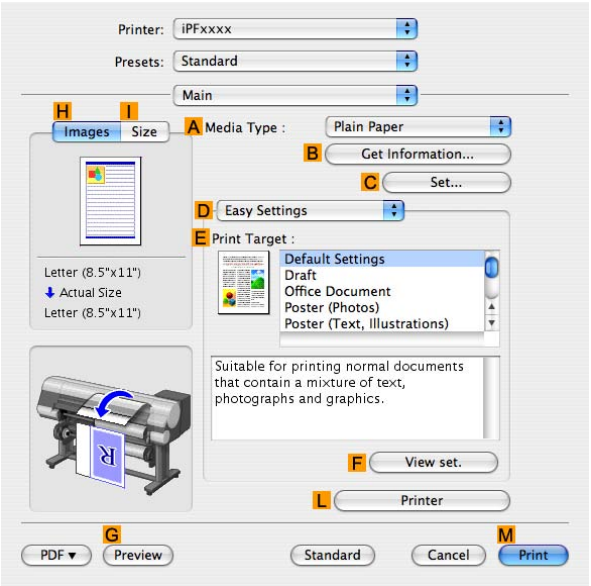


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

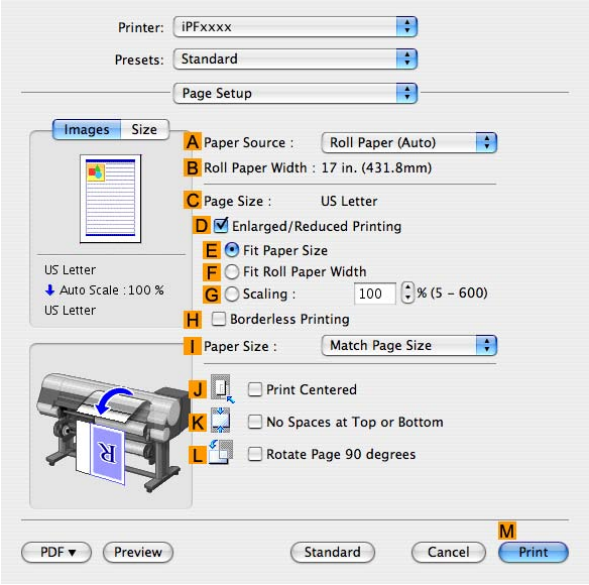
Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



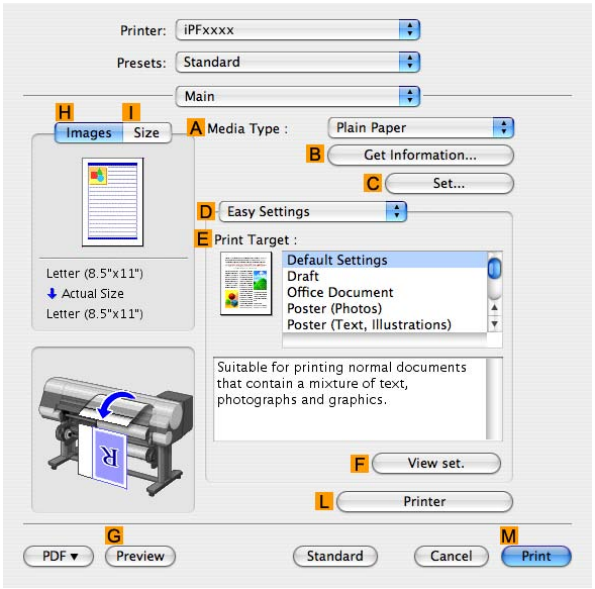
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



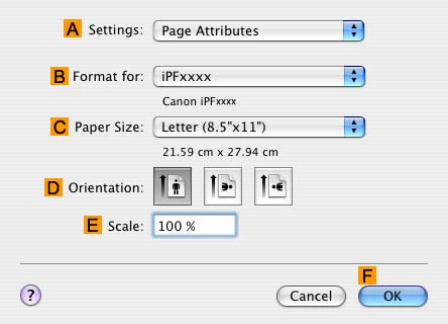
11. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
    This ensures that F **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

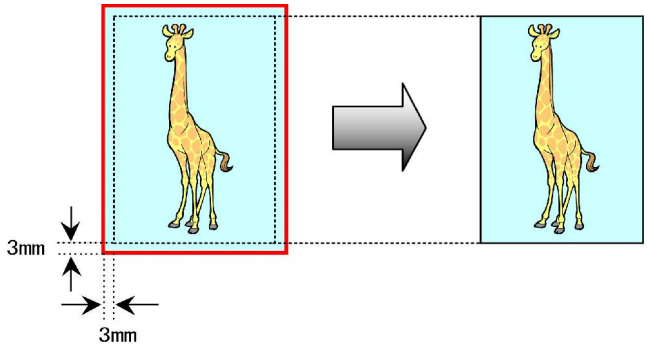
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.
- Before borderless printing, make sure the blue Switch on the platen is set toward the ● side. (→P.629)

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.281)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.283)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

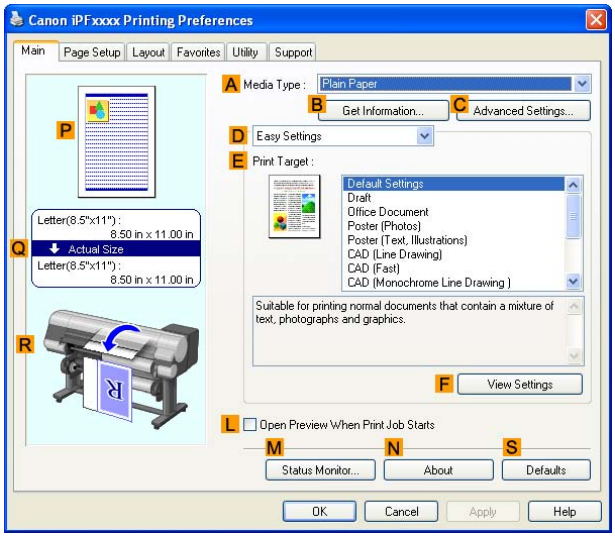
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in.) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10×12 in.)-that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2×12.2 in.).

   Note

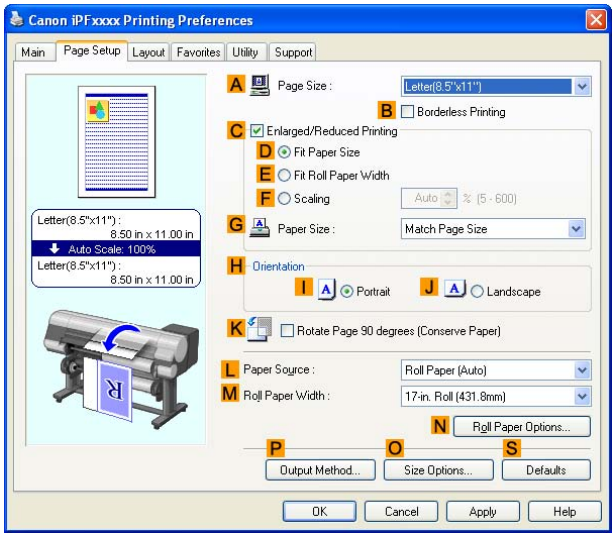
   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

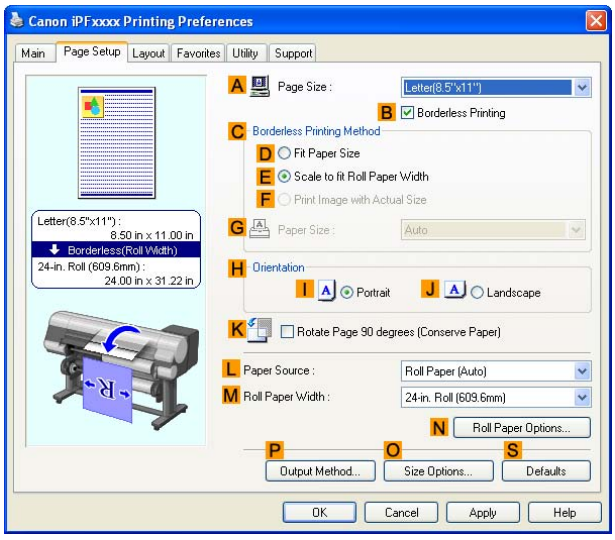


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

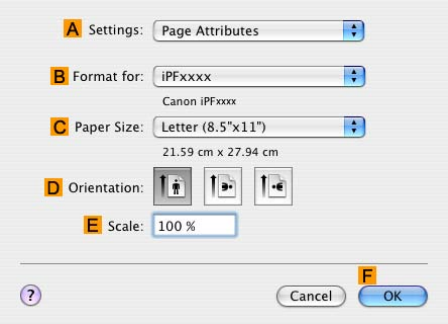
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

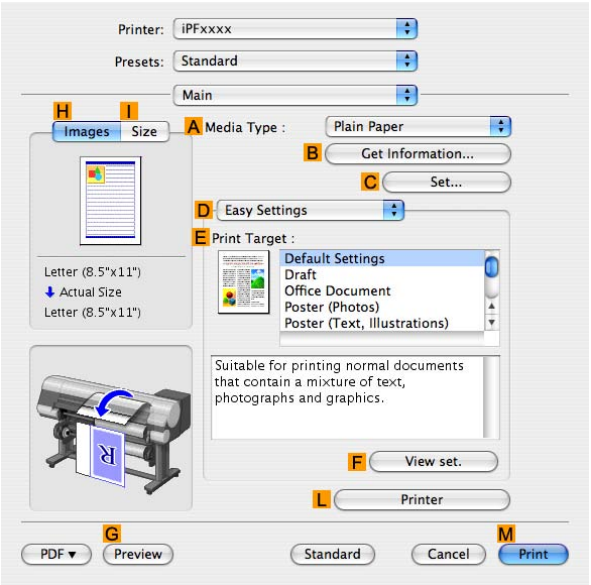


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

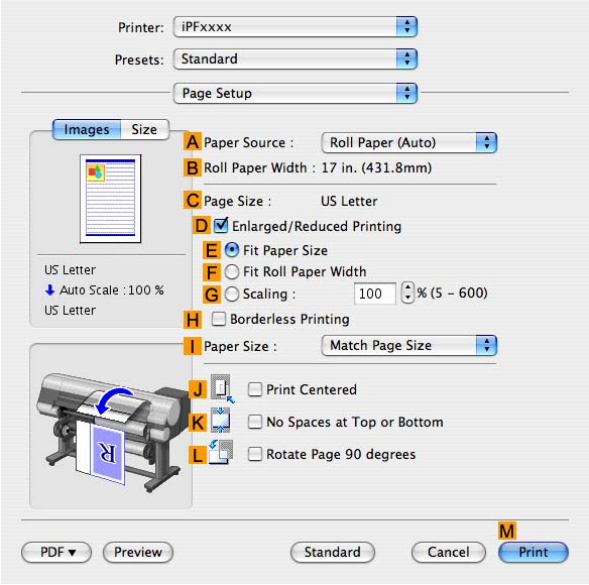
Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



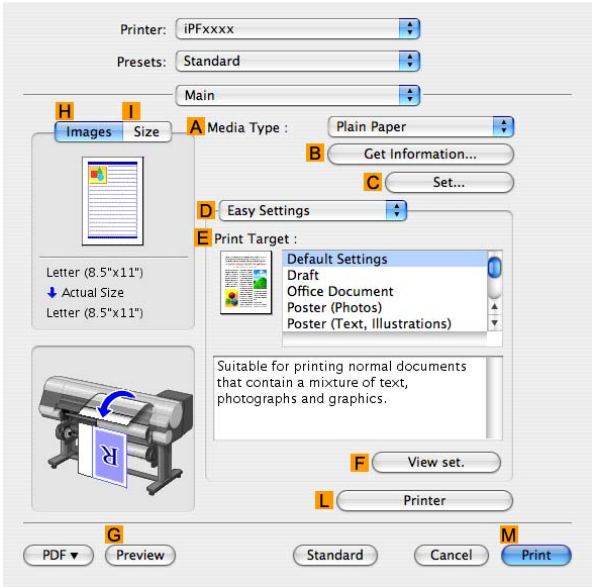
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



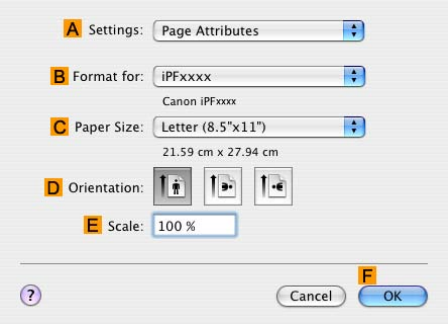
11. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

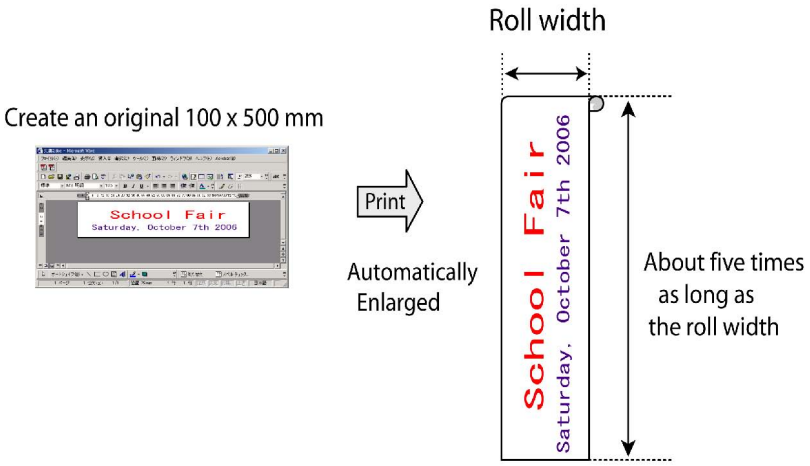
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

You can create vertical or horizontal banners by printing originals that are in banner format on rolls. Originals created in Microsoft Word or other applications in your preferred size can be enlarged to fill the width of roll paper by completing simple printer driver settings.



Note

- To create an original for large-format printing in the Windows version of Microsoft Word, you can use the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Word** and follow simple instructions in the form of a wizard to prepare and print your original.
  For details, see Print Plug-In for Word.

Fit Roll Paper Width

You can easily create vertical or horizontal banners by automatically enlarging or reducing originals to fit the full width of rolls.

Note

- The printer supports roll printing up to a maximum length of 18.0 m (19.7 yd).

For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) (→P.288)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) (→P.293)

Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

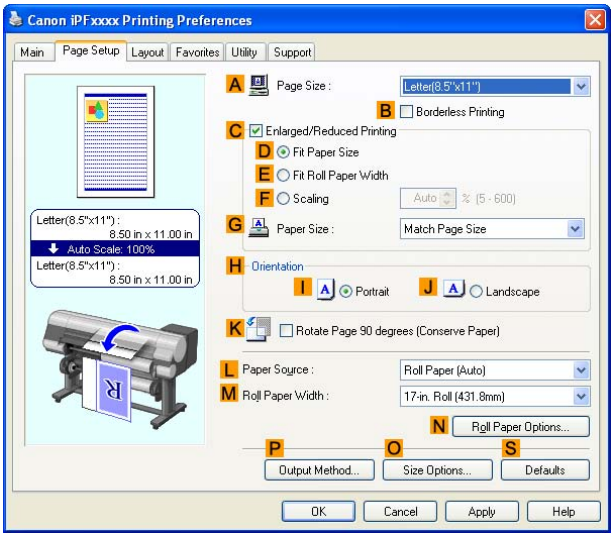
Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Register a **Custom Paper Size**.
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Paper Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.383)
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
4. Click O **Paper Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.
7. Under **Paper Size**, enter “100” in **Width** and “500” in **Height**.
8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

10. Close the printer driver dialog box.

Note

- You can also specify a **Custom Size** as the paper size. Note that **Custom Size** settings are not available after you exit the application.
  For more information, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)”. (→P.298)

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the **Custom Paper Size** you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.

2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.

3. Under **Paper Size**, click the **Custom Paper Size** you registered-"My Horizontal Banner" in this example.

Important

- If "My Horizontal Banner" is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
- In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in “Custom” and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in).

4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal.

5. Create the banner.

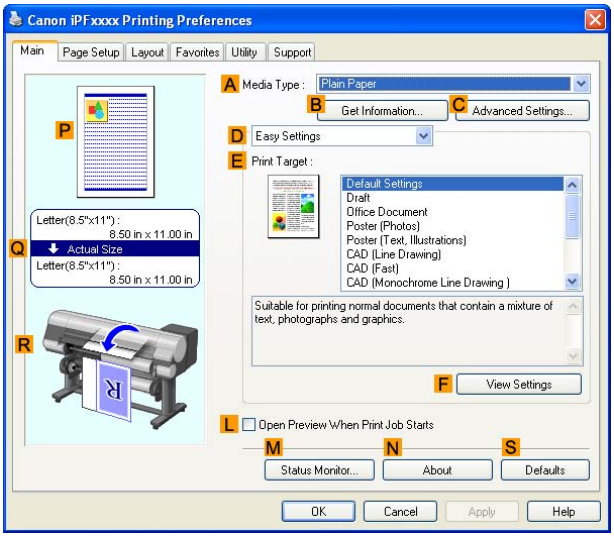
Note

- To create an original for large-format printing in Microsoft Word, you can use the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Word** and follow simple instructions in the form of a wizard to prepare and print your original. For details, see Print Plug-In for Word.

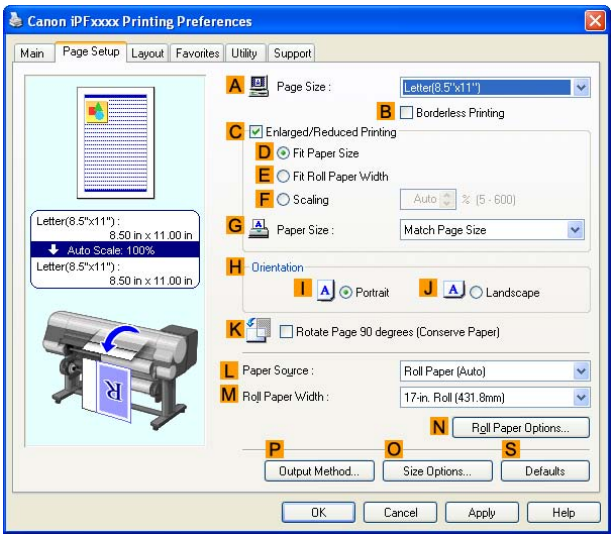
Printing the banner

Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

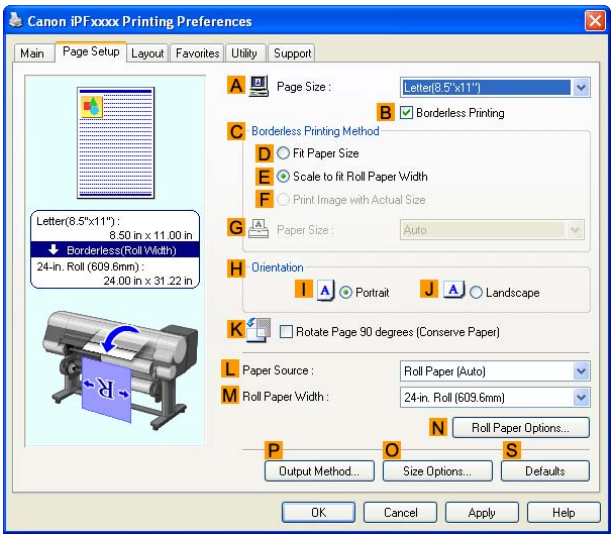


7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you registered, "My Horizontal Banner."

8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the B **Borderless Printing** check box.



9. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. After you click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

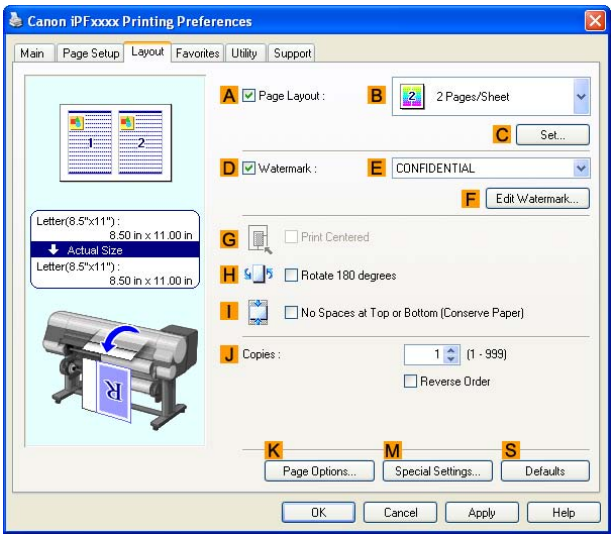
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Note

- If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1. On the **Layout** sheet, click **M** **Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



2. In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in.])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a “Custom Page Size.”
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a “Custom Page Size” in **Page Setup**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

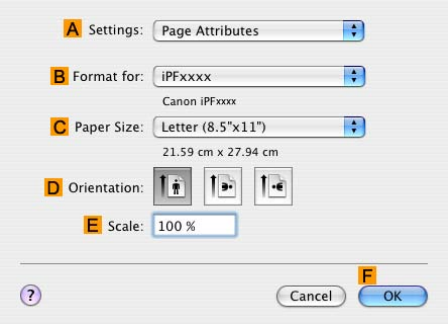
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a Custom Page Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

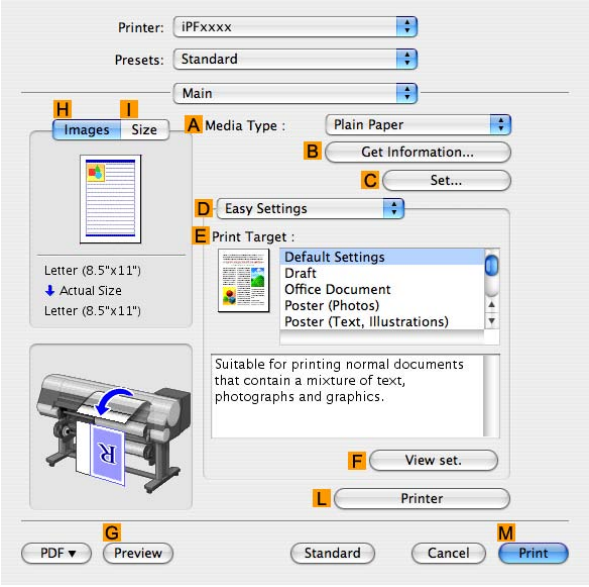


3. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter “100*500.”
   If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click **+** below the list.
6. Under **Page Size**, enter “10” in **Width** and “50” in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
7. Specify the margins by entering “0.3” in **Printer Margins**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
9. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click "100*500," the size you registered.
10. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.

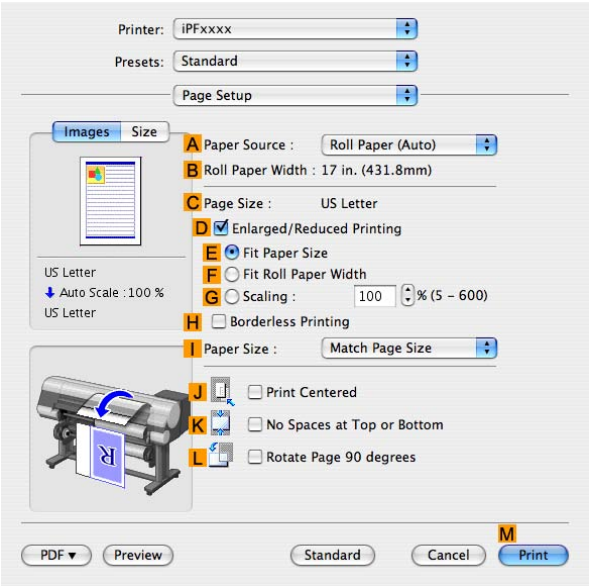
Printing the banner

Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the E **Print Target** list.
5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

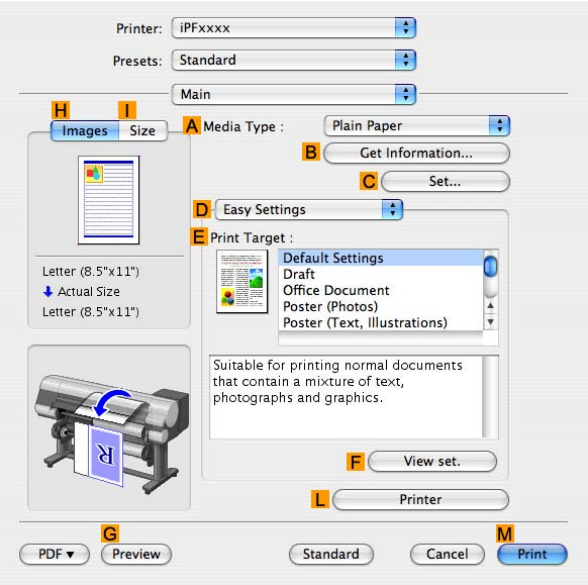


6. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



8. In C **Page Size**, make sure "100*500" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
9. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
11. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

By specifying the paper size, you can print on non-standard sizes of paper.
There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as follows.

Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver

After you register non-standard paper sizes, they are listed with standard sizes so that you can choose them anytime as needed.

Note

- These non-standard paper sizes you register in the printer driver are called Custom Paper Sizes in Windows and “Custom Sizes” in Mac OS X.

Specifying custom paper sizes for temporary use

Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application. If you want to set up a non-standard paper size so that it will always be available, we recommend registering the paper size in the printer driver.

Note

- These temporary paper sizes you register on the printer are called “Custom Sizes” in Windows.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) (→P.298)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) (→P.302)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as described below.

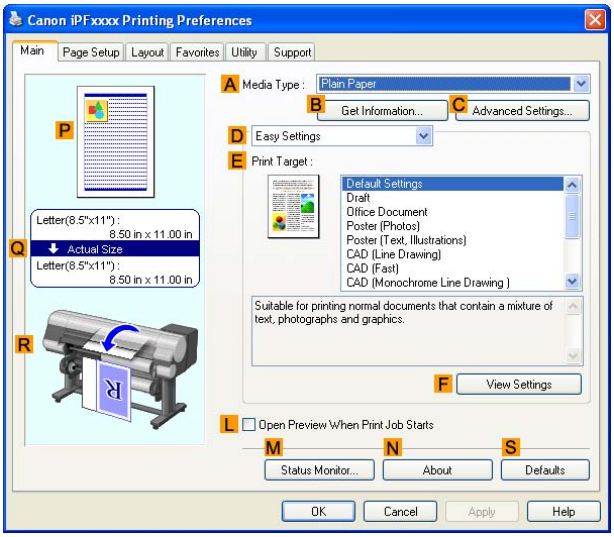
- Printing by using **Custom Size** (→P.298)
- Printing by using **Custom Paper Size** (→P.300)

Printing by using Custom Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

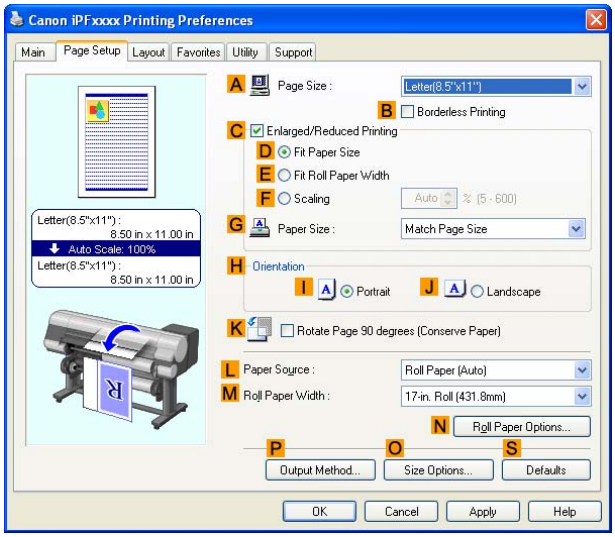
- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Click **Custom Size** in the A **Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
10. Complete the following settings in the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
    1. Select **mm** in **Units**.
    2. Enter “430” (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.
11. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

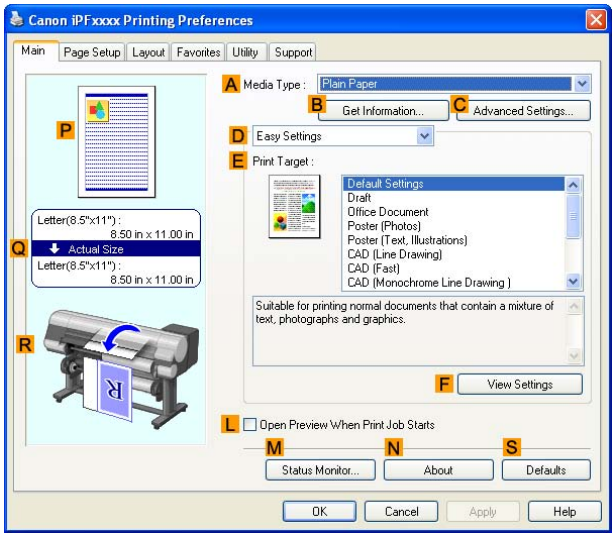
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing by using Custom Paper Size

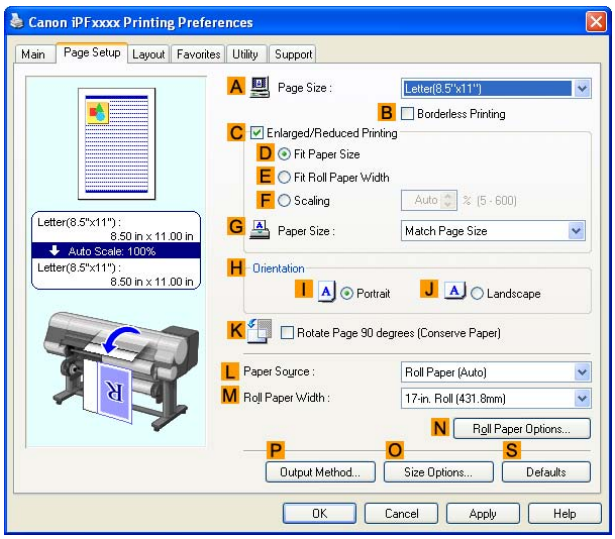
This section describes how to print using **Custom Paper Size** based on the following example. First, register a non-standard paper size called “430 mm Square” as a **Custom Paper Size**.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

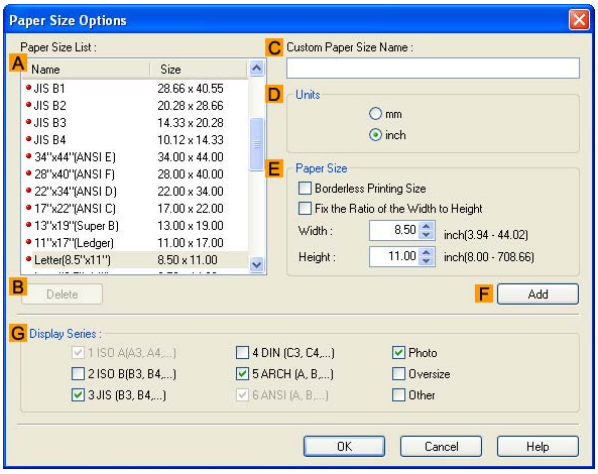
1. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click O **Paper Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.



9. Complete the following settings in the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
   1. Enter a desired paper name in C **Custom Paper Size Name**. “430 mm Square” is used in this example.
   2. Confirm that **mm** is selected in D **Units**.
   3. Under E **Paper Size**, enter “430” in both **Width** and **Height**.

Note

- If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

10. Click F **Add** to register “430 mm Square”.
11. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
12. Make sure the **Custom Paper Size Name** you specified in **Page Setup** > A **Page Size** is selected-in this case, "430 mm Square."
13. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

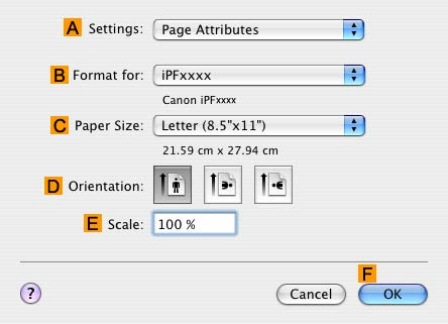
This topic describes how to print after registering “Custom Media Size” based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in “Custom Media Size”.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

Note

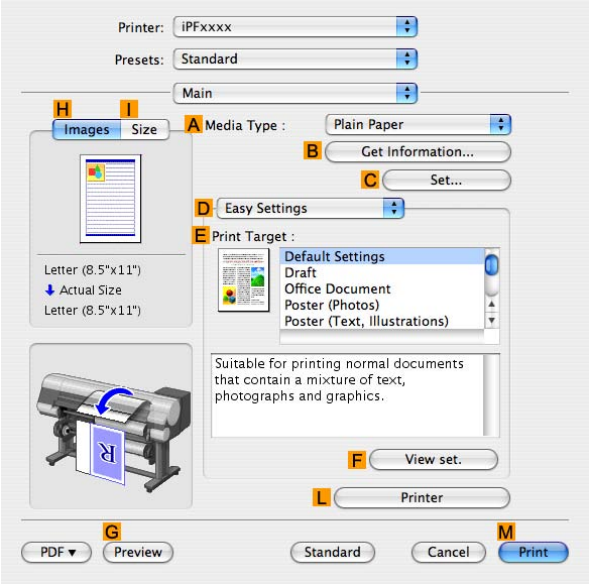
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
3. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



4. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
5. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
6. In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “43.00 cm” in **Height** and **Width**.
7. In **Printer Margins**, enter “0.5” for the top and side margins and “2.3” for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name-in this case, “430*430”.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
10. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

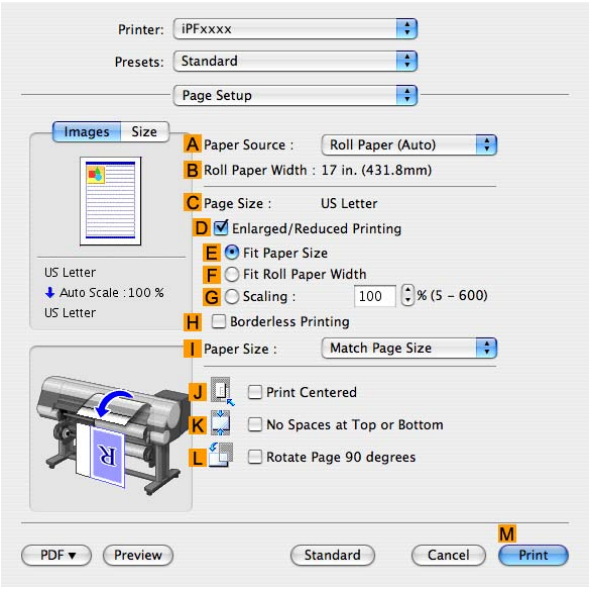
13. Access the **Main** pane.



14. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

15. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.

16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Paper Source** list.

18. In D **Easy Settings**, make sure “430*430” is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

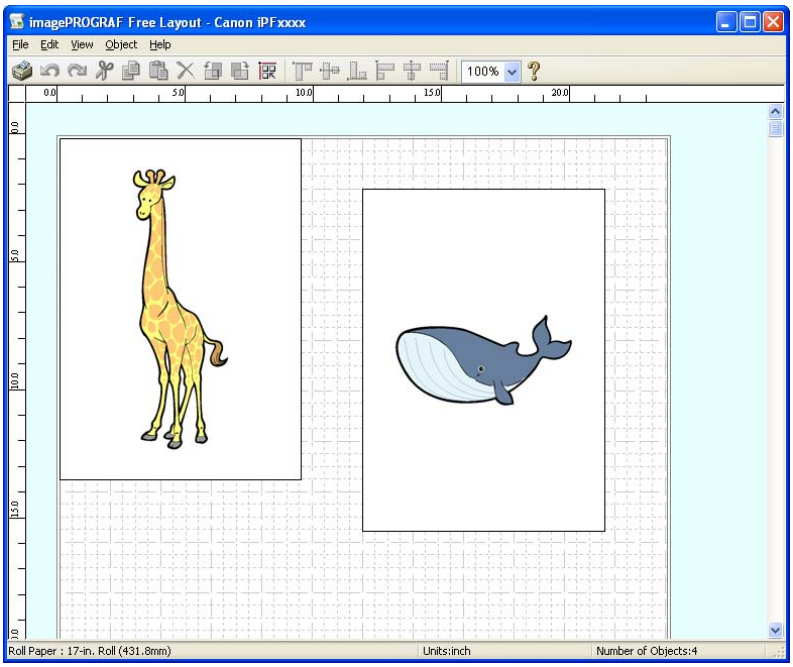
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

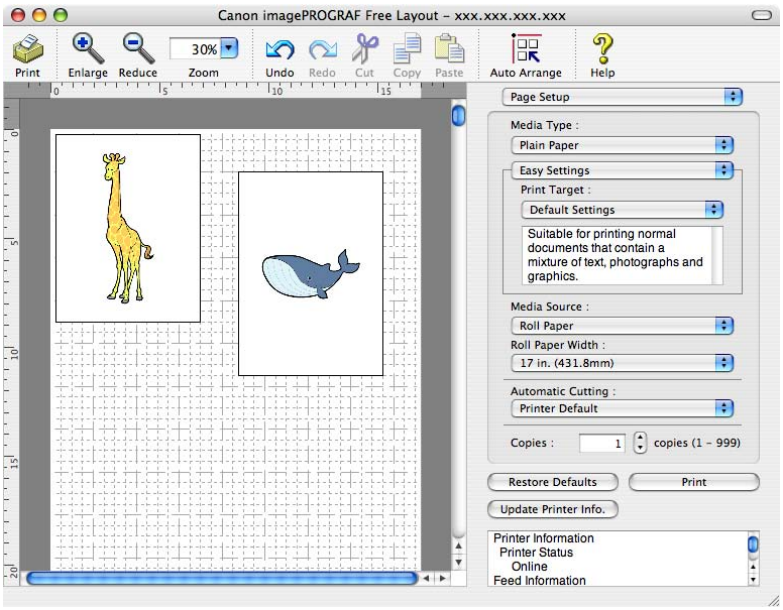
Free Layout (Windows)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

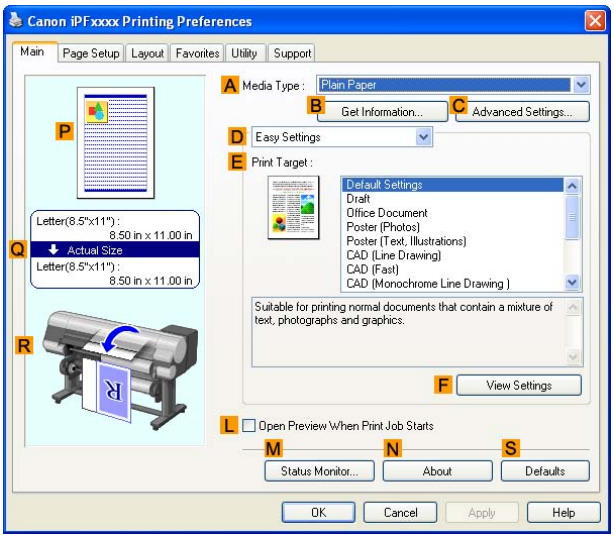
For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) (→P.306)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) (→P.308)

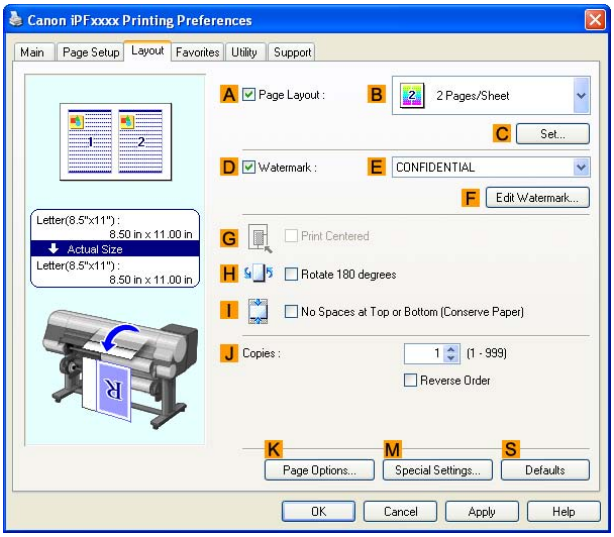
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

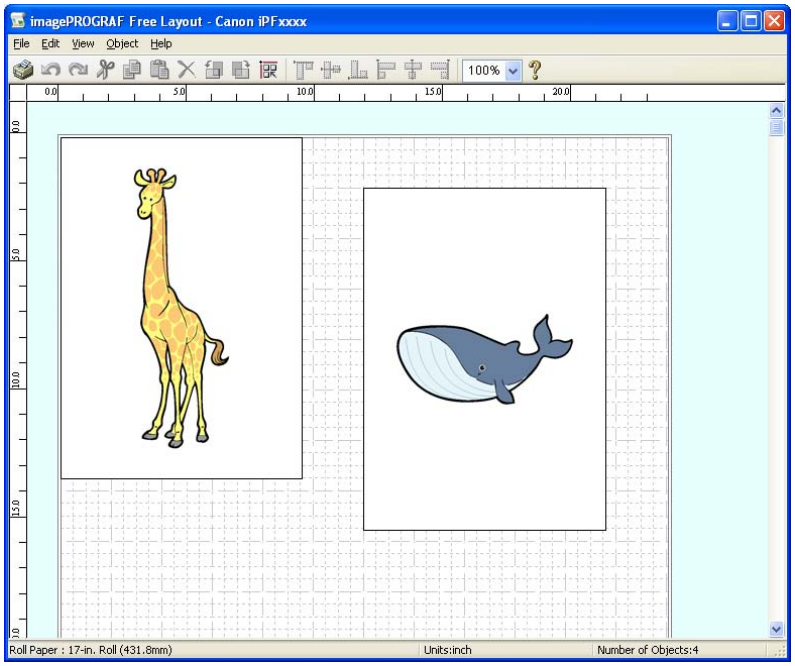


4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click **Free Layout** in the B **Page Layout** list.

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.

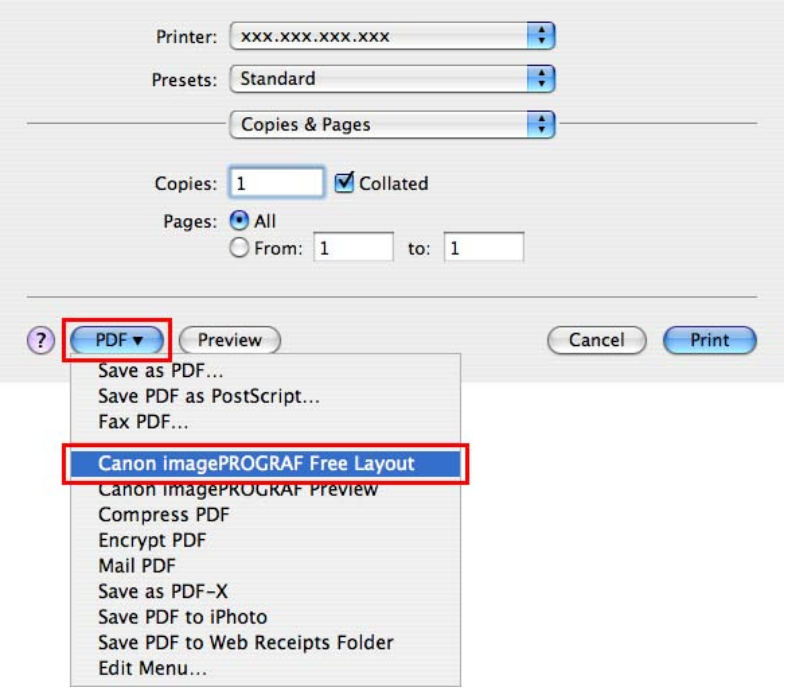
Note

- For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout .

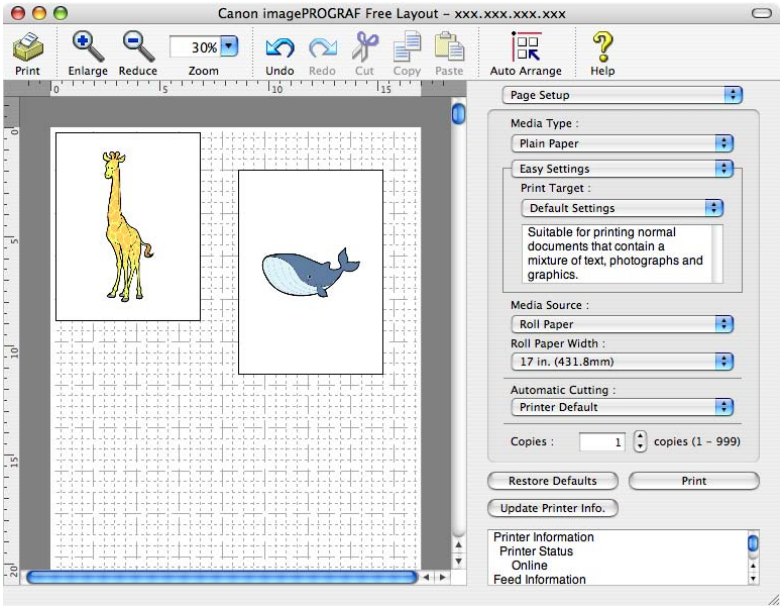
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



4. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

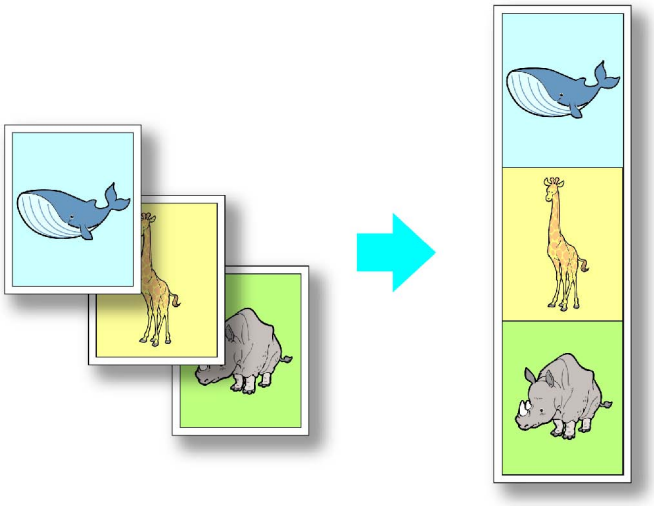
Note

- For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout .

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Roll paper (banner)



Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) (→P.311)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) (→P.313)

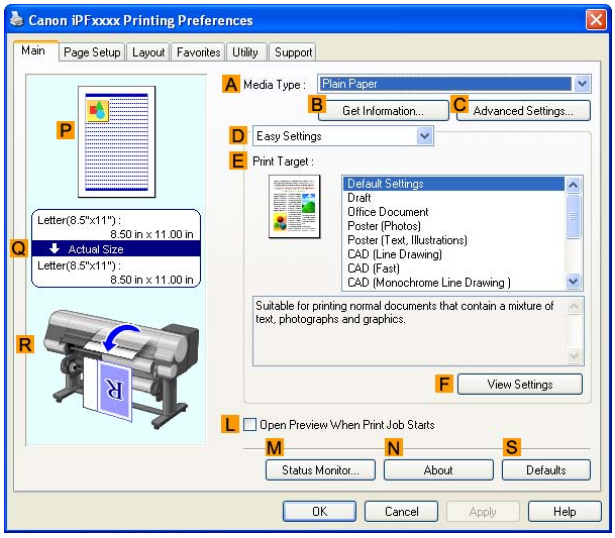
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

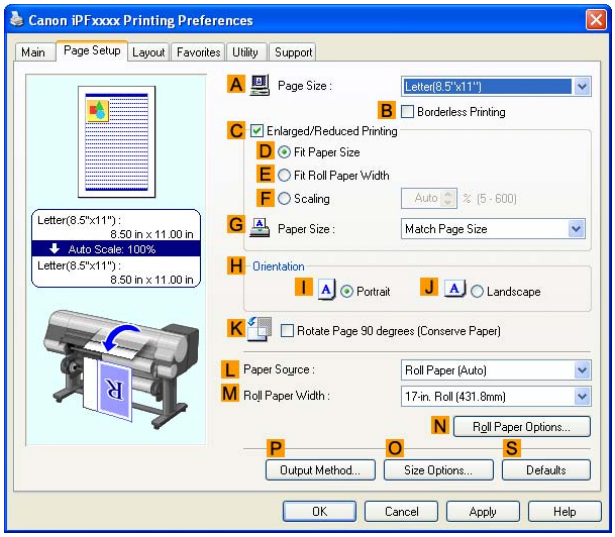
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **L** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

7. Click N **Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.

8. Select the B **Banner Printing** check box.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

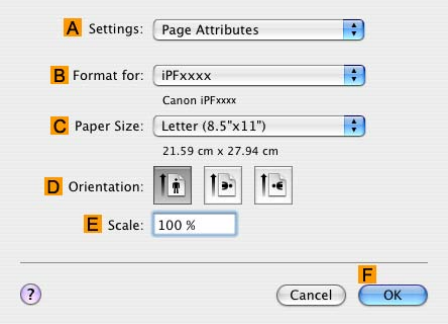
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

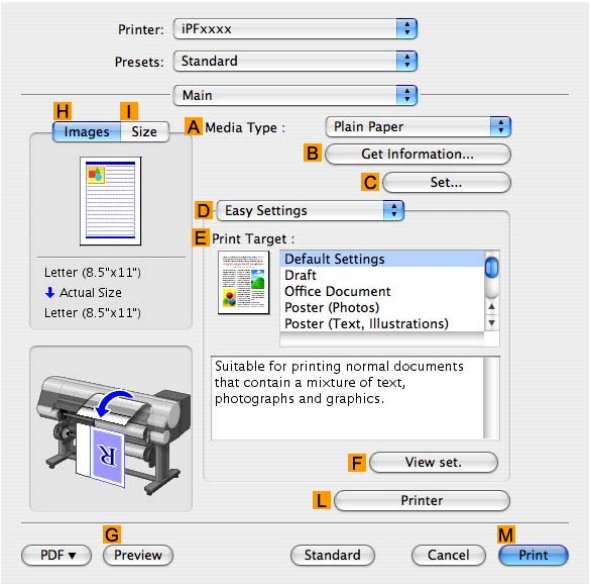
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

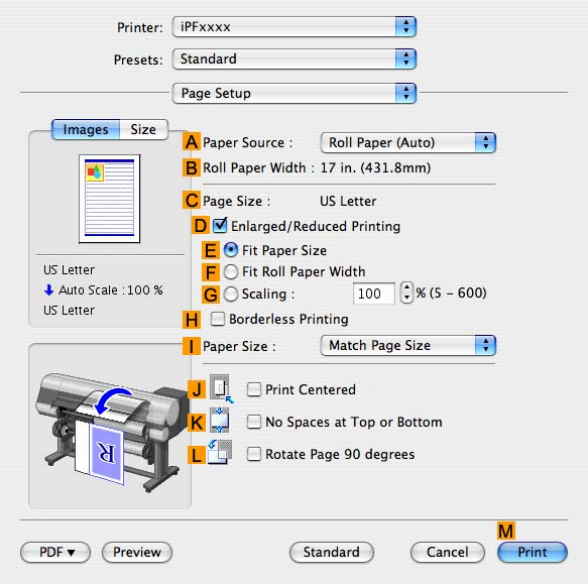


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. Click the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. In the A **Paper Source** list, click **Roll Paper 1 (Banner)** or **Roll Paper 2 (Banner)**.

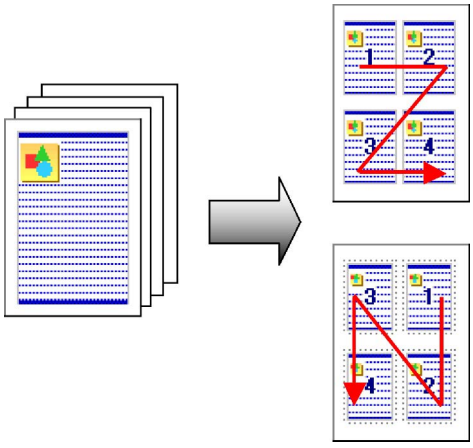
11. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.

Note

- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

Important

- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
  - Borderless Printing
  - Resizing to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Banner Printing (Windows)

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

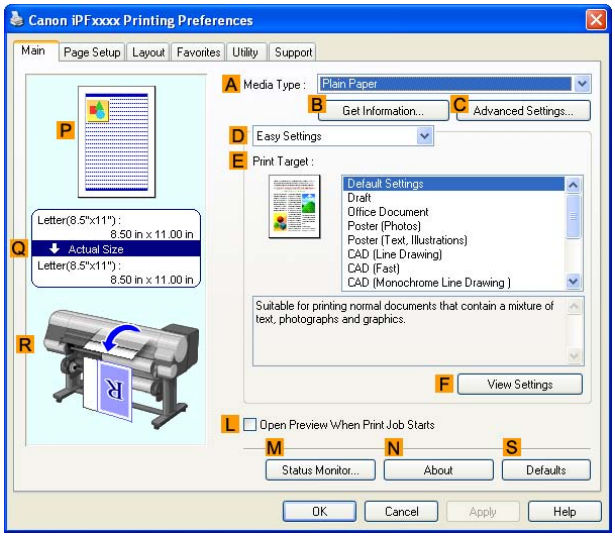
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) (→P.316)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) (→P.318)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

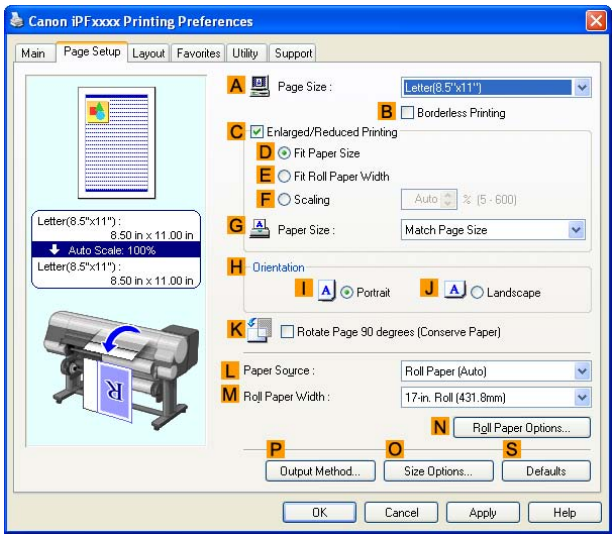
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

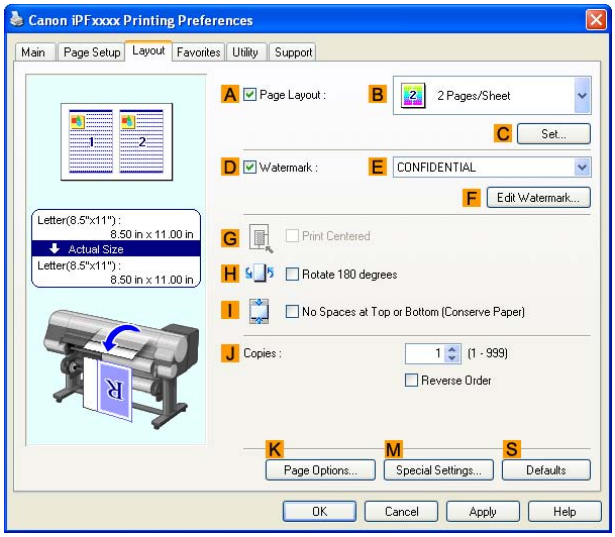


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the **A** **Page Layout** check box.

12. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **B** **Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking **C** **Set**.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

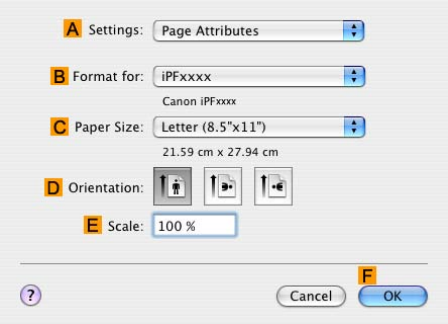
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

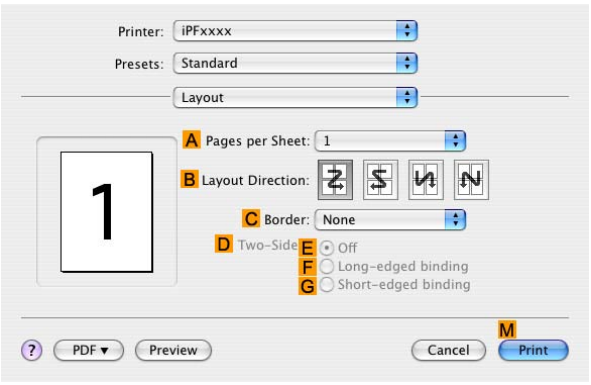
This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Layout** pane.

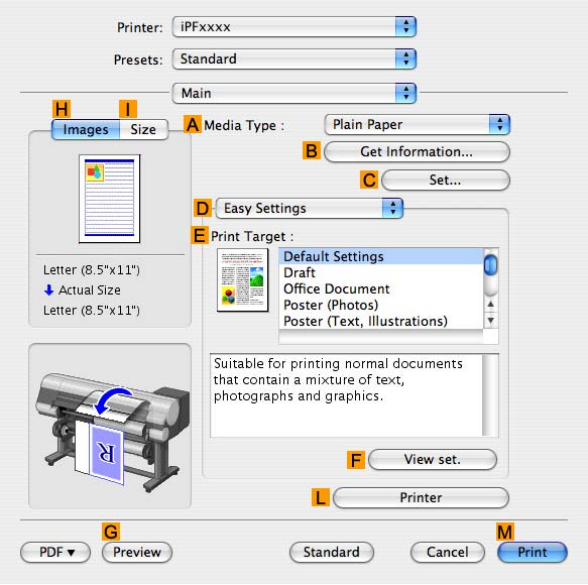


7. Click **4.0** in the A **Pages per Sheet** list.

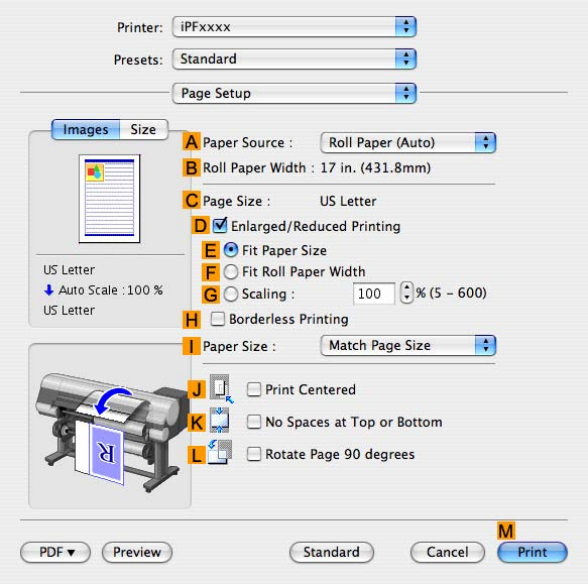
Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in B **Layout Direction** and C **Border**.

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
10. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

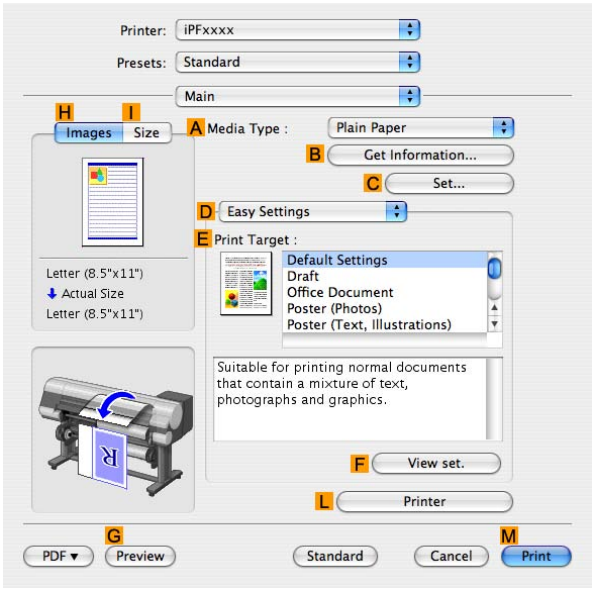


12. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

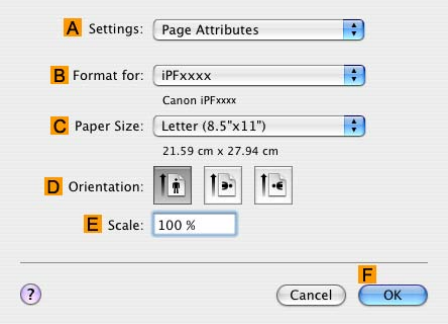
13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



14. Make sure **C** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



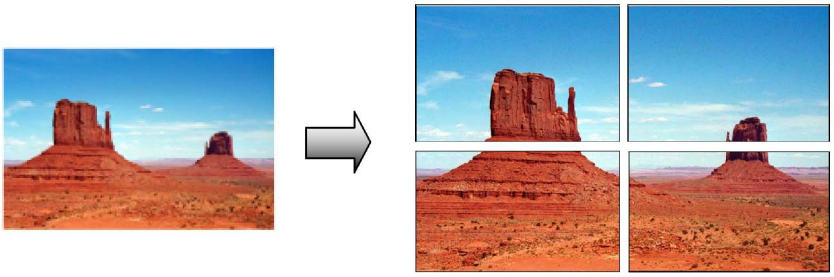
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.
For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Large Posters (Windows) (→P.322)

Note

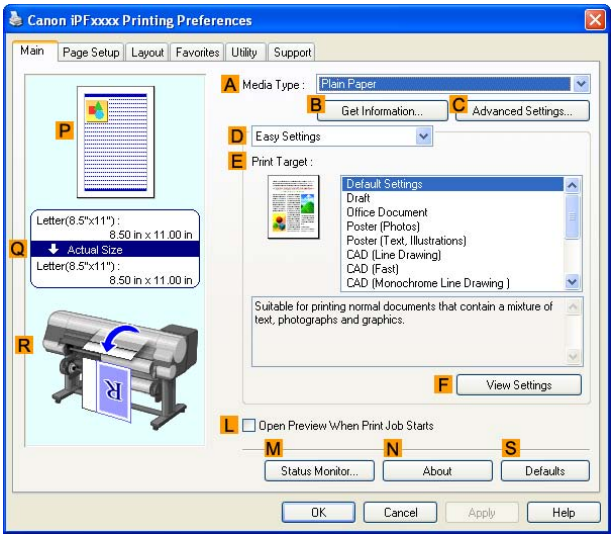
- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

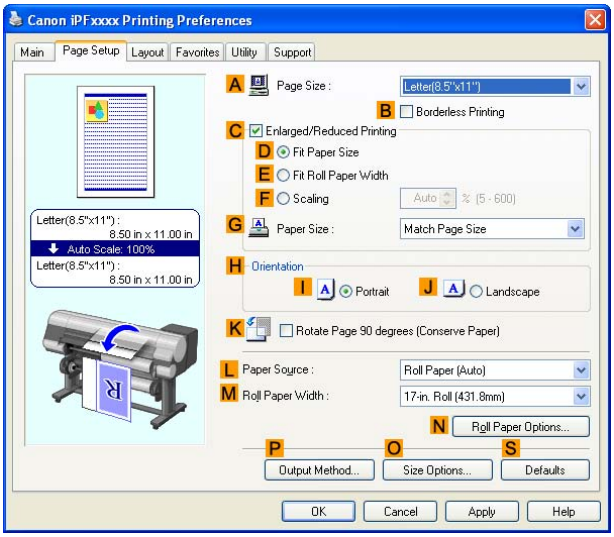
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper Type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

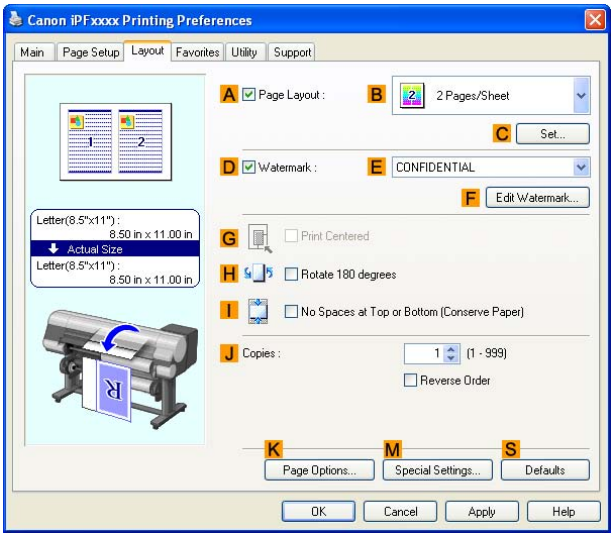
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Paper.
5. Click **Poster (Photos)** or **Poster (Text, Illustrations)** in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. Click **Manual** in the L **Paper Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
  1. Click C **Set** under B **Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
  2. On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
  3. Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

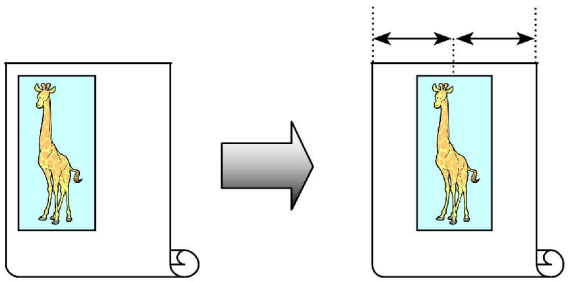
Centering originals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

When using originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

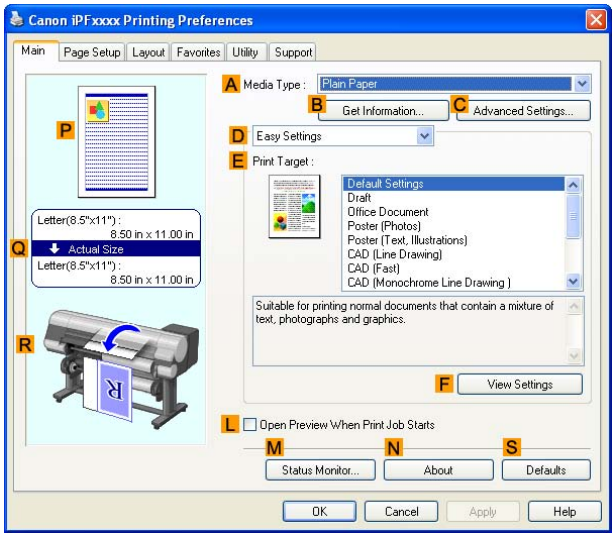
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) (→P.325)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) (→P.327)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

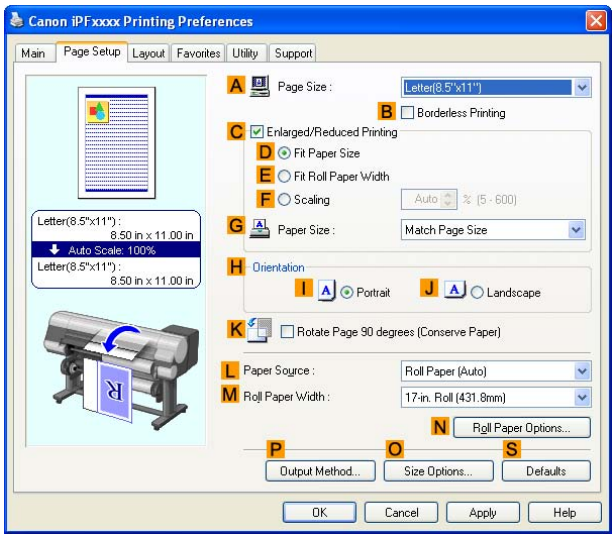
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in.])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

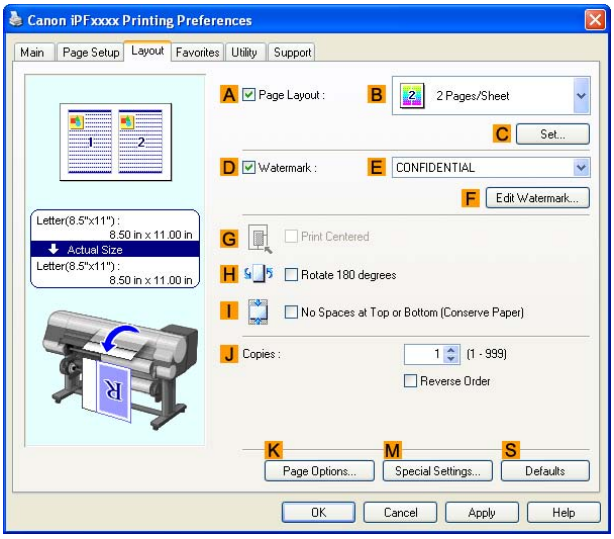


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

8. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

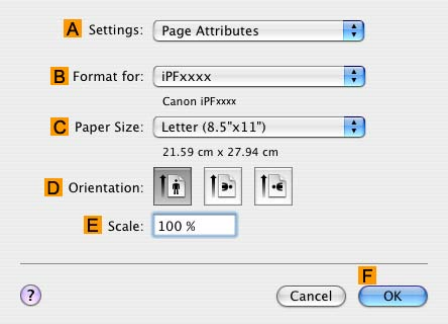
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

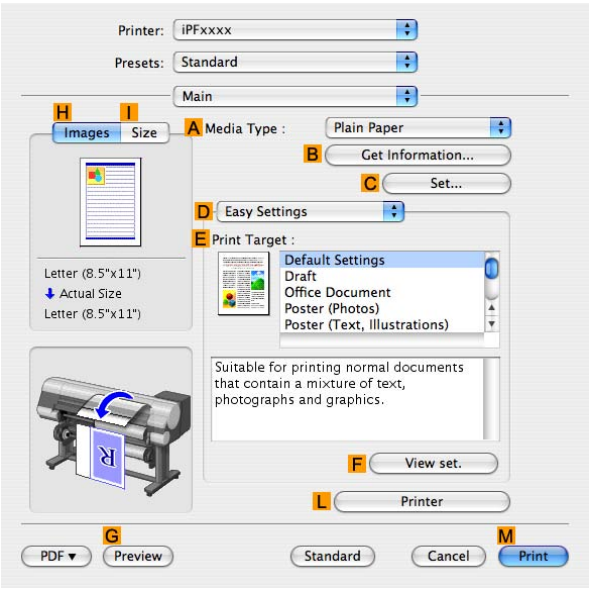
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in.])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

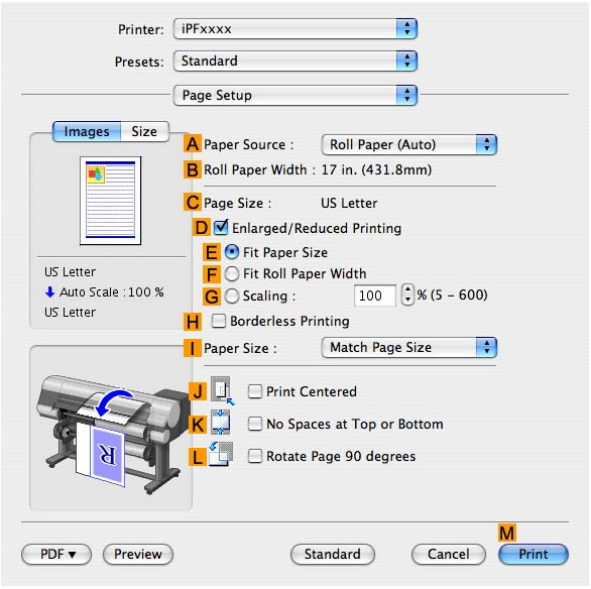


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

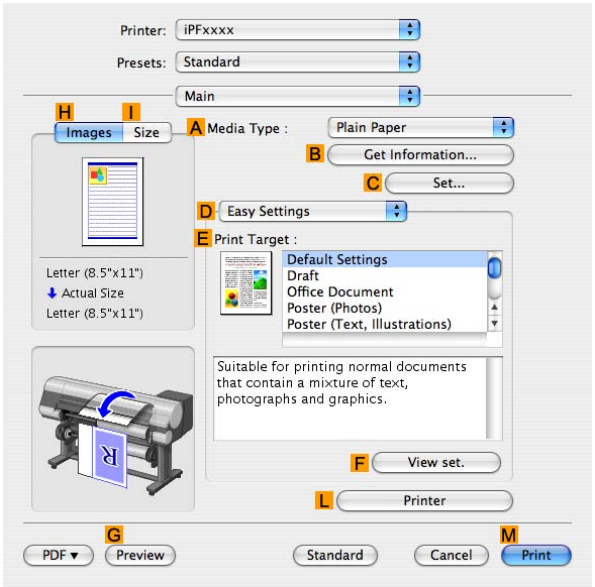


10. In the **A** **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

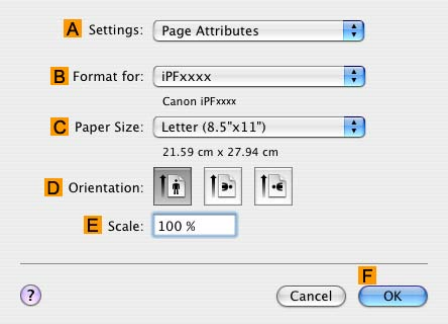
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10-in. Roll**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

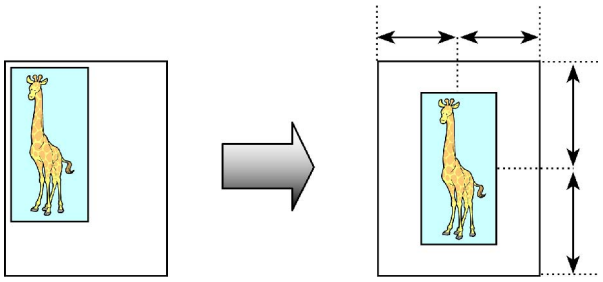
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

When you print originals that are smaller than the sheet size, the originals are arranged in the upper left corner of the sheet. If you prefer, you can print originals that were arranged this way centered on the sheet instead.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

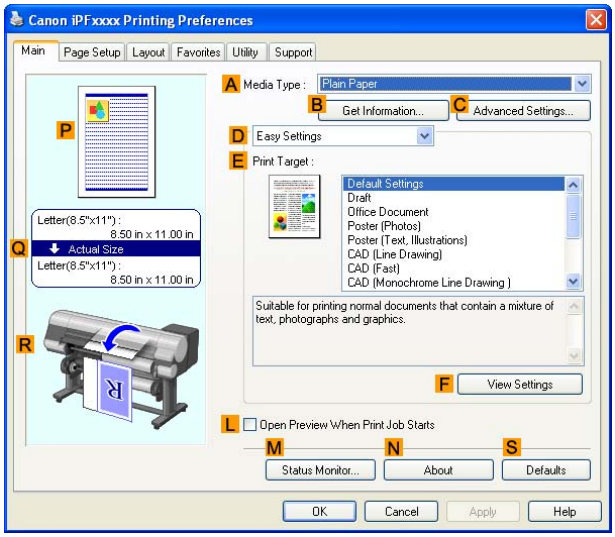
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) (→P.331)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) (→P.333)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

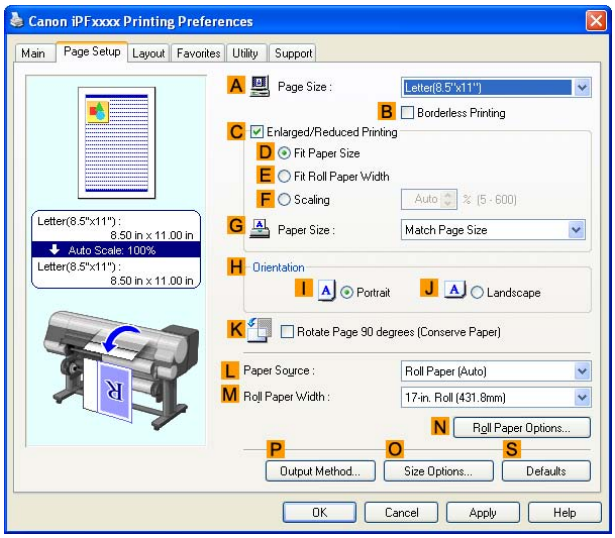
This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

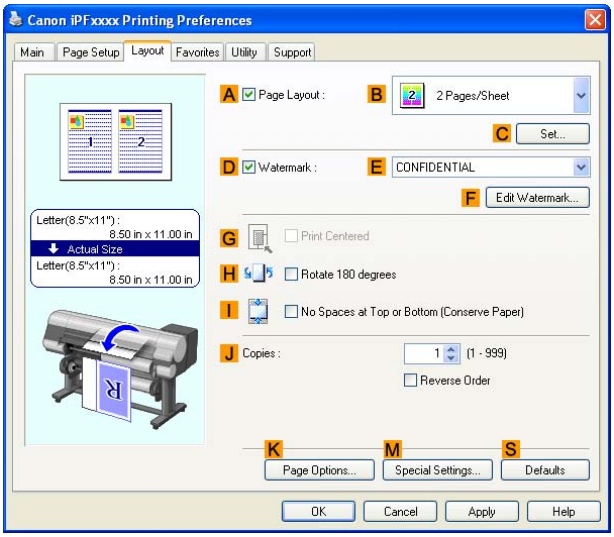


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

9. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Paper Size** list.
10. Click F **Scaling** and enter “50.”
11. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.
12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Important

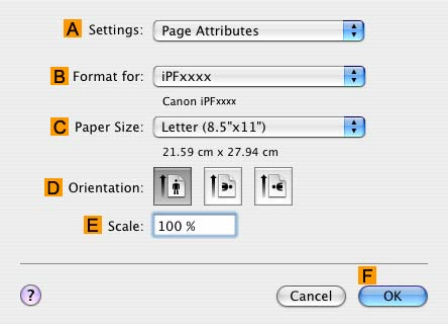
- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

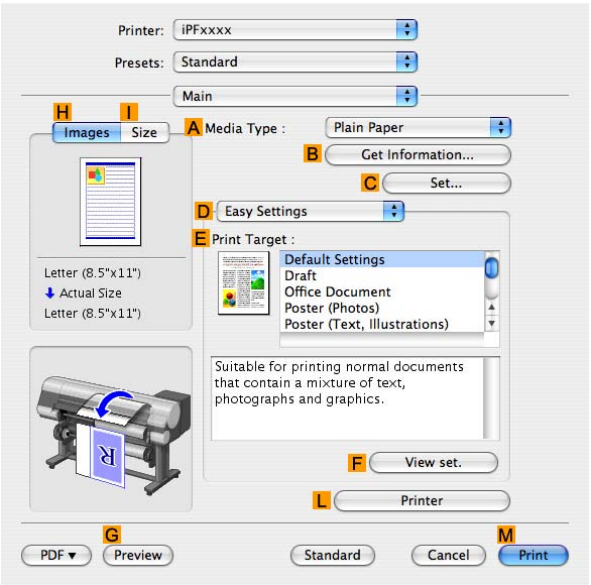
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

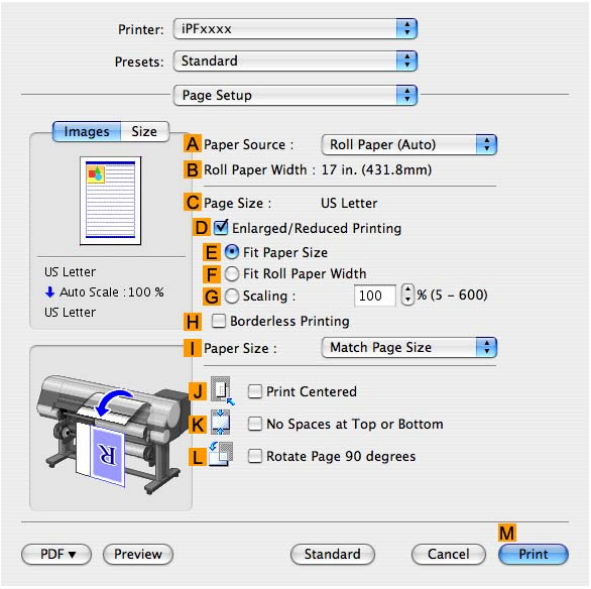


2. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
3. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
4. In the application software menu, choose **Print**.
5. Access the **Main** pane.

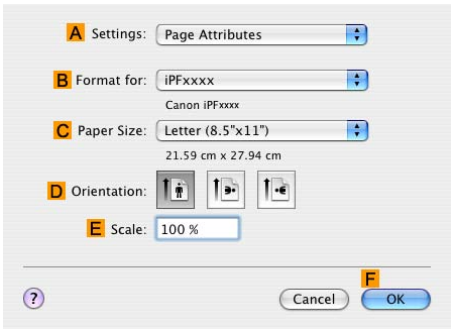


6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
7. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Paper Source** list.
10. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

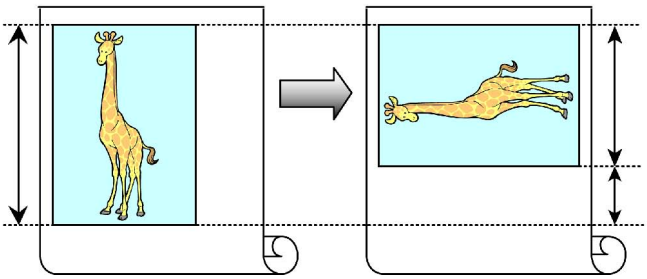
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) (→P.336)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) (→P.338)

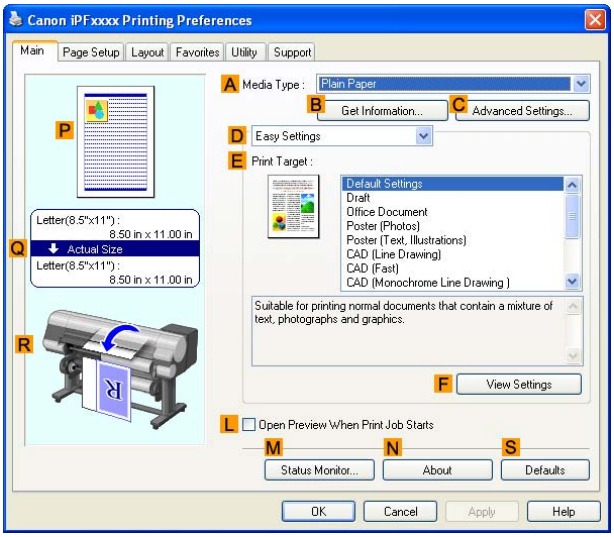
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

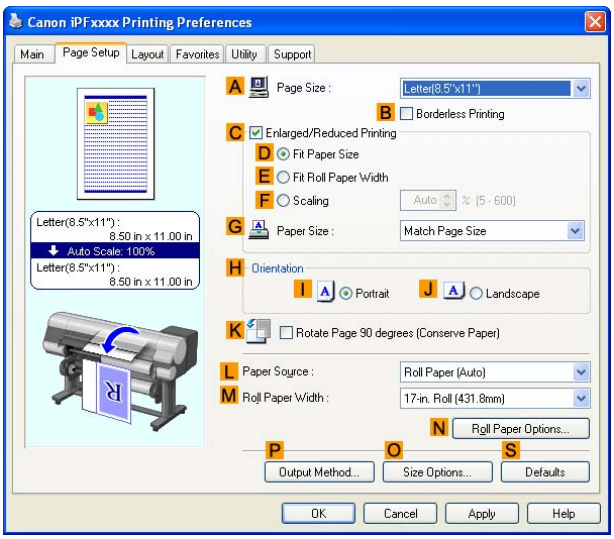
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in]) /Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper Width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in.])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of an A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

7. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Select the K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

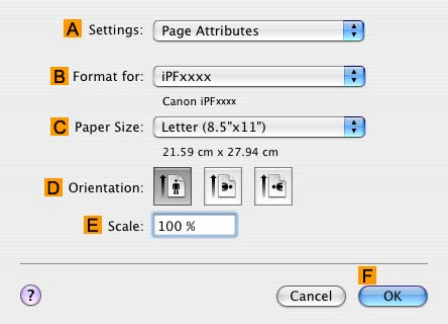
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

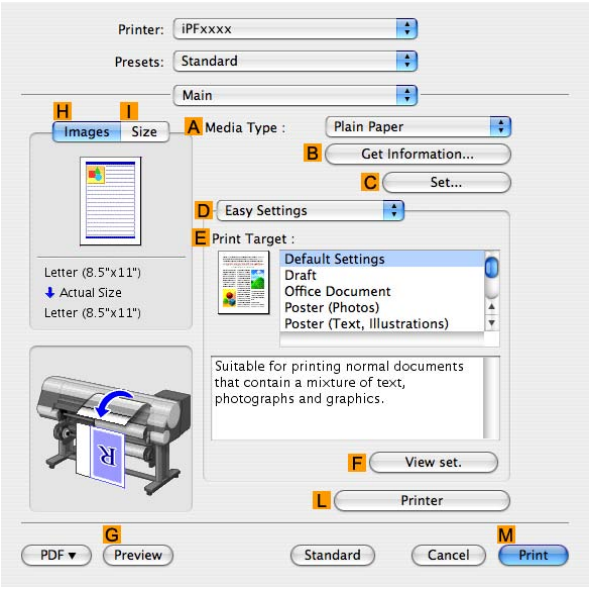
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in.])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of an A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

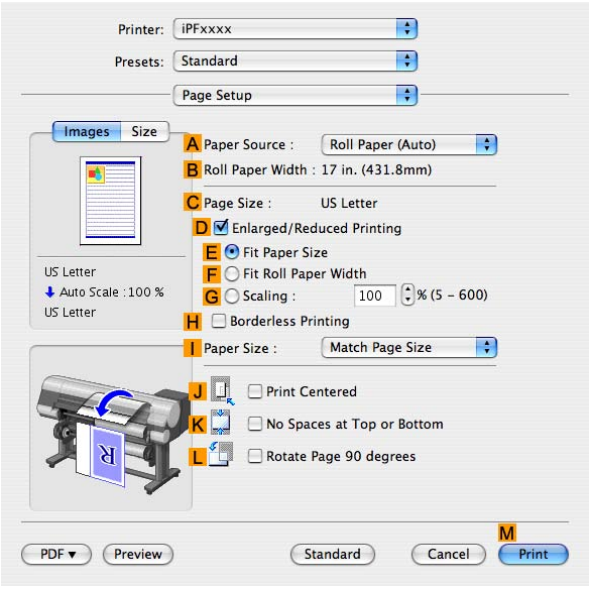


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

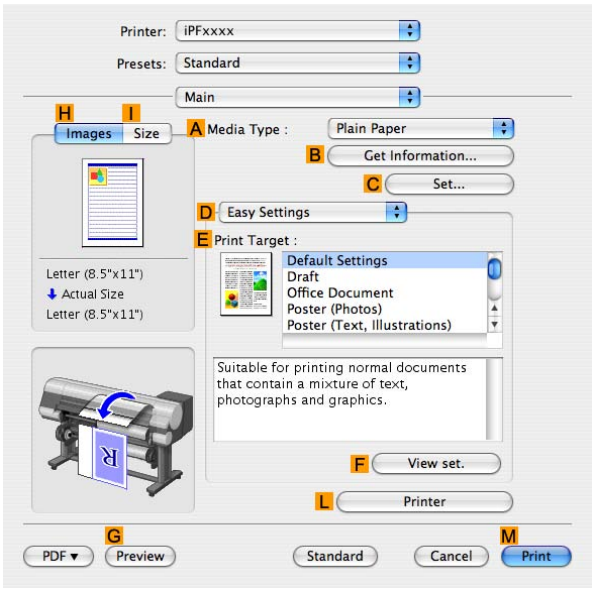
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



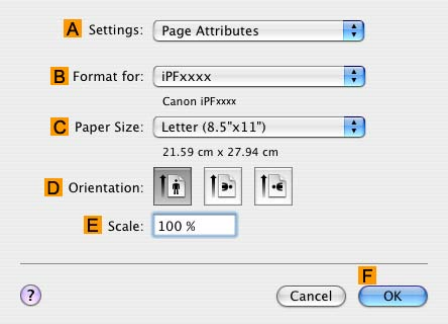
9. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the L **Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

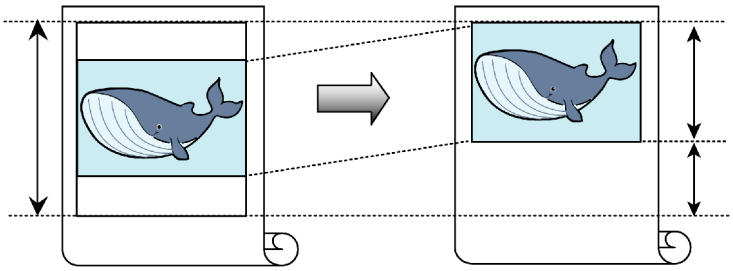
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
  - Banner printing
  - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout

Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

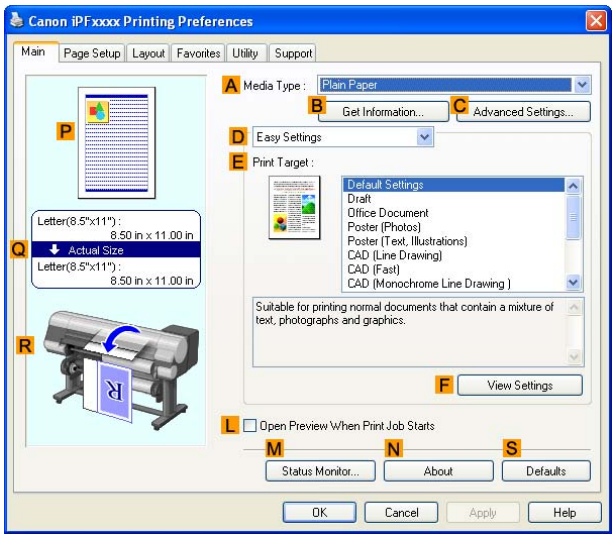
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) (→P.342)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) (→P.344)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

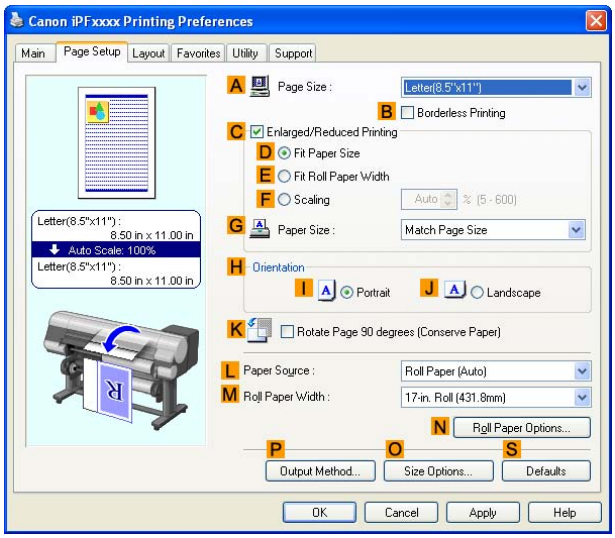
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in.])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

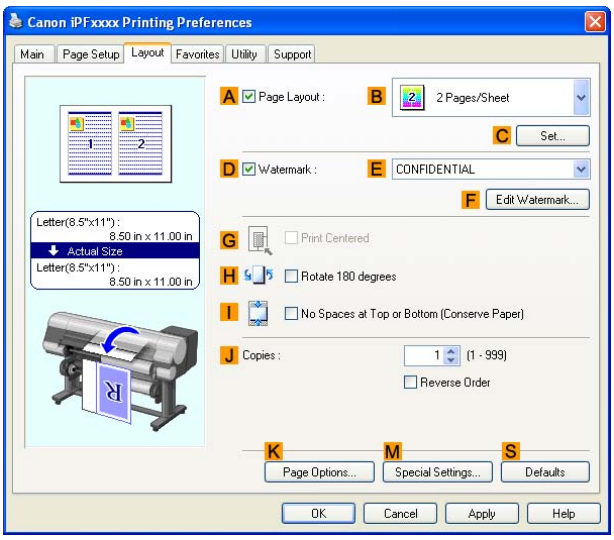


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
7. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the I **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

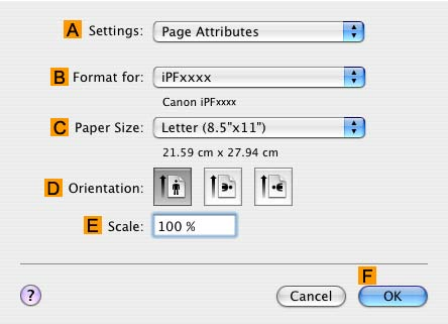
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

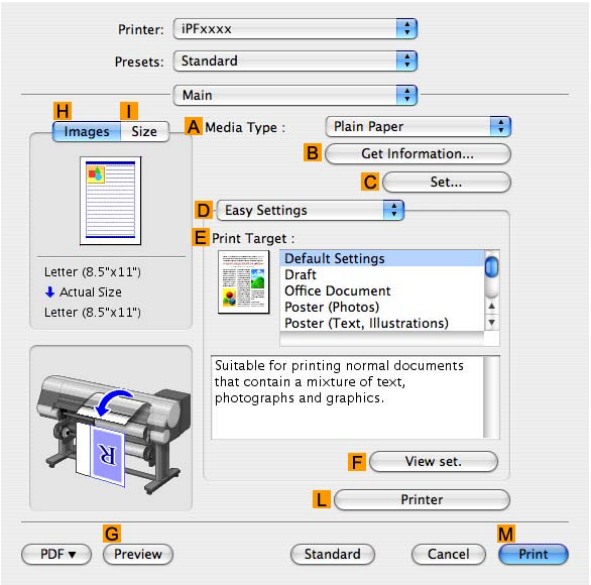
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in.])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

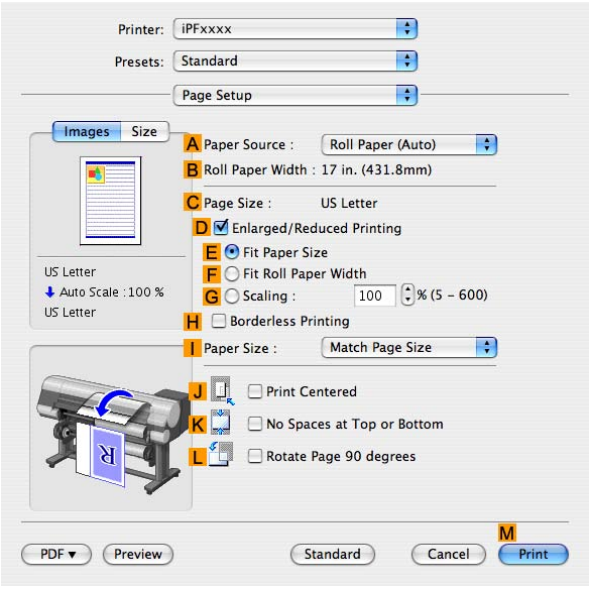


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

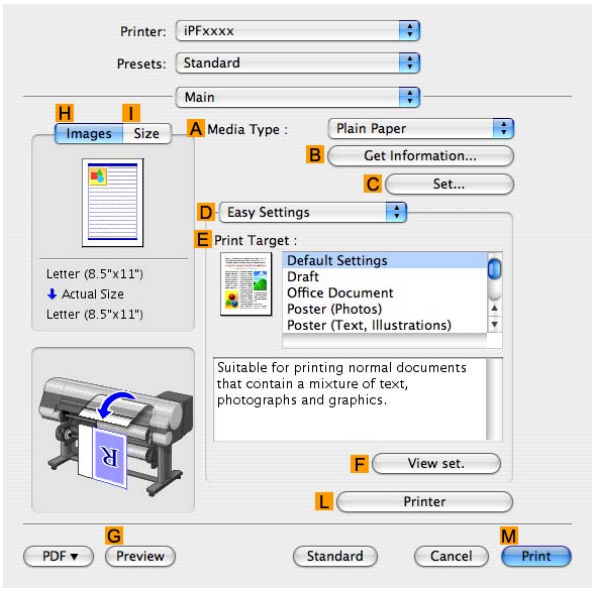
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



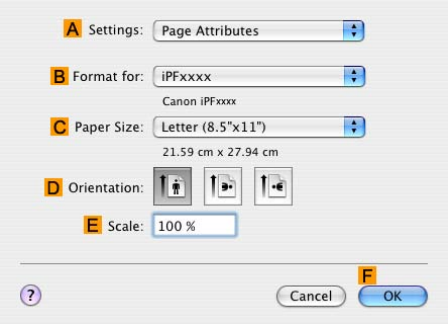
9. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

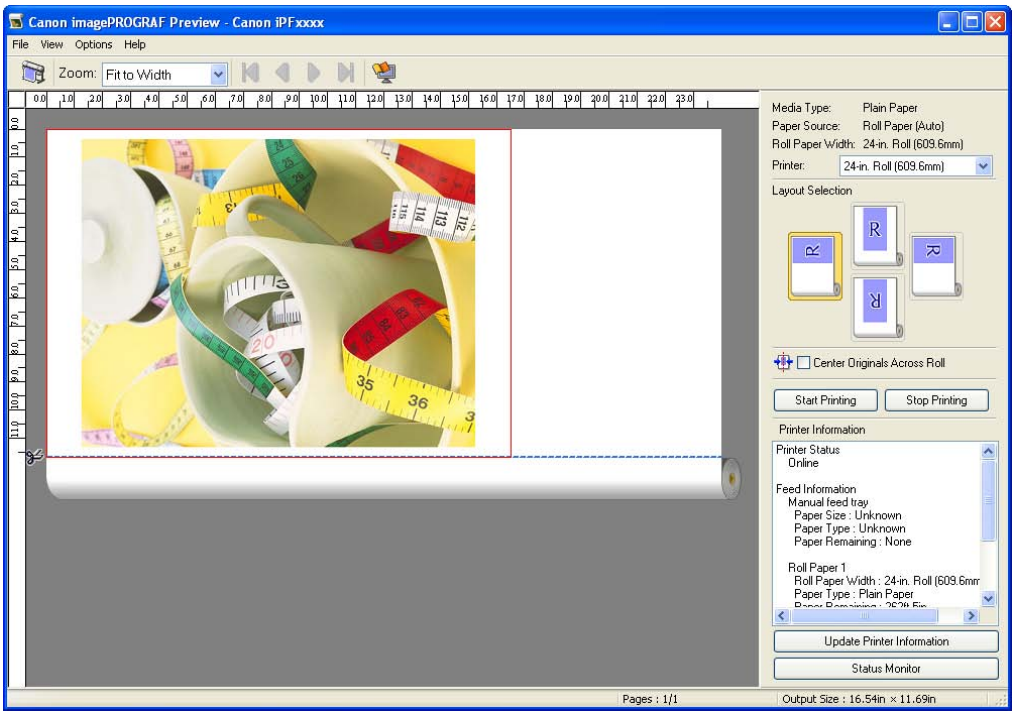
Checking Images Before Printing

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen.

Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust orientation or other settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

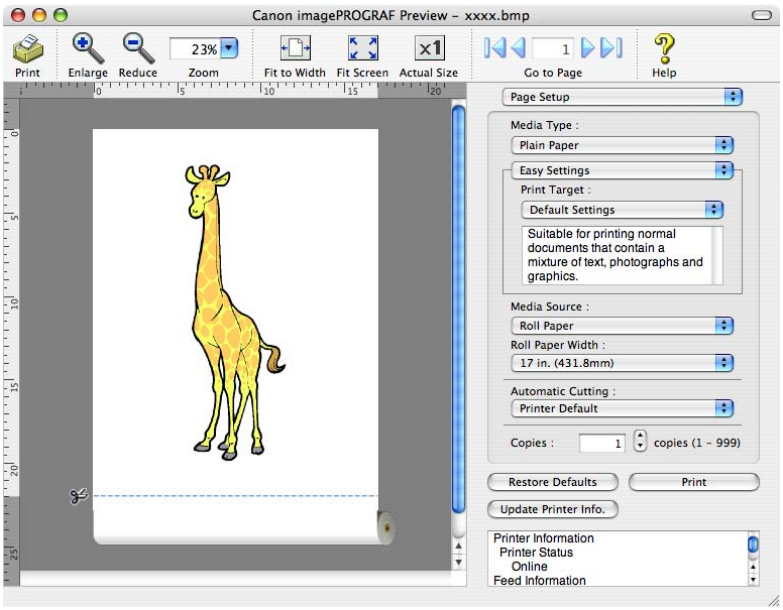


Note

- Under some settings and in some environments, PageComposer may be started.

Preview (Macintosh)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

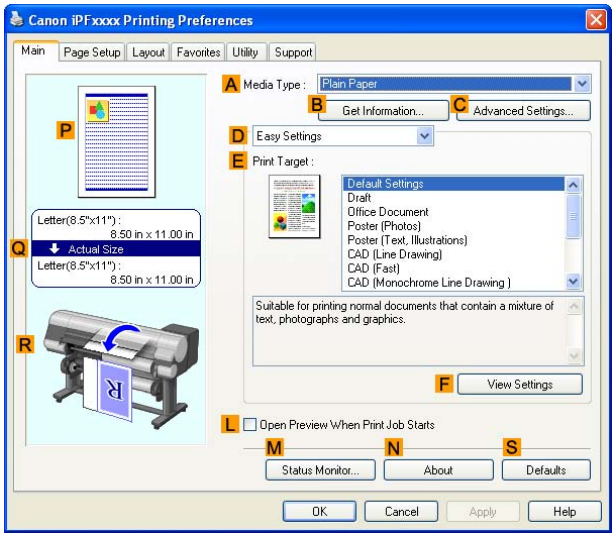
For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) (→P.349)
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.352)

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)

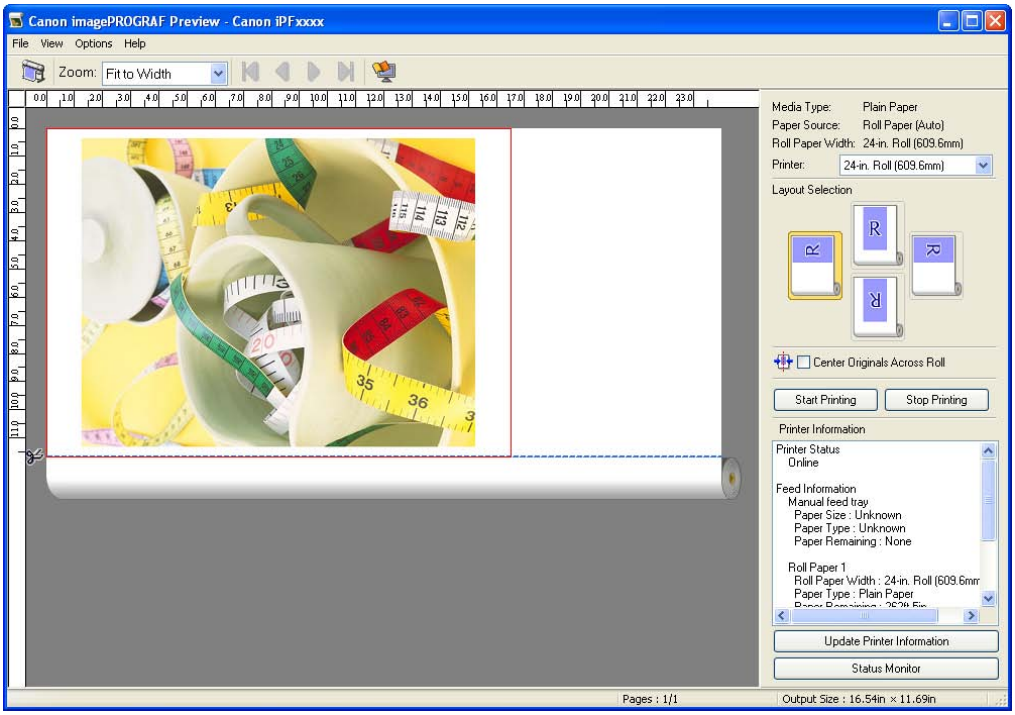
This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the L **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, either the **imagePROGRAF Preview** or PageComposer window will be displayed, depending on your environment.

imagePROGRAF Preview



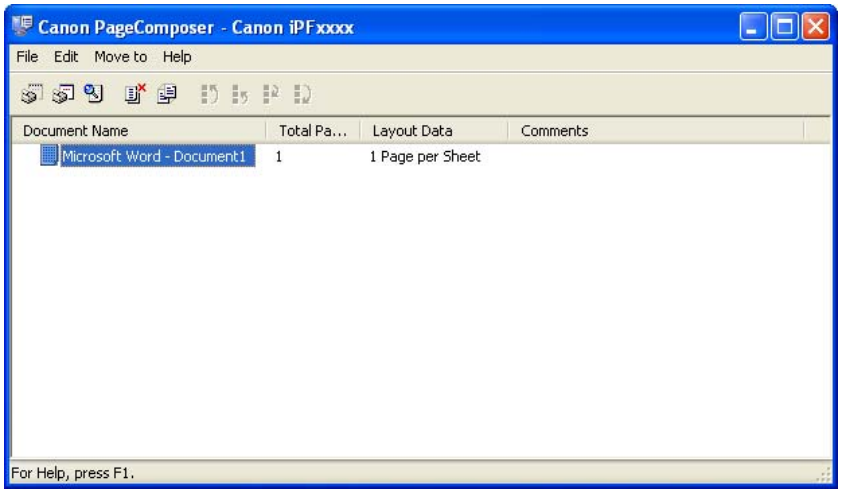
1. The main **imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.
2. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.
3. To print, click **Start Printing** in the **File** menu.

Note

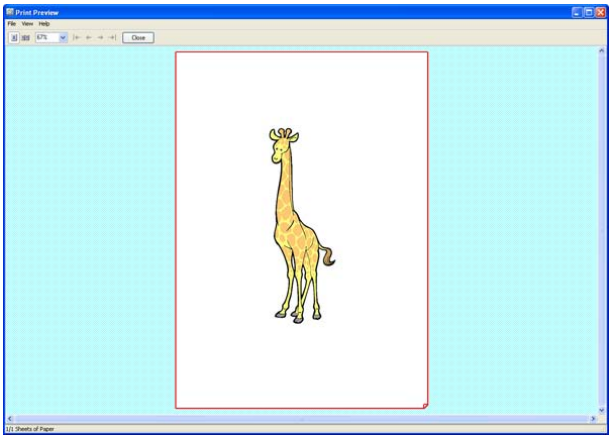
- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see Preview .

PageComposer

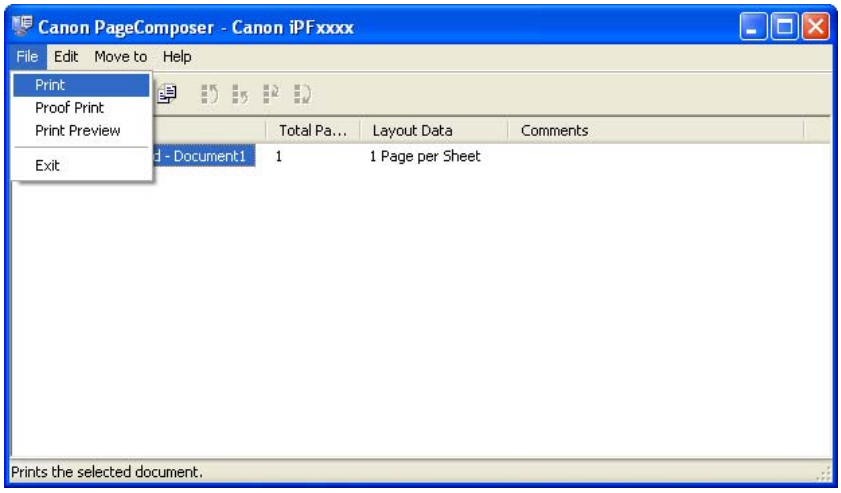
1. The PageComposer window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



2. In the PageComposer editing window, select the document to print and open the **Print Preview** window.



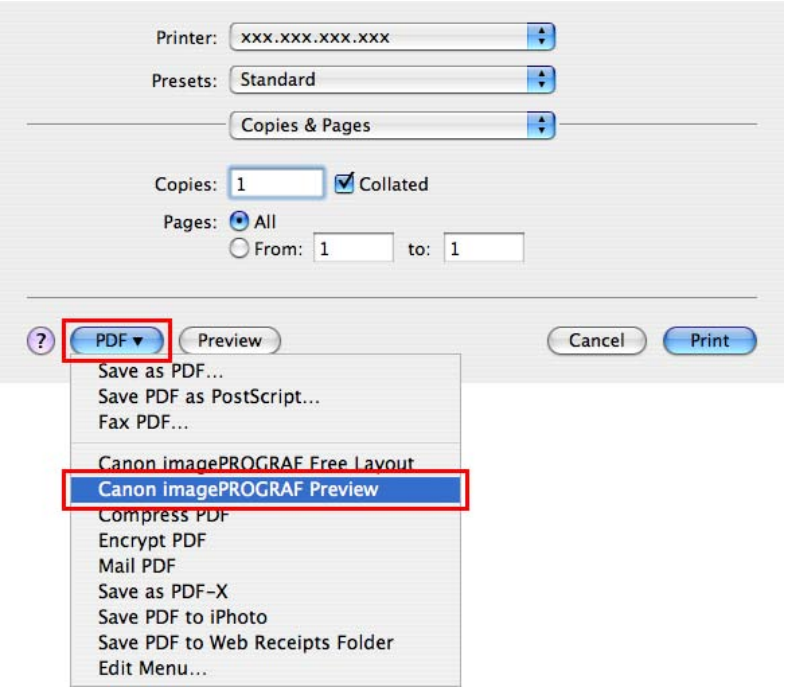
3. After confirming that the layout is just as you expected, close the **Print Preview** window.
4. In the PageComposer editing window, make sure the document to print is selected. Choose **Print** in the **File** menu.



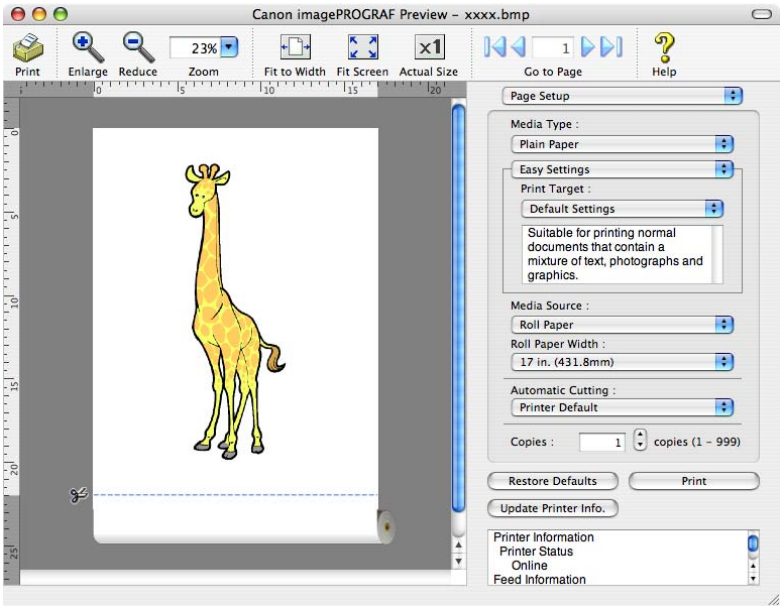
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

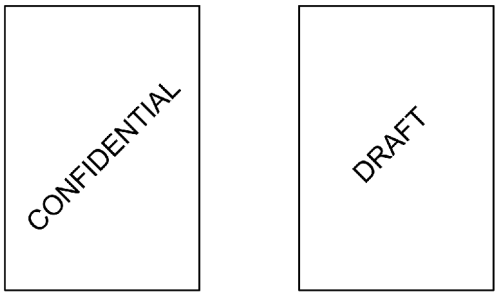
Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

Important

- Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL
- COPY
- DRAFT
- FILE COPY
- FINAL
- PRELIMINARY
- PROOF
- TOP SECRET

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

Note

- Watermarks are supported in Windows.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

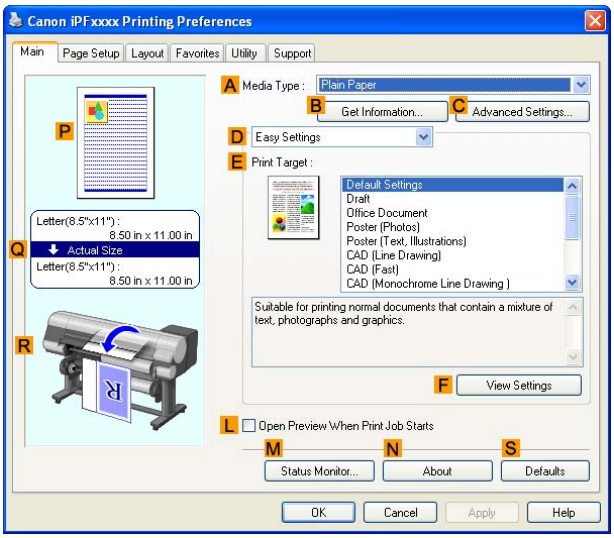
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) (→P.354)

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a “FILE COPY” watermark.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5×23.4 in.])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in.])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

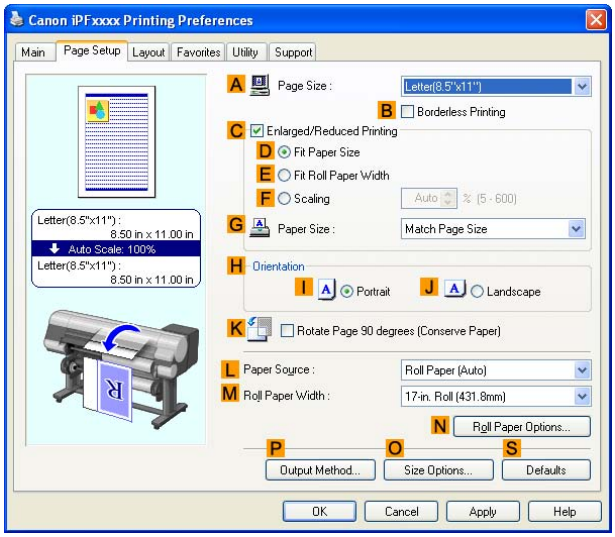


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

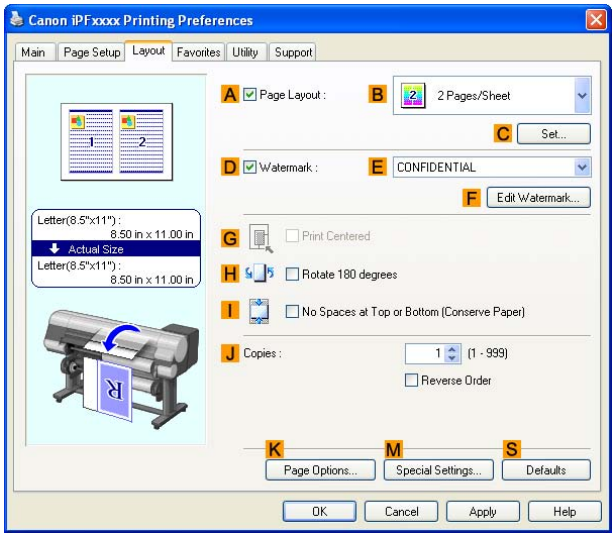
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the D **Watermark** check box.
12. Click **FILE COPY** in the E **Watermarks** list.

Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click F **Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

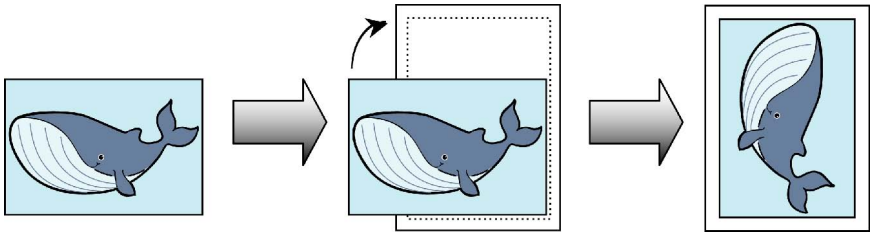
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

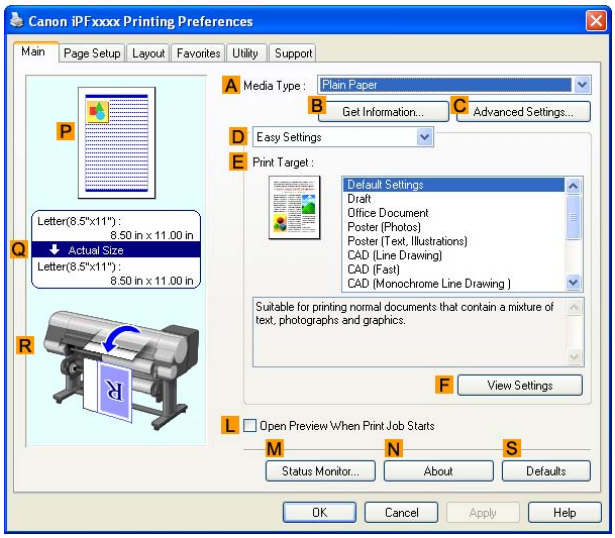
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) (→P.357)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) (→P.359)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

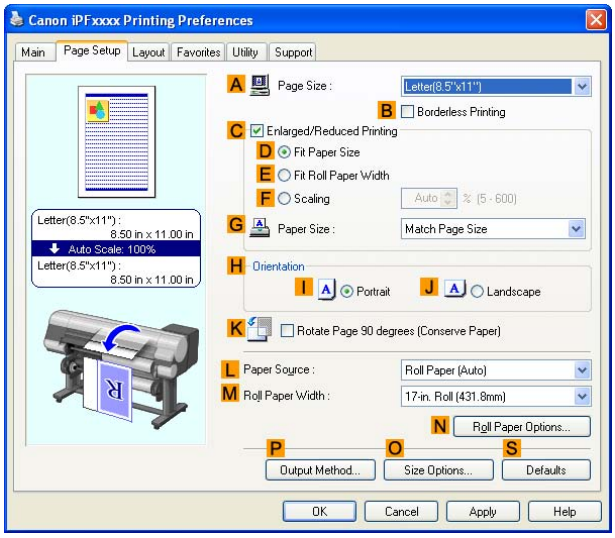
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in]) /Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in.])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
8. In H **Orientation**, click J **Landscape**.
9. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
10. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

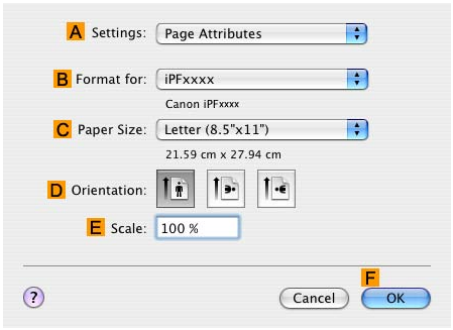
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

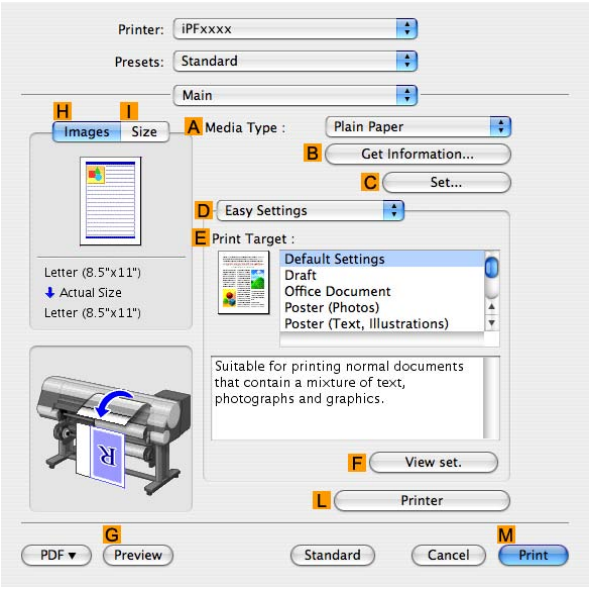
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm [8.3×11.7 in])/Letter
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in.])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

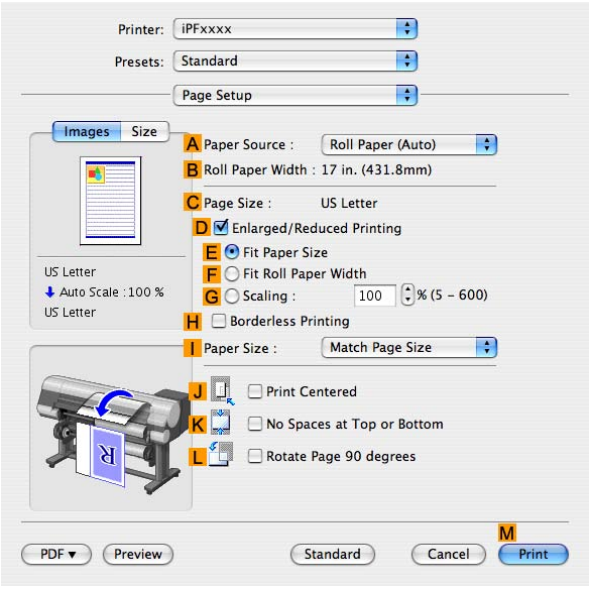


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

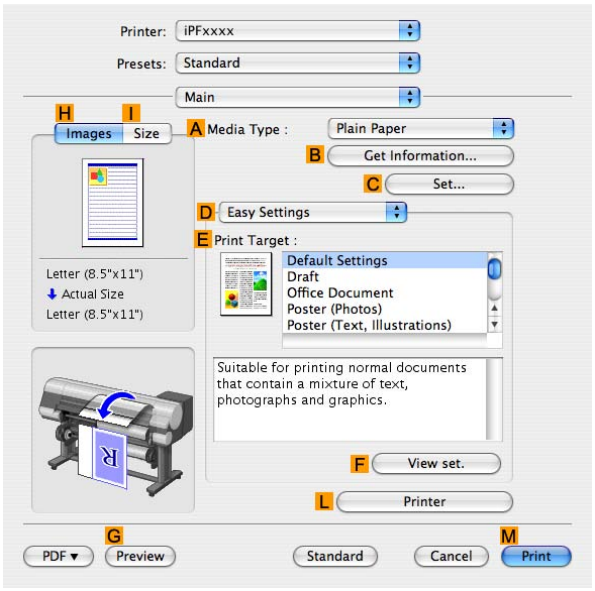


11. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

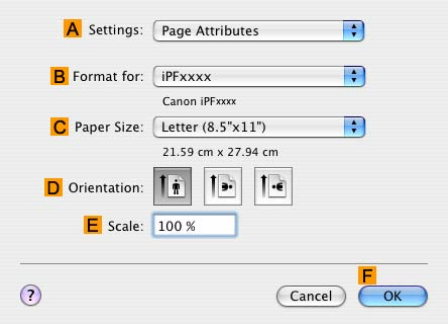
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as **Favorites** to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.

Note

- You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) (→P.363)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS X) (→P.365)

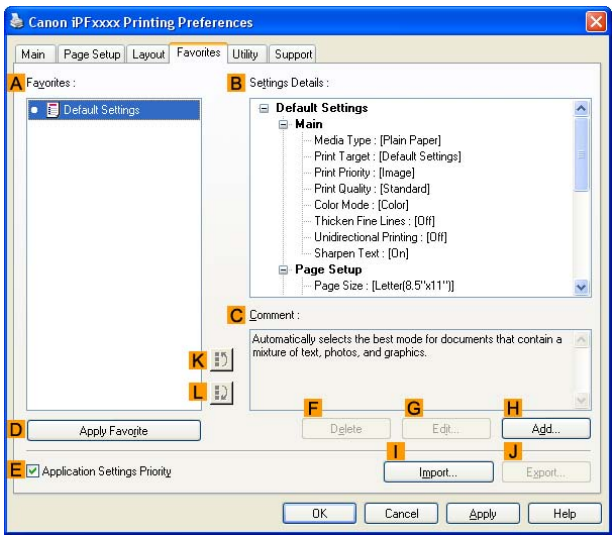
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click H **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in A **Favorites**.

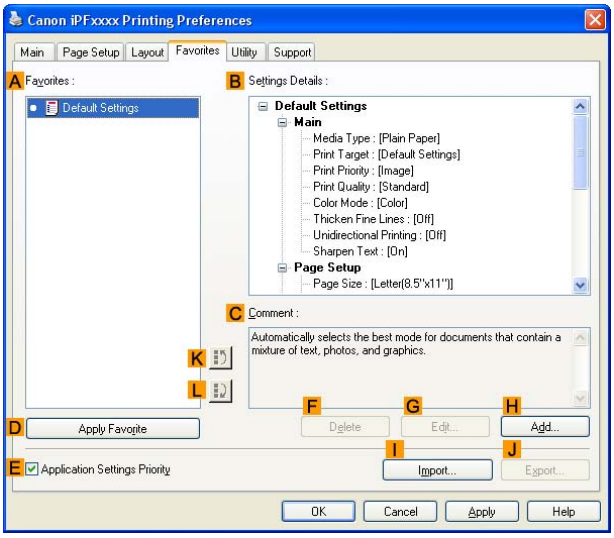
Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click J **Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the A **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click I **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click D **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.

Note

- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.
For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) (→P.367)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.368)

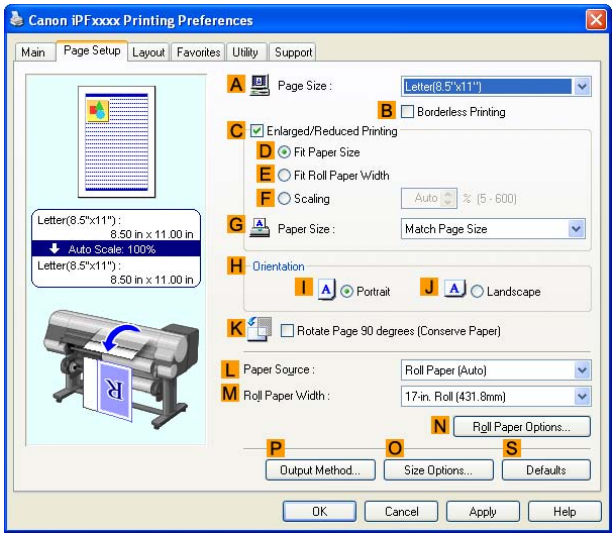
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.

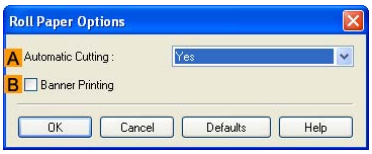
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4. In the L **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, choose from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.
5. Click N **Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the A **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.
8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

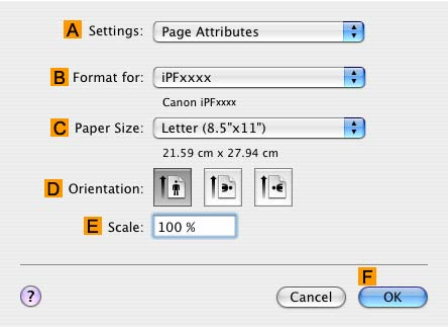
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.

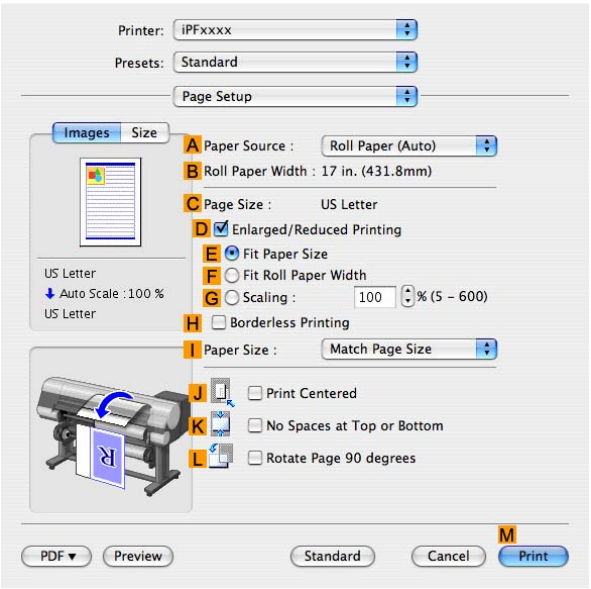
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

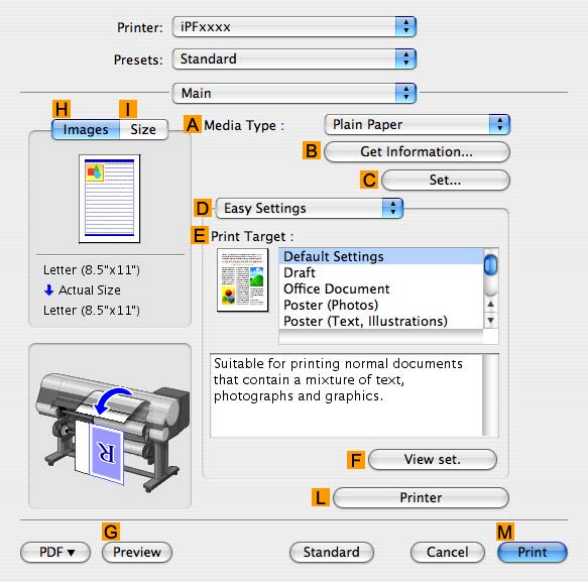


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

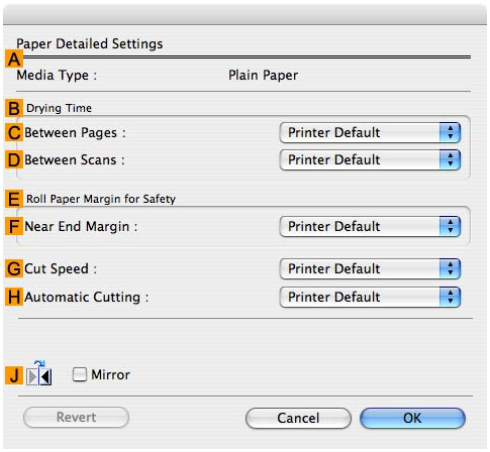


7. In the A **Paper Source** list, click to select the feed method set for the specified paper. In this case, select from **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2**.

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click C **Set** to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the H **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.421)

Windows Software

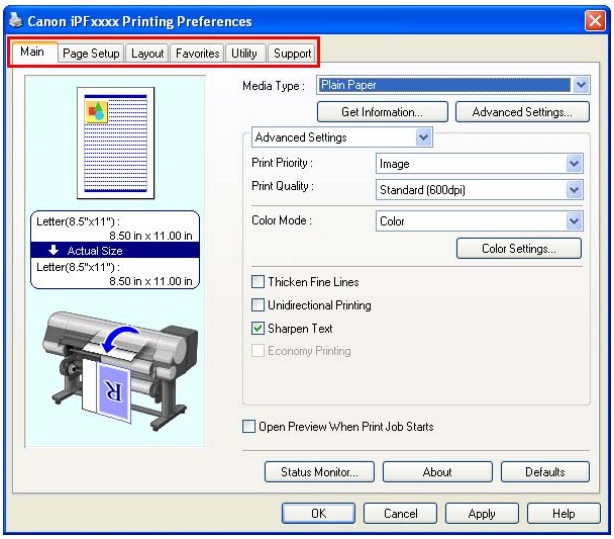
Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) (→P.381)
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) (→P.383)

For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.



- Main Sheet (Windows) (→P.385)

  You can specify the type of paper, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.389)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.390)
  - Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) (→P.391)
  - Matching Sheet (Windows) (→P.393)
  - Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) (→P.395)
- Page Setup Sheet (Windows) (→P.397)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and feed source, and automatic cutting.

  - Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.399)
- Layout Sheet (Windows) (→P.400)

  You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

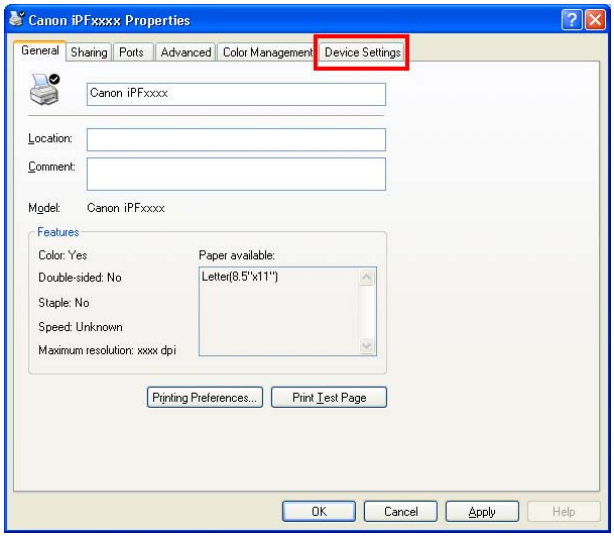
  - Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.402)
  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.403)
- Favorites Sheet (Windows) (→P.404)

  Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved as a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.

- Utility Sheet (Windows) (→P.406)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Support Sheet (Windows) (→P.407)

  You can view support information and the user manual.



- Device Settings Sheet (Windows) (→P.408)

  You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the printer driver version.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout .

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

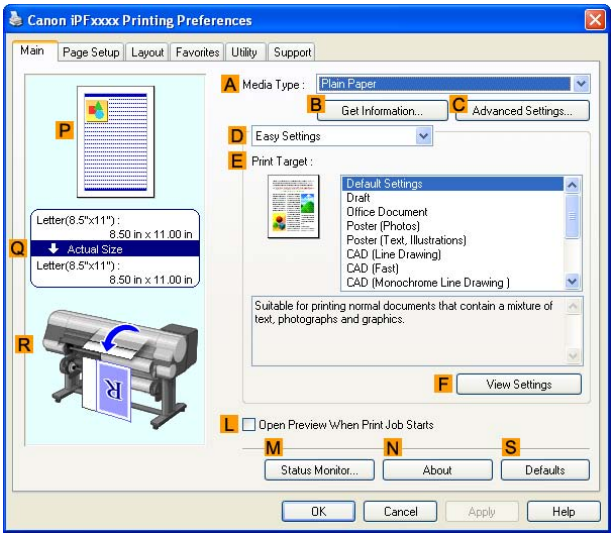
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

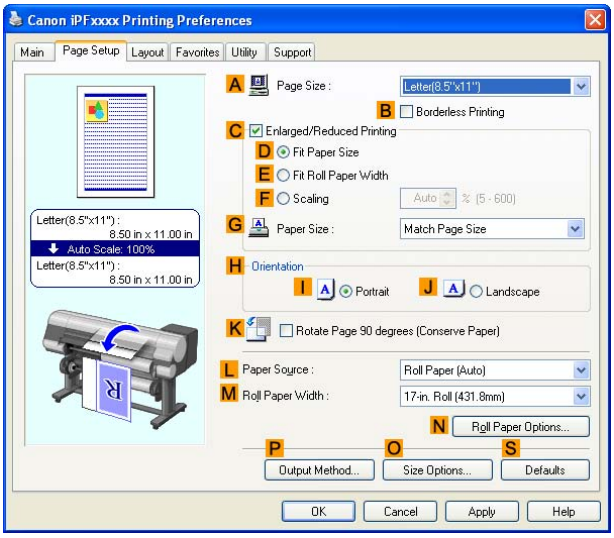
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the L **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

8. If you have selected **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2** in L **Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in M **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.370)

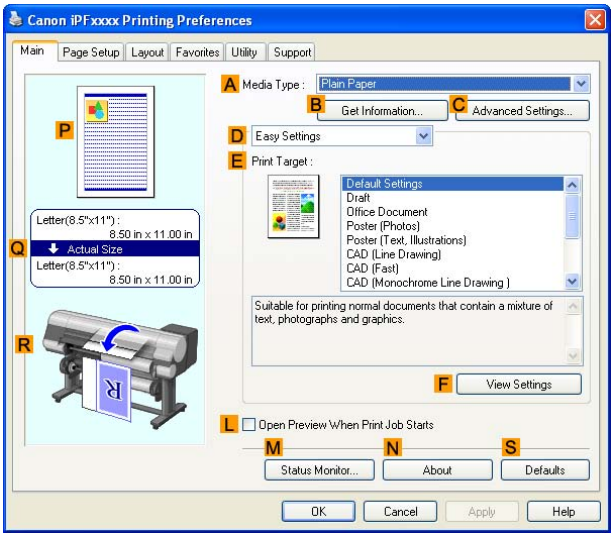
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.374)
- Checking a print preview (→P.375)

Checking a preview of the settings

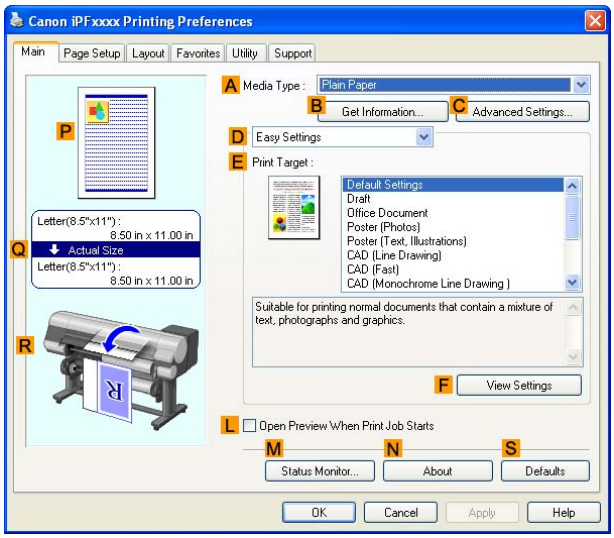
A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, layout, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are displayed.
Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.



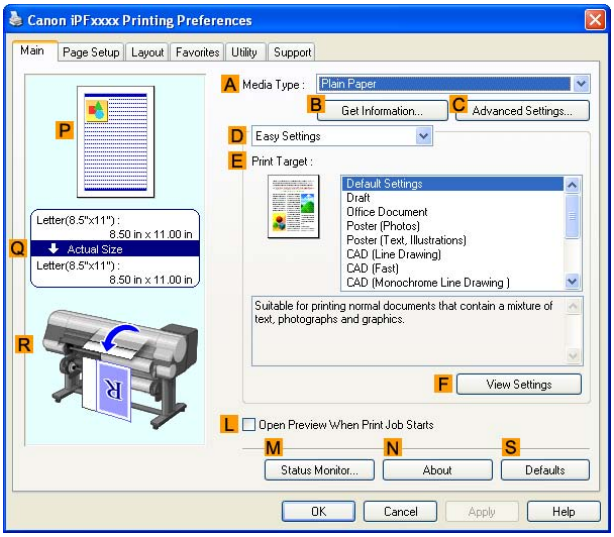
Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
When you activate this feature, PageComposer is launched before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing”. (→P.347)

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)

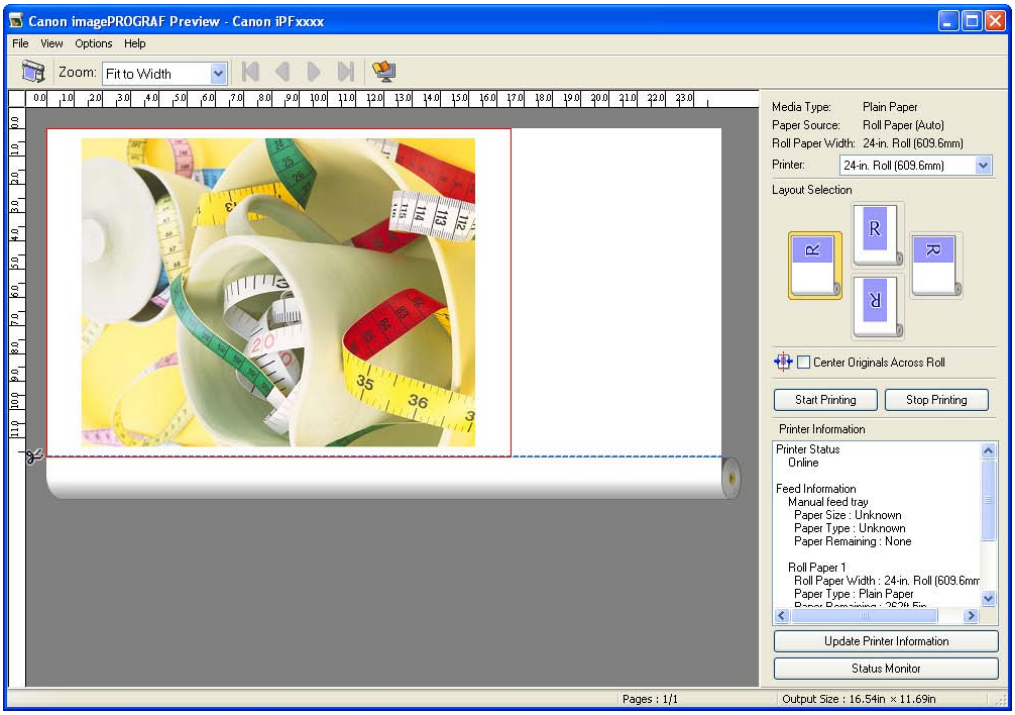
This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the L **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, either the **imagePROGRAF Preview** or PageComposer window will be displayed, depending on your environment.

imagePROGRAF Preview



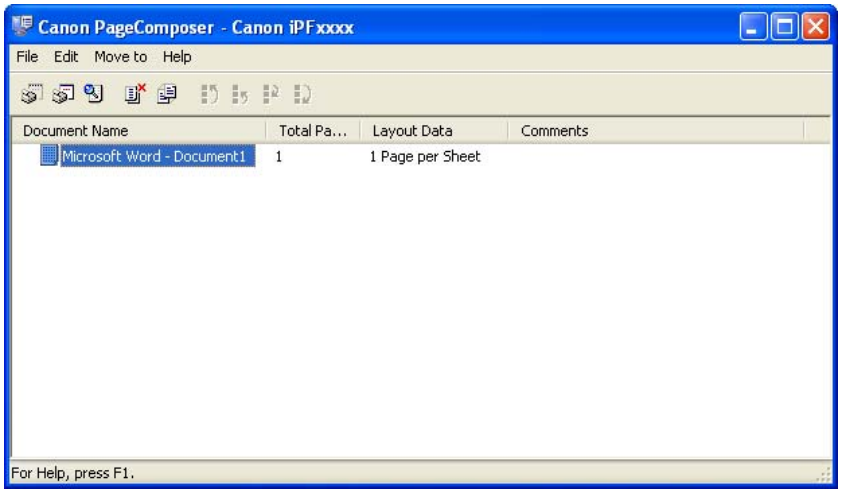
1. The main **imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.
2. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.
3. To print, click **Start Printing** in the **File** menu.

Note

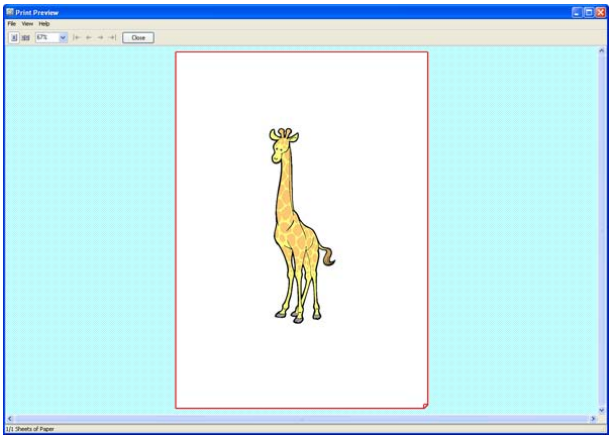
- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see Preview .

PageComposer

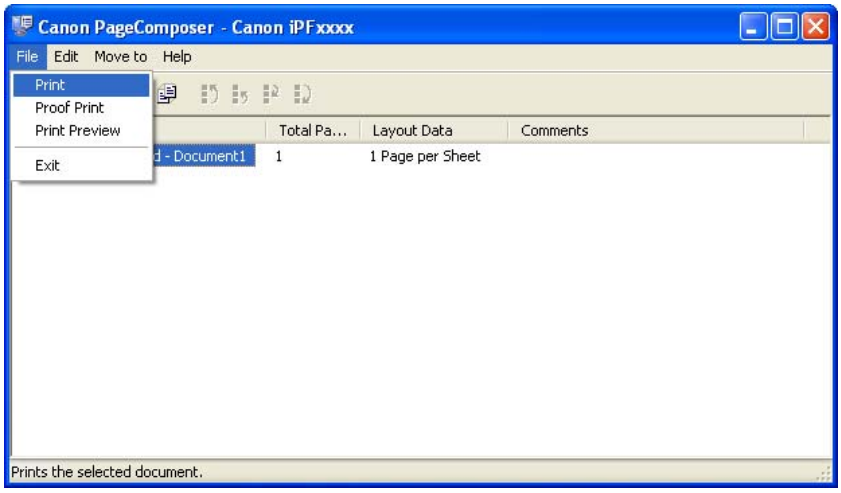
1. The PageComposer window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



2. In the PageComposer editing window, select the document to print and open the **Print Preview** window.



3. After confirming that the layout is just as you expected, close the **Print Preview** window.
4. In the PageComposer editing window, make sure the document to print is selected. Choose **Print** in the **File** menu.



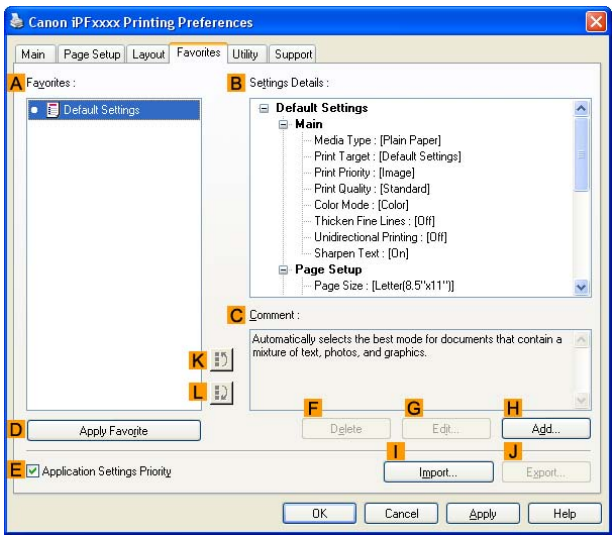
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click H **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in A **Favorites**.

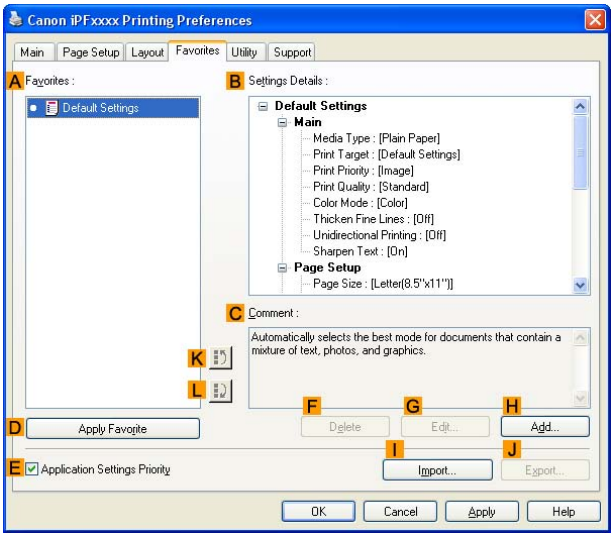
Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click J **Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the A **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click I **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click D **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.374)

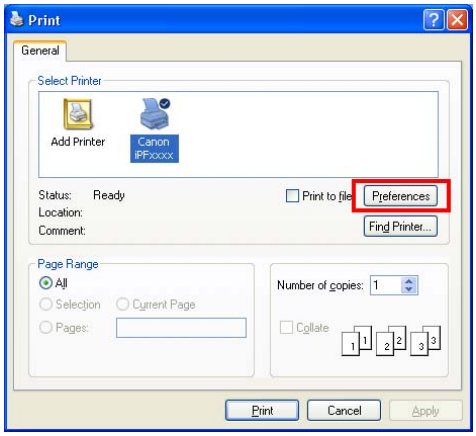
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

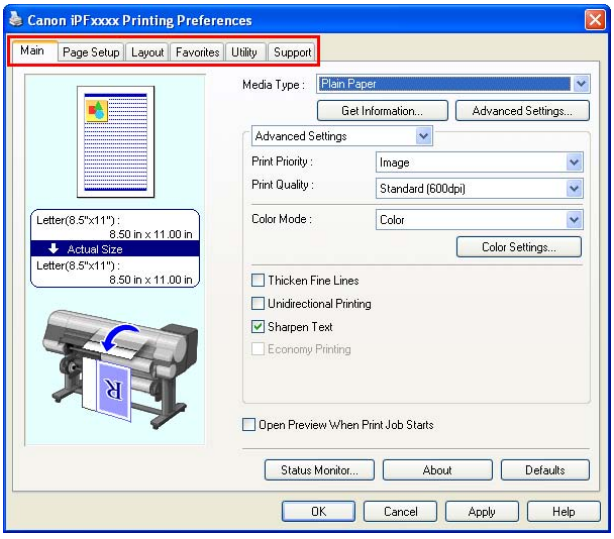
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

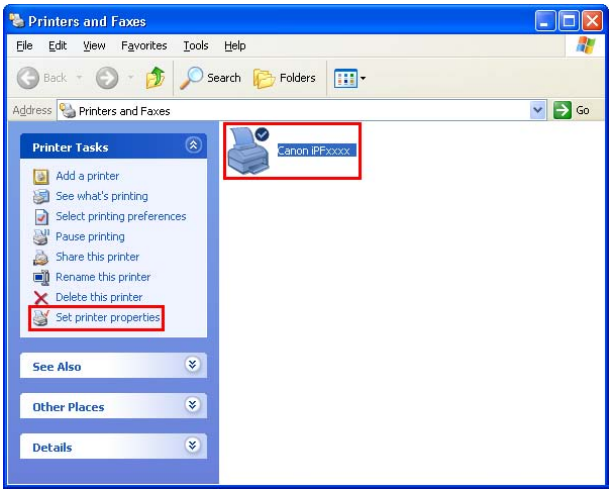
- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

Important

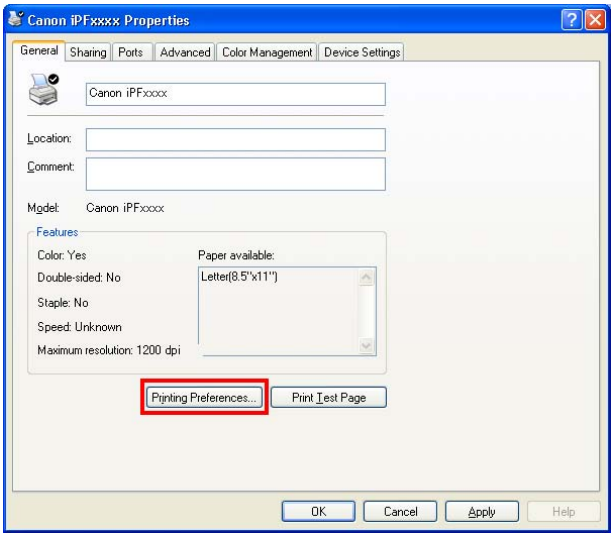
- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.383)

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



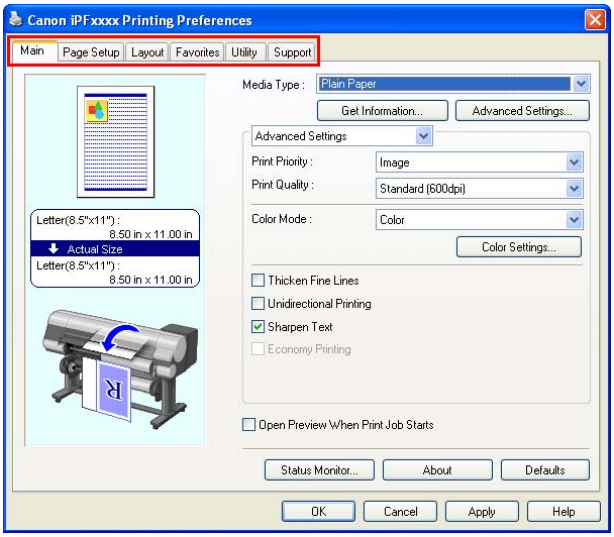
3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.408)

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.381)

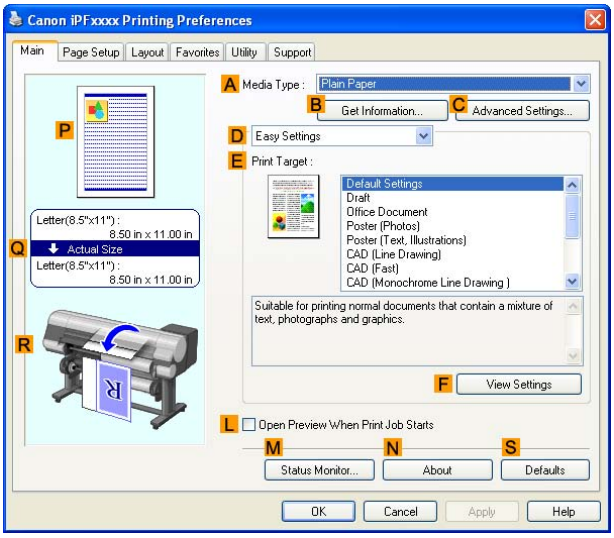
Main Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the particular printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

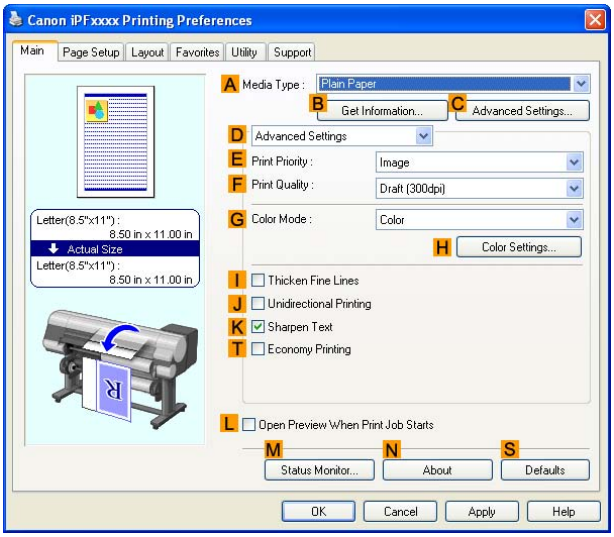
Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the type of paper. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, which shows the types and sizes of paper specified on the printer for each feed source. When you select a feed source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the feed source, type of paper, and roll width.
	C Advanced Settings	Click to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the type of paper.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (→P.161) Printing Line Drawings and Text (→P.174) Printing Office Documents (→P.191) Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.
	F View Settings	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to check on-screen previews of documents before printing. Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (→P.347)

Setting Item	Description
M Status Monitor	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.
N About	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S Defaults	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using Advanced Settings

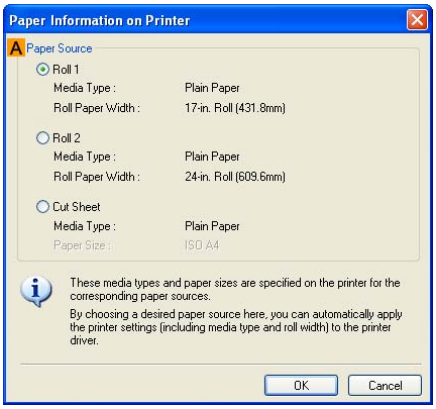


Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the type of paper. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, which shows the types and sizes of paper specified on the printer for each feed source. When you select a feed source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the feed source, type of paper, and roll width.
	C Advanced Settings	Click to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the type of paper.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211)
G Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211) Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Color Mode** options may not be available.
	H Color Settings	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.201)

Setting Item	Description
I **Thicken Fine Lines**	Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
J **Unidirectional Printing**	Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K **Sharpen Text**	Activate this option to print text more sharply.
T **Economy Printing**	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.
L **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**	Activate this option to check on-screen previews of documents before printing. Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (→P.347)
M **Status Monitor**	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.
N **About**	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the paper source and media type.



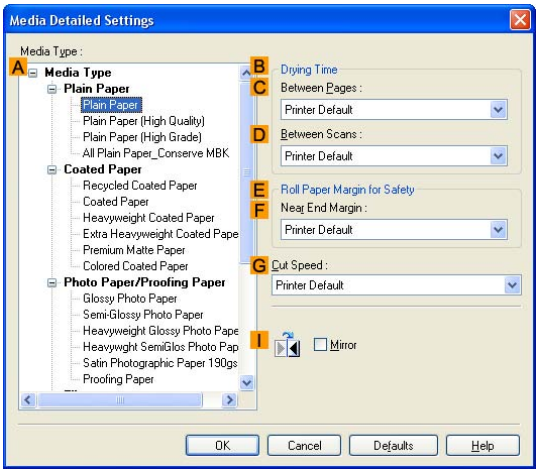
Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.385)

Setting Item	Description
A **Paper Source**	Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the **Paper Source** and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



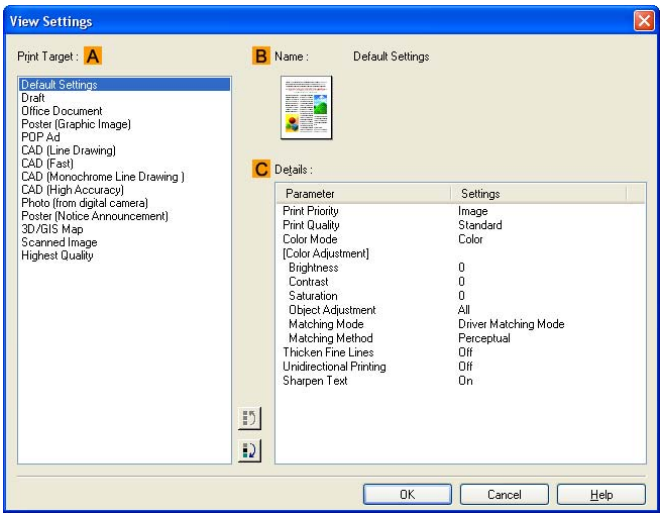
Note

- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Settings** by **Media Type**. (→P.385)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.137)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



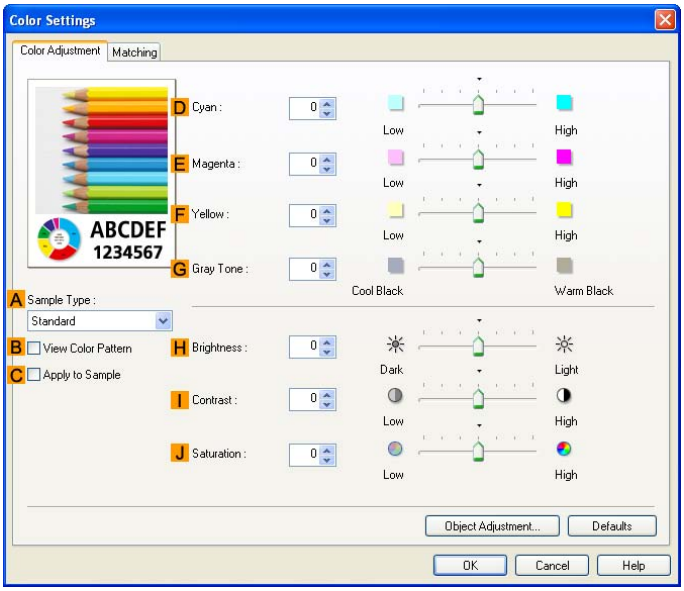
Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.385)

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target**.

Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows)

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.385)

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample Type**	Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.
B **View Color Pattern**	Clicking to select this check box will display the color pattern.
C **Apply to Sample**	Clicking to select this check box will apply the revised settings to the sample image.
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue) or **Warm Black** (tinged with red).
H **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

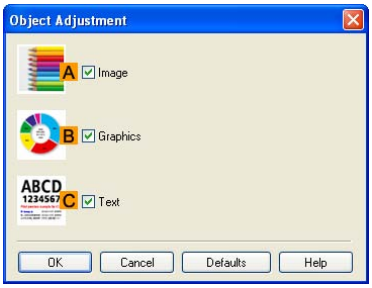
Setting Item	Description
K **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

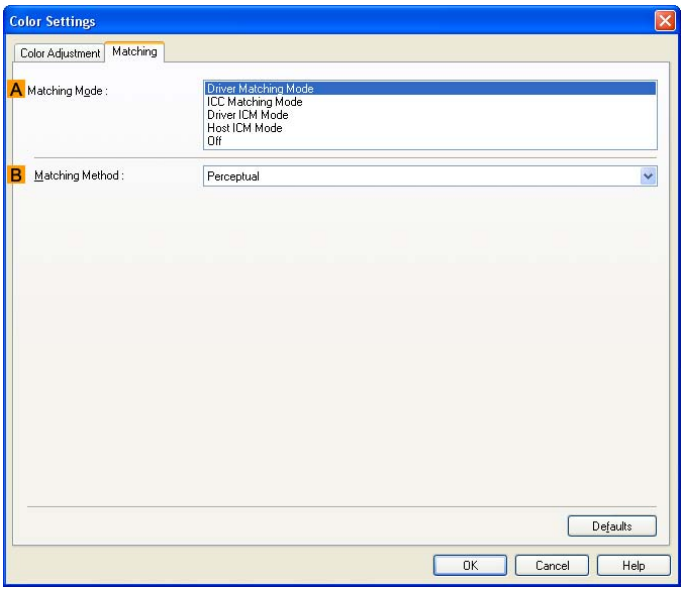
Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching Sheet (Windows)

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.385)

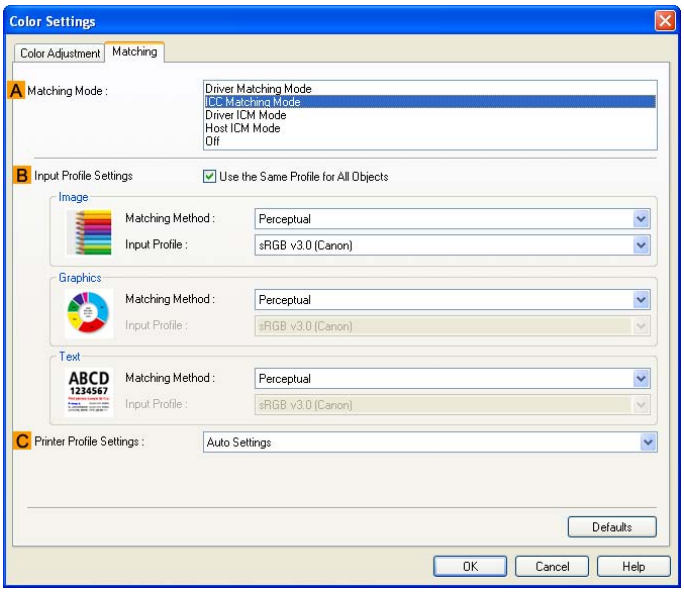
Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode**, depending on your color matching system. If you prefer not to use the printer driver for color matching, select **No**.
B **Matching Method**	Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching**.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host ICM Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** on the **Matching Mode** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.385)

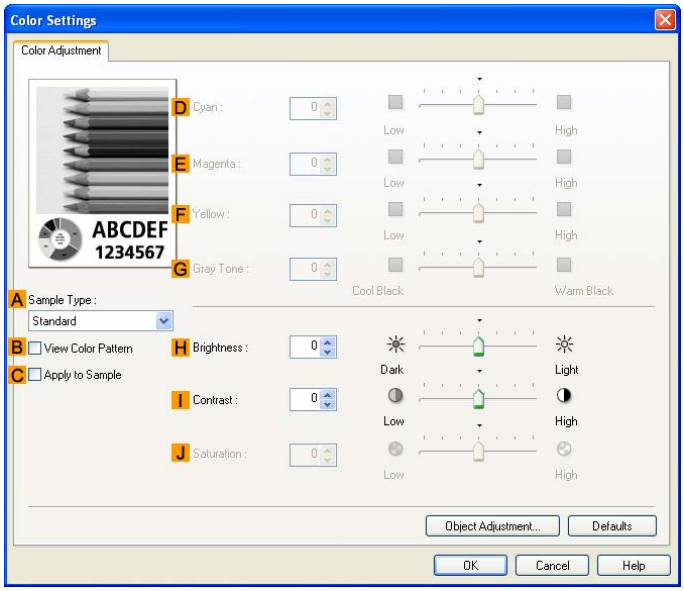
Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Input Profile Settings**	You can select **Image**, **Graphics**, or **Text**. You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile**. Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode**. To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text**, select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**. To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text**, clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.
C **Printer Profile Settings**	Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings**.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.385)

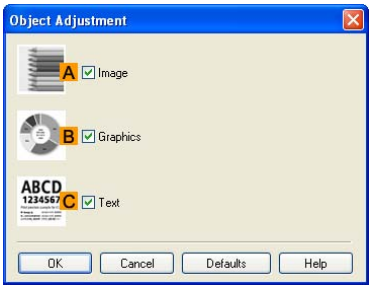
Setting Item	Description
A **Sample Type**	Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.
B **View Color Pattern**	Clicking to select this check box will display the color pattern.
C **Apply to Sample**	Clicking to select this check box will apply the revised settings to the sample image.
D **Cyan**	Not available.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Not available.
H **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
J **Saturation**	Not available.
K **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



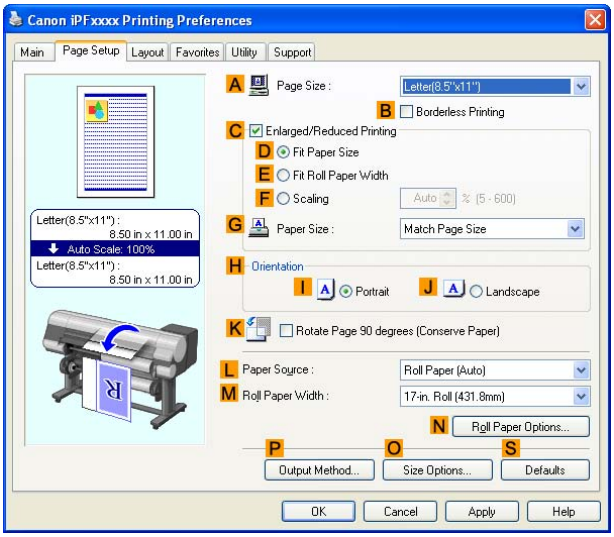
Note

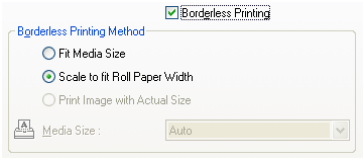
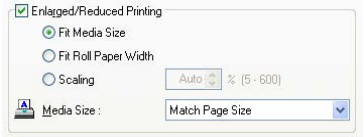
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Page Setup Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

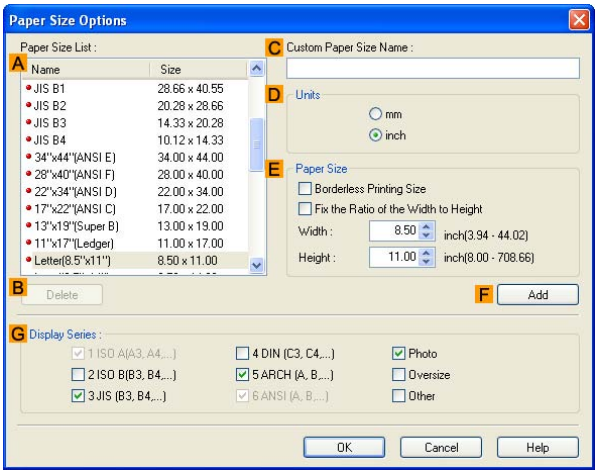


Setting Item		Description
A Page Size		Select the page size as specified in the source application. For details on available page sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.109)
B Borderless Printing 		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2** is selected in the **L Paper Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.265) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.272) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.258)
	D Fit Paper Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Print Image with Actual Size	Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either the length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.
	G Paper Size Available when **Fit Paper Size** is selected.	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.109) Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing 		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.228) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.234) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.240)
	D Fit Paper Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
	G Paper Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.109)

Setting Item	Description
H **Orientation**	Choose the printing orientation. Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (→P.356)
K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**	Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.335)
L **Paper Source**	Choose the feed source, as desired. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet.
M **Roll Paper Width**	Choose the roll width. For details on available roll widths, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.109)
N **Roll Paper Options**	Complete optional roll paper settings. Click to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. Under A **Automatic Cutting**, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline**. Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (→P.366) Select B **Banner Printing** when printing multiple pages continuously. Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (→P.310)
P **Output Method**	Click to display the **Output Method** dialog box, which enables you to complete the **Output Method** and **Name of data to be saved** settings.
O **Paper Size Options**	Click to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.
S **Defaults**	Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)

In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own **Custom Paper Size**. The sizes you define are listed with standard paper sizes for selection later as needed.



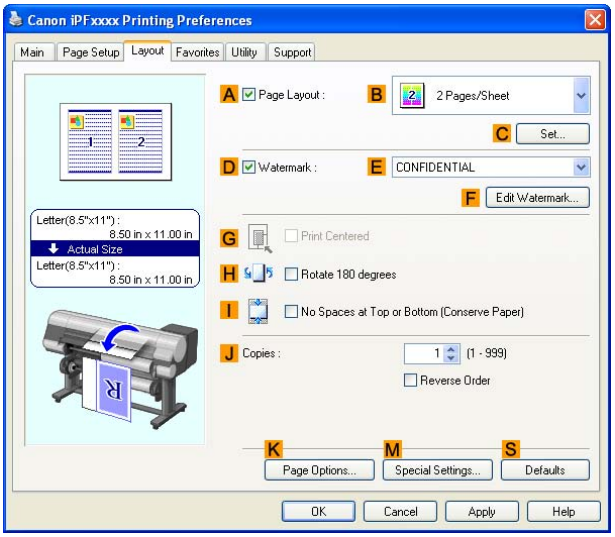
Note

- To display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Paper Size Options**. (→P.397)

Setting Item	Description
A Paper Size List	Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.
B Delete	Custom paper sizes created by users can be deleted from the **Paper Size List**, as needed. However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations. • If a standard paper size of the printer driver is selected. • If an oversized paper size is selected. • If a paper size in a red box is selected.
C Custom Paper Size Name	You can name **Custom Paper Size** as desired.
D Units	Specify the desired unit of measure for the **Custom Paper Size** height and width.
E Paper Size	Specify the desired **Width** and **Height**. You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size**. To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**.
F Add	Enables you to register the custom paper size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom paper size.
G Display Series	You can limit the number of options shown in **Page Size**, **Paper Size**, and **Paper Size List**.

Layout Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Layout** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

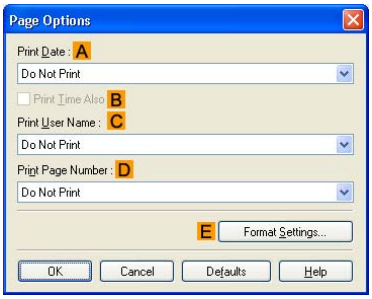


Setting Item		Description
A Page Layout		Activate this setting to select a particular page layout. Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.315) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.321) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.304) Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (→P.412)
	C Set	Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout**. In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings. • **Page Layout Printing** • **Pages to Print** • **Free Layout Settings**
D Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, **E Watermarks** and **F Edit Watermark**. Printing With Watermarks (→P.353)
	E Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	F Edit Watermark	Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
G Print Centered		Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.324) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.330)
H Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.
I No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.341)
J Copies		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
	Reverse Order	Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.

Setting Item	Description
K **Page Options**	Click to display the **Page Options** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.
M **Special Settings**	If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

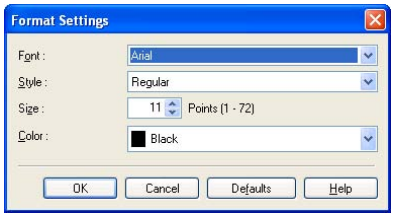
Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Page Options** dialog box offers the following settings.



Note

- To display the **Page Options** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Page Options**. (→P.400)

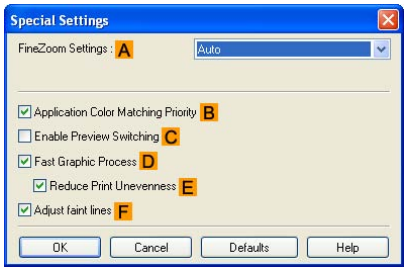
Setting Item	Description
A **Print Date**	Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select B **Print Time Also**.
C **Print User Name**	Select where the user name is printed, as desired.
D **Print Page Number**	Select where the page number is printed, as desired.
E **Format Settings**	Click to display the **Format Settings** dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings. 

Note

- If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.
- When you print multiple pages per sheet using **Page Layout Printing** or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



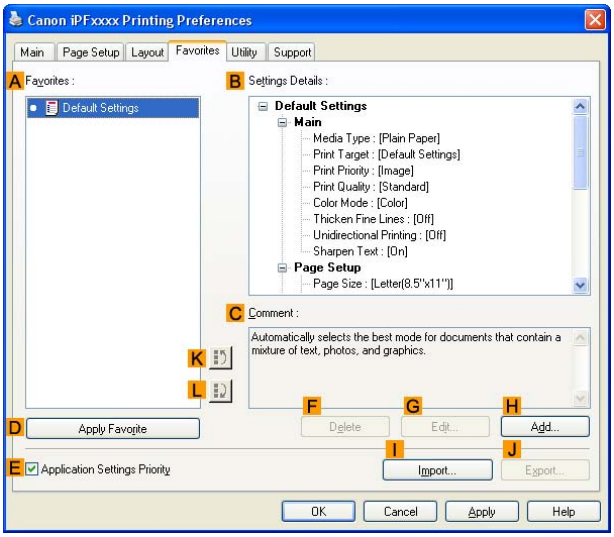
Note

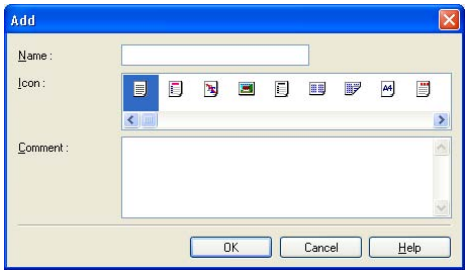
- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**. (→P.400)

Setting Item	Description
A **FineZoom Settings**	This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose **Auto**. If documents are not printed correctly on large-format paper, it may help to select **Yes**, and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select **No**.
B **Application Color Matching Priority**	You can give applications priority in color management.
C **Enable Preview Switching**	Selecting this option will start PageComposer if you print when **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** is selected on the **Main** sheet.
D **Fast Graphic Process**	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.
E **Reduce Print Unevenness**	If you are concerned about uneven colors, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer for some images.
F **Adjust faint lines**	If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, clearing this option may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Favorites Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

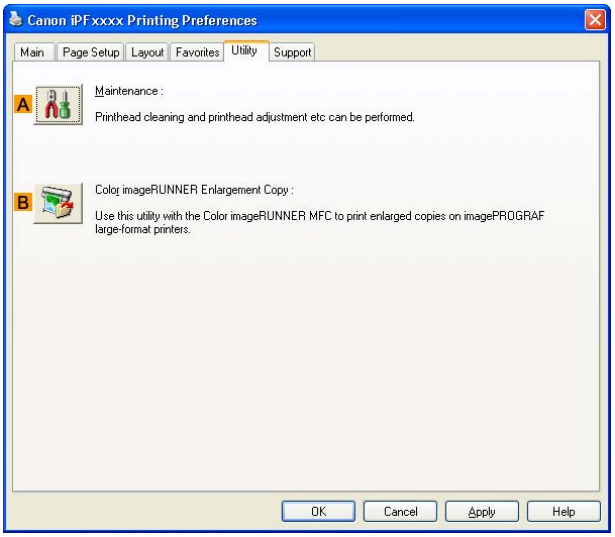


Setting Item	Description
A Favorites	Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites. Using Favorites (→P.362)
B Settings Details	Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.
C Comment	Displays notes registered in the favorite.
D Apply Favorite	Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.
E Application Settings Priority	Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites**, when clicking **D Apply Favorite**. For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.
F Delete	Click to delete the selected favorite from the **A Favorites** list.
G Edit	Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** list.
H Add	Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite. 
I Import	Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.
J Export	Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

Setting Item	Description
K **Up**	Click to move the selected favorite up in the A **Favorites** list.
L **Down**	Click to move the selected favorite down in the A **Favorites** list.

Utility Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.

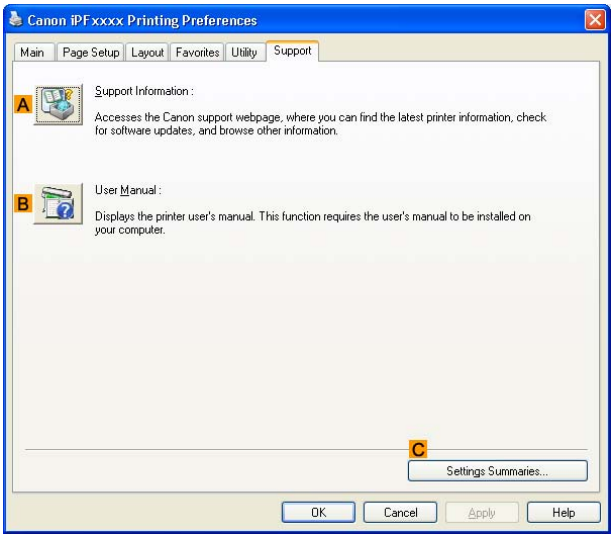


Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Maintenance**	Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**	Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (*1) (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders. Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.196)

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Support Sheet (Windows)

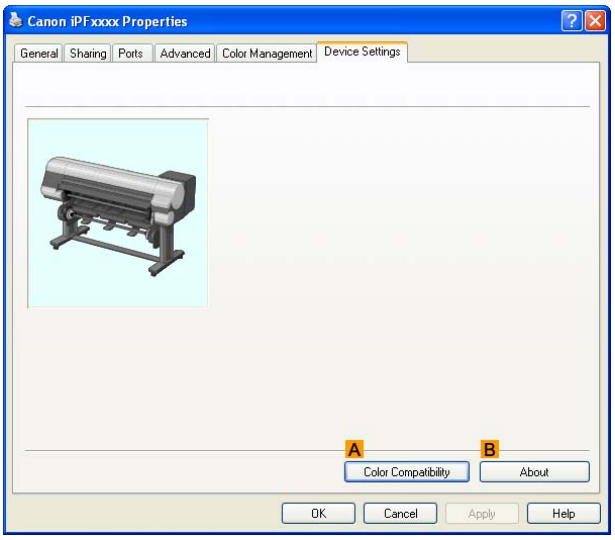
On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.

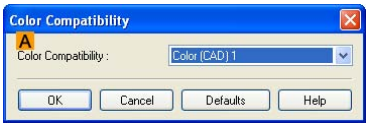


Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings Summaries**	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

Device Settings Sheet (Windows)

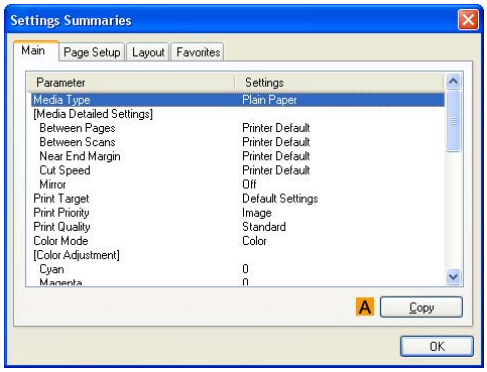
Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.



Setting Item	Description
A **Color Compatibility**	Click to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box, which enables you to adjust colors if you have selected **Color Mode** > **Color (CAD)**. 
B **About**	Displays version information for the printer driver.

Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

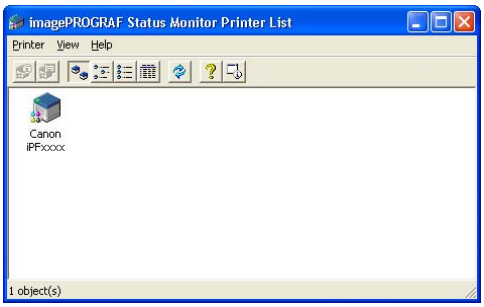


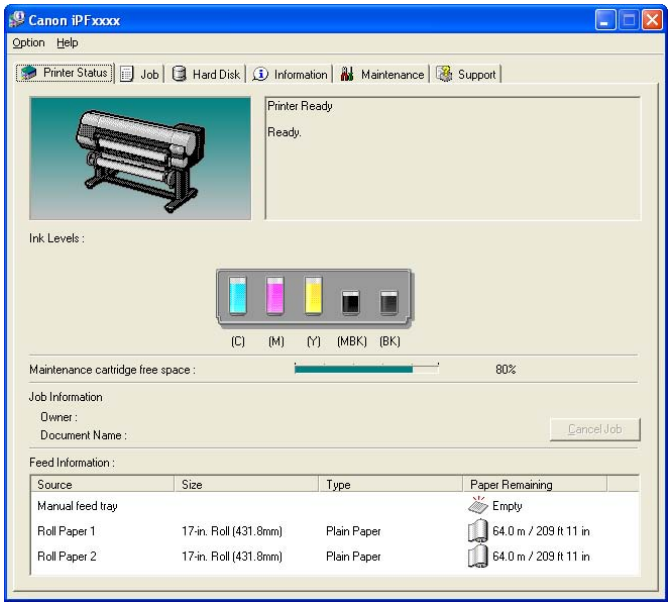
Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Copy**	Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

Status Monitor

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.
Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : “Printer List” shows a list of printers, and “Status Monitor” shows details for each printer.





- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Images of Ink Tanks are shown, with different images for various types of ink. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each paper source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

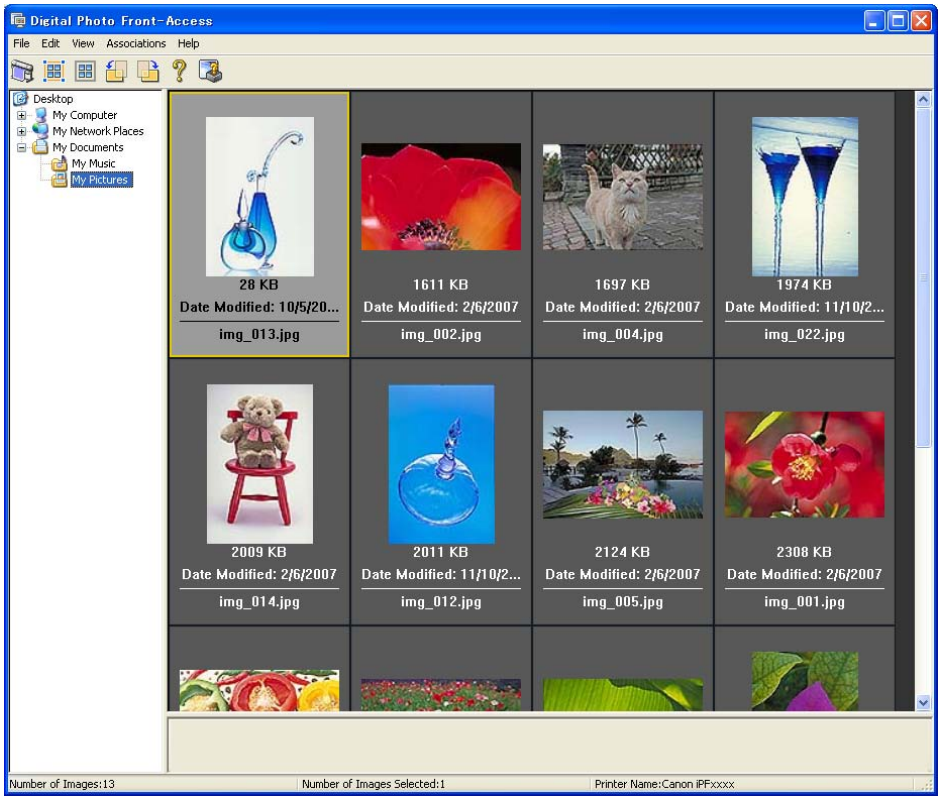
Note

- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.

Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

PosterArtist

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

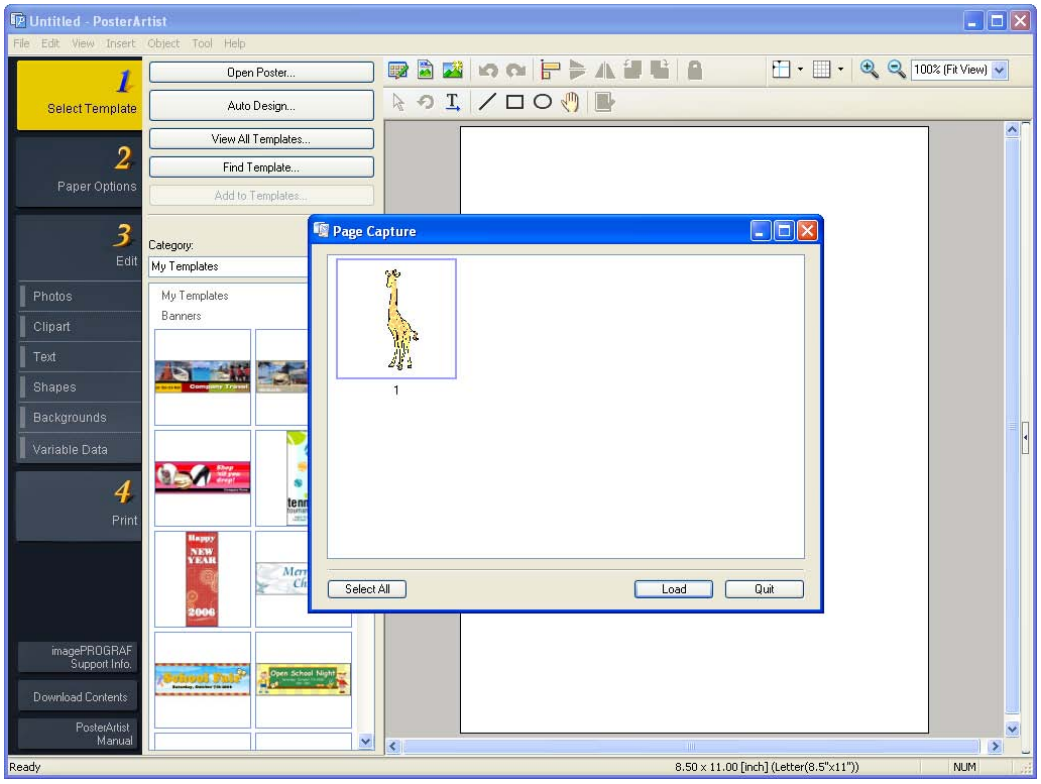
You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

Edit Using PosterArtist

PosterArtist offers a wide range of features, including features to insert source documents in posters and compose an original with them.



Important

- This function is only supported in Windows.

For detailed instructions on editing with PosterArtist, refer to the following topic:

- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) (→P.413)

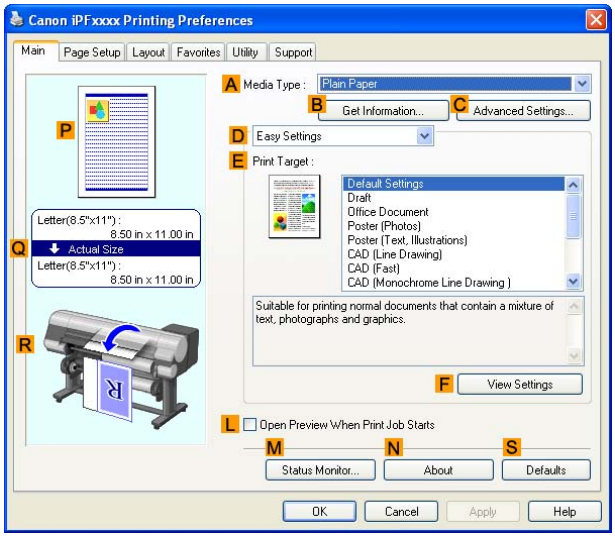
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)

This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

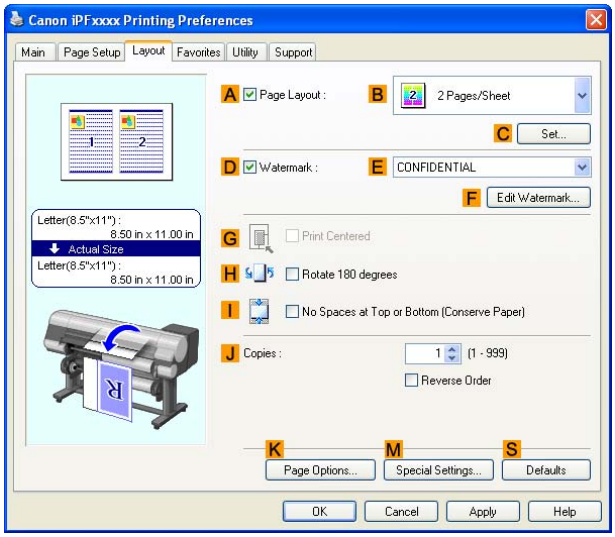
Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.381)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the B **Page Layout** list.
7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)
8. Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.

9. Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

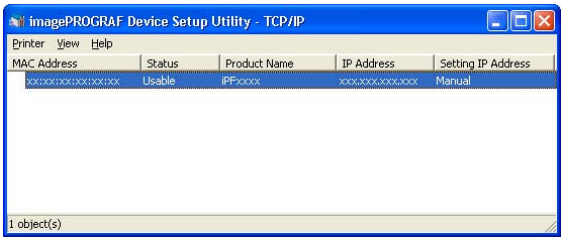
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10. Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.

Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.416)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Product Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

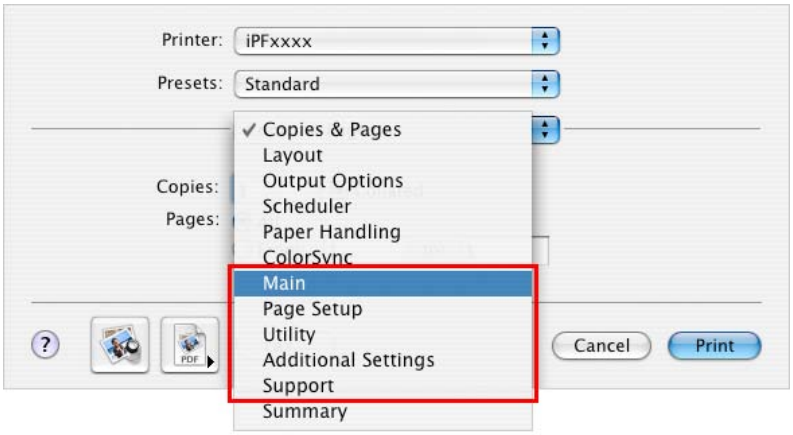
Mac OS X Software

Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) (→P.425)



For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.426)

  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.430)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) (→P.431)
  - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) (→P.432)
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.434)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.435)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.437)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.438)

  You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.439)

  You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see Free Layout .

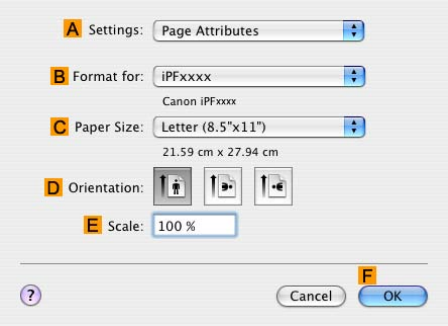
With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see Preview .

With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

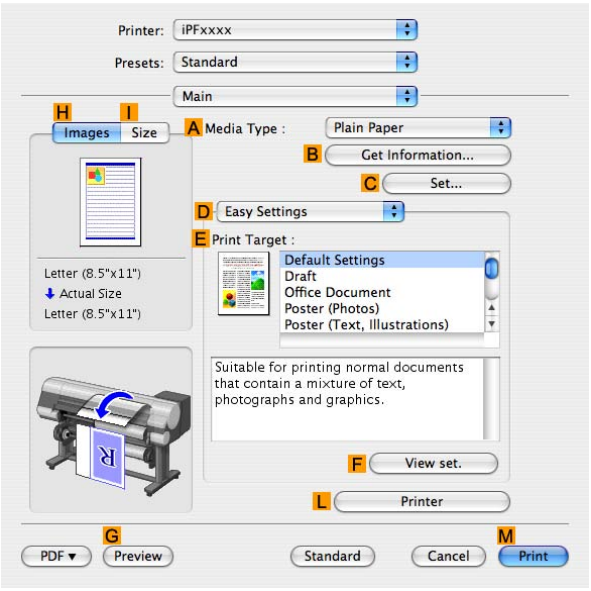
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

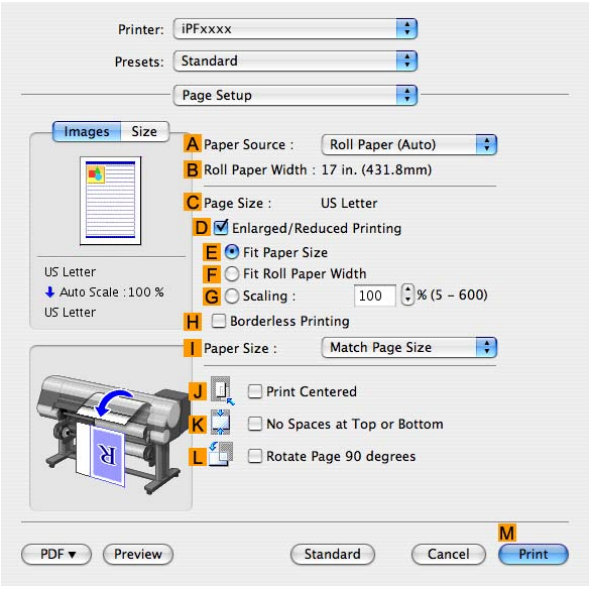


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

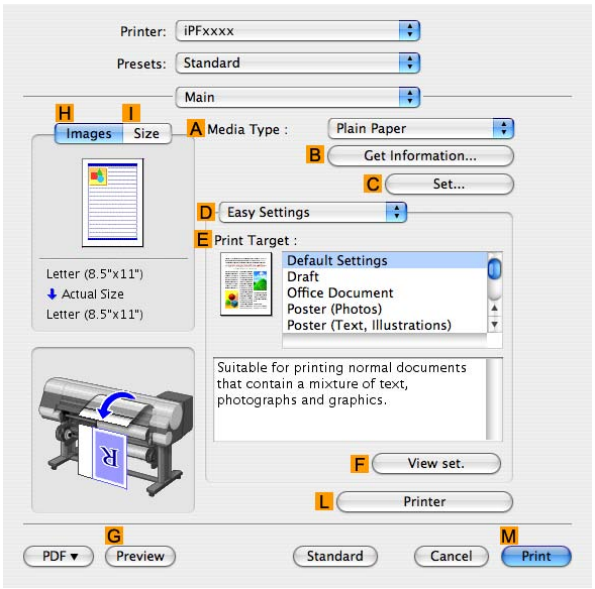
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In the A **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** in A **Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in C **Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2** in A **Paper Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.418)

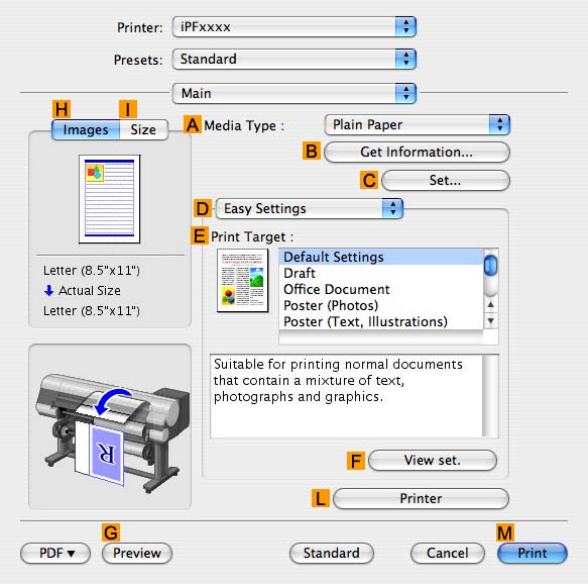
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.421)
- Checking a print preview (→P.422)

Checking a preview of the settings

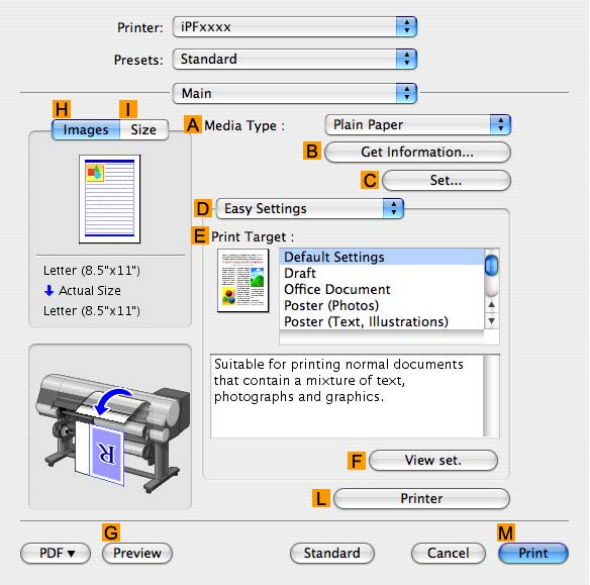
A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the feed source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To check the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.



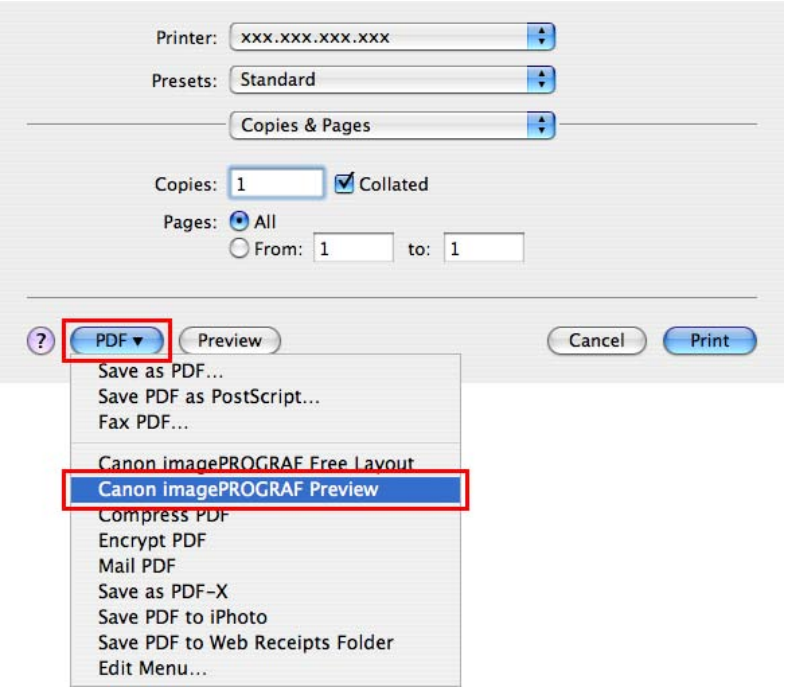
Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing”. (→P.347)

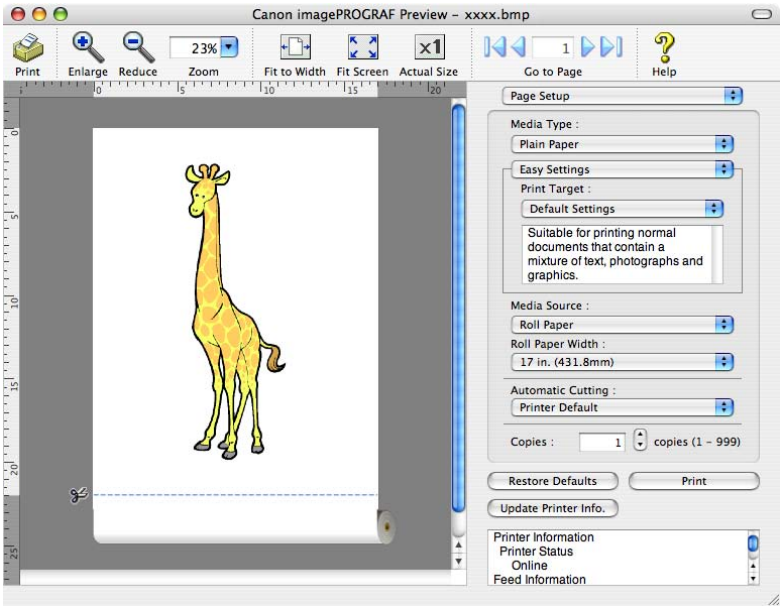
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

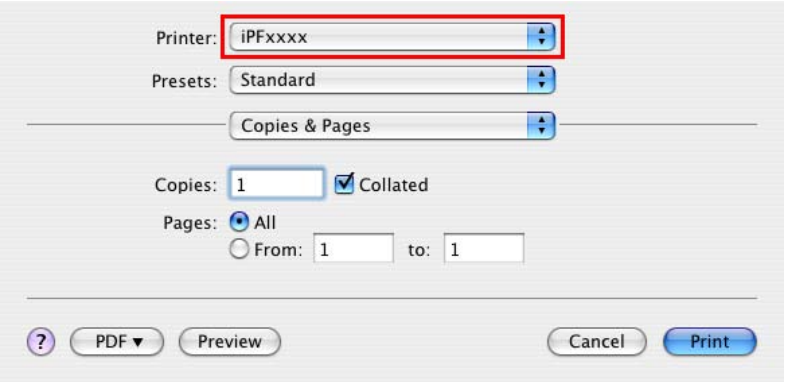
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

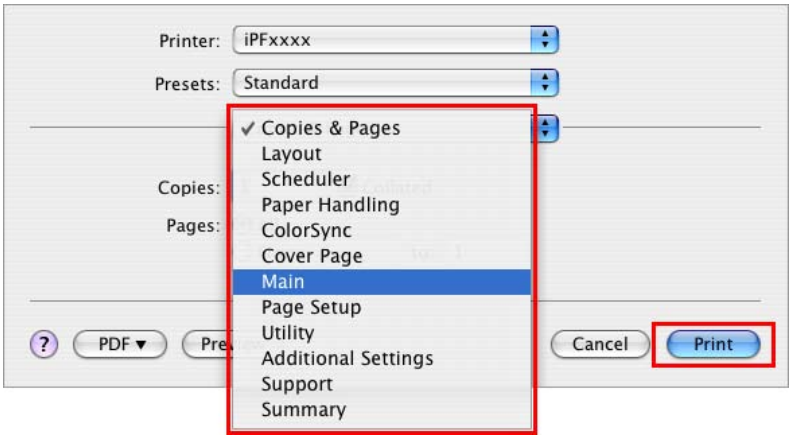
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

   As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



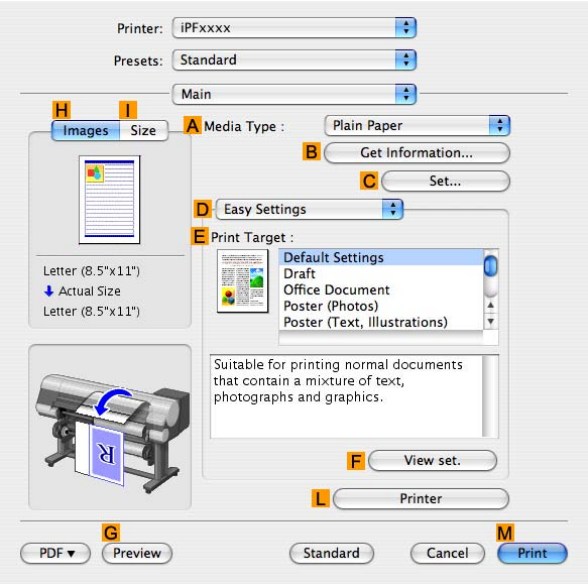
Main Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

Note

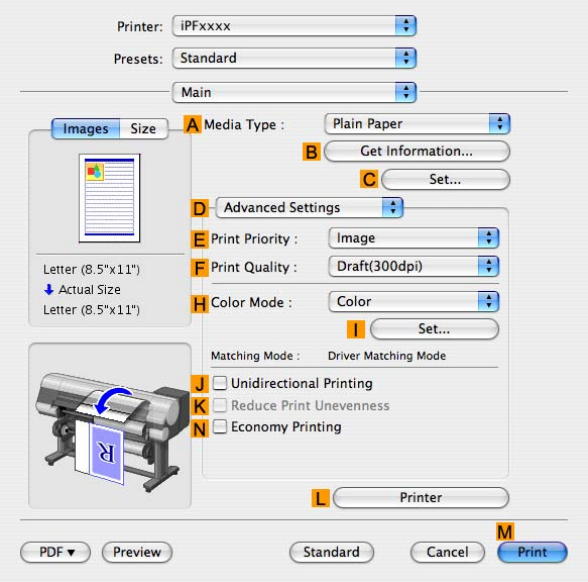
- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings

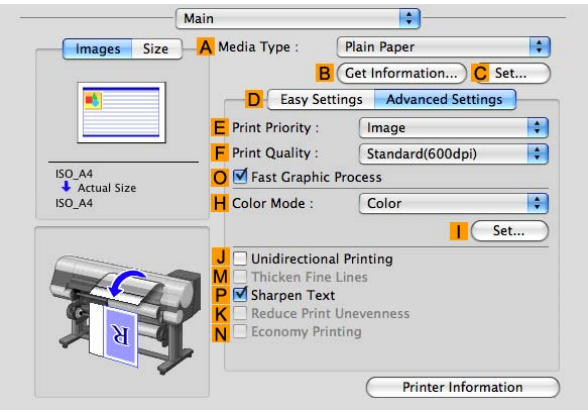


Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the type of paper. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows the types of paper specified on the printer for each feed source. When you select a feed source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.
	C Set	Click to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the type of paper.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (→P.161) Printing Line Drawings and Text (→P.174) Printing Office Documents (→P.191)
	F View set.	Click to display the **View settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.
L Printer		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Configuration using Advanced Settings



Using Mac OS X 10.5

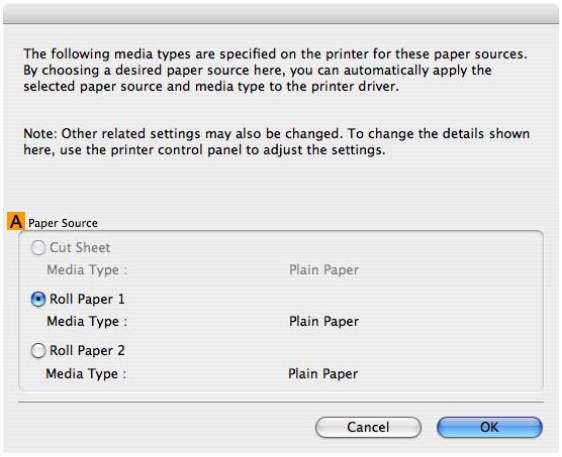


Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the type of paper. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, which shows the types of paper specified on the printer for each feed source. When you select a feed source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.
	C Set	Click to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the type of paper.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211)
H Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211)

Setting Item	Description
N **Input Bit Depth**	Choose the levels of gradation in print data, either **8-bit** or **16-bit**. Optimal results when printing data with rich gradation are possible by choosing **16-bit**. For example, this option is particularly suited to printing images created after specifying 16 bits per channel in Photoshop. (Only supported in Mac OS X 10.5)
O **Fast Graphic Process**	Select this option to print faster than usual, when possible. (Only supported in Mac OS X 10.5)
I **Set**	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.201)
J **Unidirectional Printing**	Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
M **Thicken Fine Lines**	Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly. (Only supported in Mac OS X 10.5)
P **Sharpen Text**	Activate this option to print text more sharply. (Only supported in Mac OS X 10.5)
K **Reduce Print Unevenness**	Choose this option to counteract uneven printing.
N **Economy Printing**	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.
L **Printer**	Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.



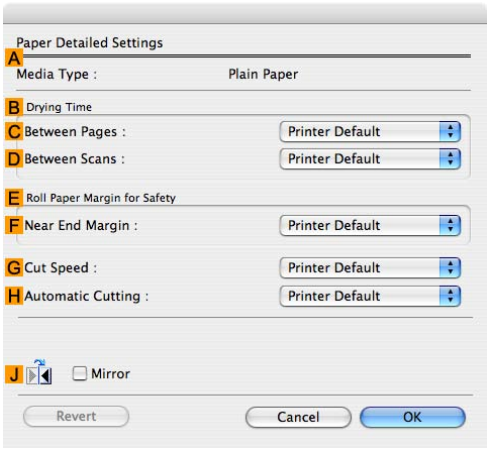
Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.426)

Setting Item	Description
A **Paper Source**	Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



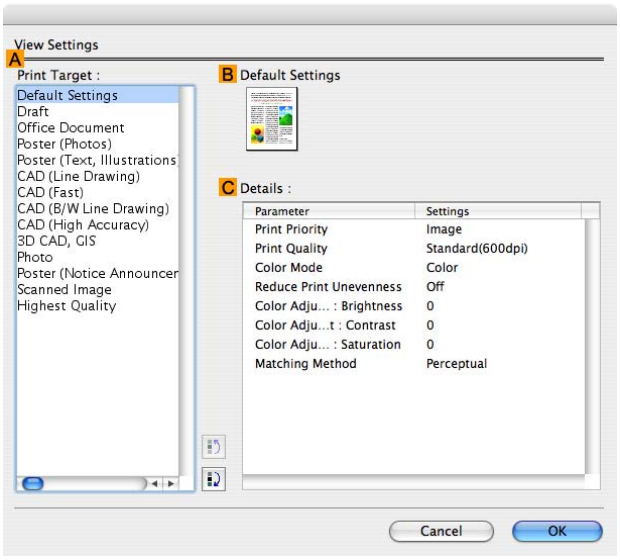
Note

- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Settings** by **Media Type**. (→P.426)

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.137)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Yes**, **No**, or **Print Cut Guideline**.
J Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.426)

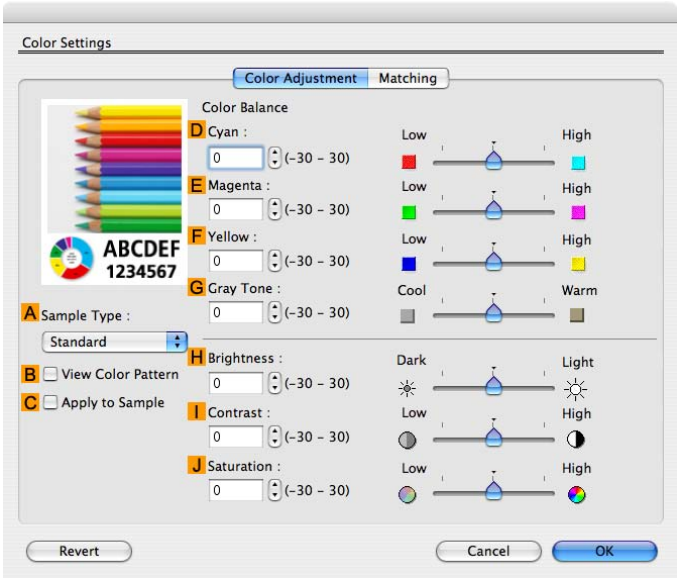
Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.426)

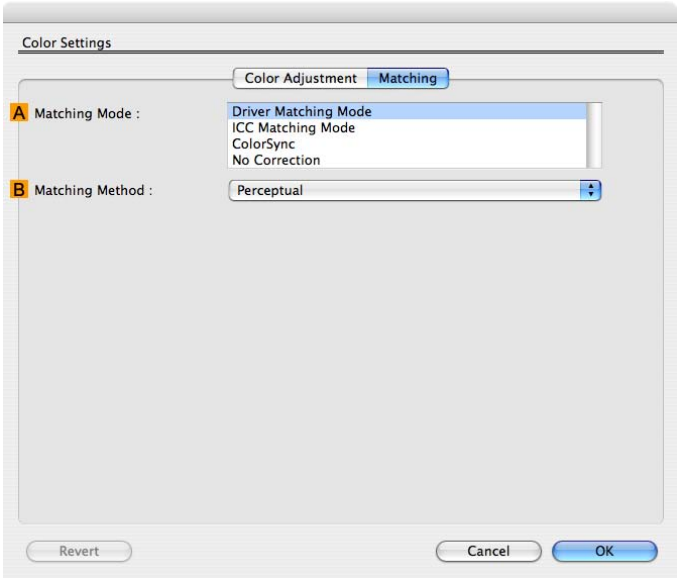
Setting Item	Description
A **Sample Type**	Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.
B **View Color Pattern**	Clicking to select this check box will display the color pattern.
C **Apply to Sample**	Clicking to select this check box will apply the revised settings to the sample image.
D **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue) or **Warm Black** (tinged with red).
H **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**. (→P.426)

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching**.

Note

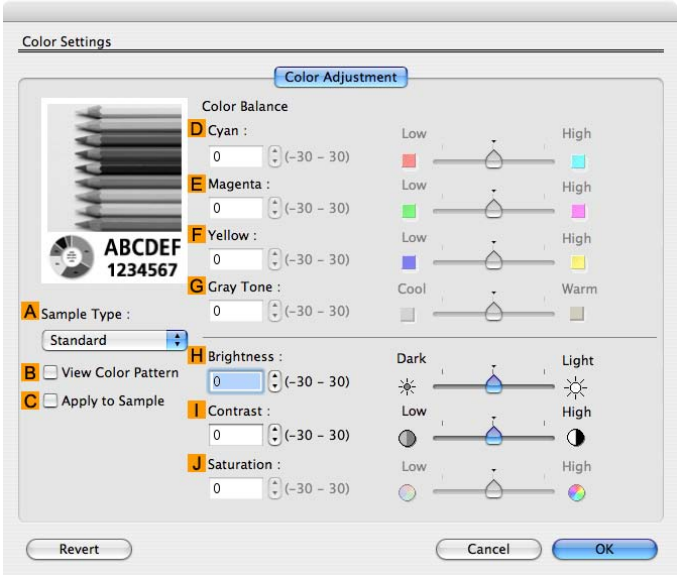
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.426)

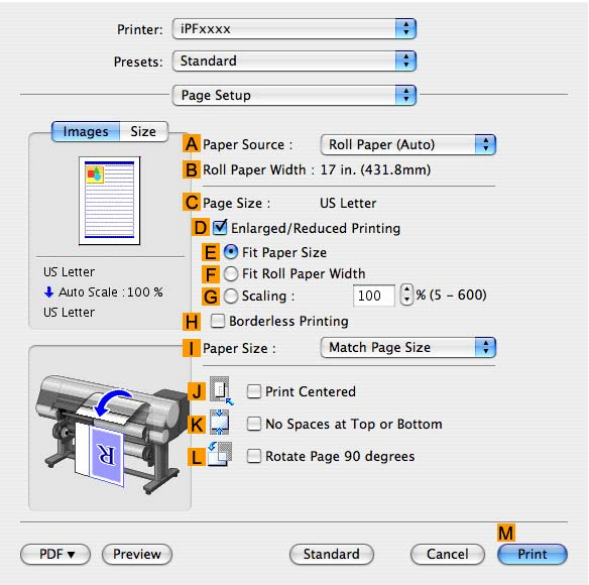
Setting Item	Description
A **Sample Type**	Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.
B **View Color Pattern**	Clicking to select this check box will display the color pattern.
C **Apply to Sample**	Clicking to select this check box will apply the revised settings to the sample image.
D **Cyan**	Not available.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	
H **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
J **Saturation**	Not available.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.201)

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

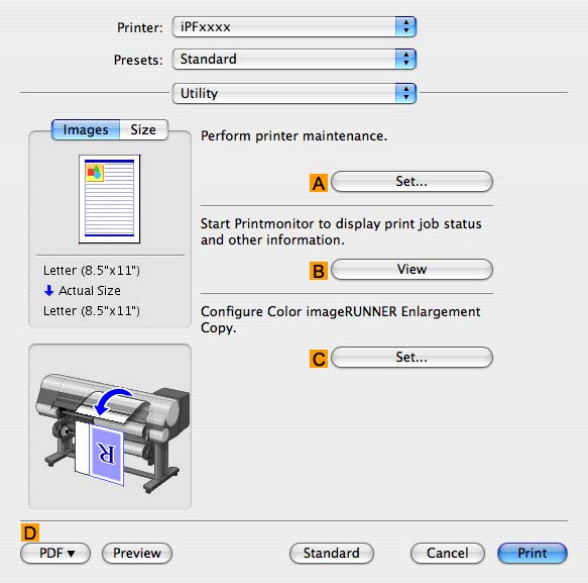


Setting Item		Description
A **Paper Source**		Choose the feed source, as desired. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in A **Media Type** in the **Main** pane.
B **Roll Paper Width**		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C **Page Size**		Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application. For details on paper sizes available from the source application, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.109)
D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.228) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.234) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.240)
	E **Fit Paper Size**	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	F **Fit Roll Paper Width**	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	G **Scaling**	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
H **Borderless Printing**		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper (Auto)**, **Roll Paper 1**, or **Roll Paper 2** is selected in the A **Paper Source** list. Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.265) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.272) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.258)
I **Paper Size**		Choose the size of the paper you will print on. Click **Display all selections for Paper Size** to list available sizes. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.109)

Setting Item	Description
J **Print Centered**	Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.324) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.330)
K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**	Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.341)
L **Rotate Page 90 degrees**	Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.335)

Utility Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**pane.

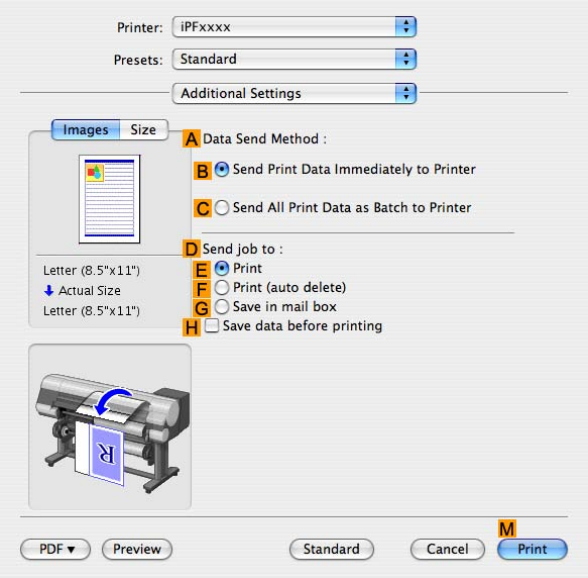


Setting Item	Description
A **Set**	Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **View**	Click to start **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, which enables you to view the status of print jobs.
C **Set**	Click to complete the settings for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)

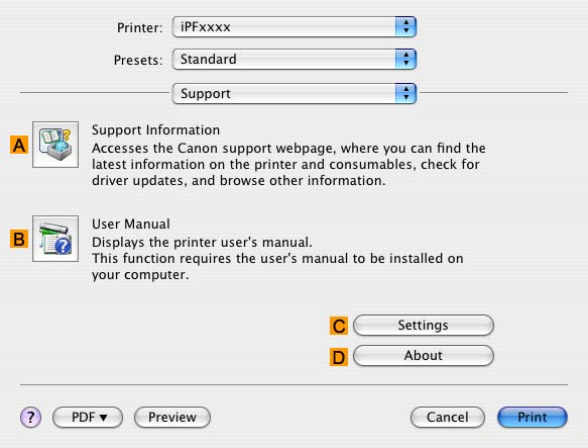
The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane.



Setting Item	Description
A Data Send Method	Choose how print data is sent to the printer. • **B Send Print Data Immediately to Printer** • **C Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**
D Send job to	Click to display the **Send job to** dialog box, which enables you to specify how print jobs are stored on the printer's hard disk. • **E Print** • **F Print (auto delete)** • **G Save in mail box**
H Save data before printing	Jobs are printed after they are saved on the hard disk.

Support Pane (Mac OS X)

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.

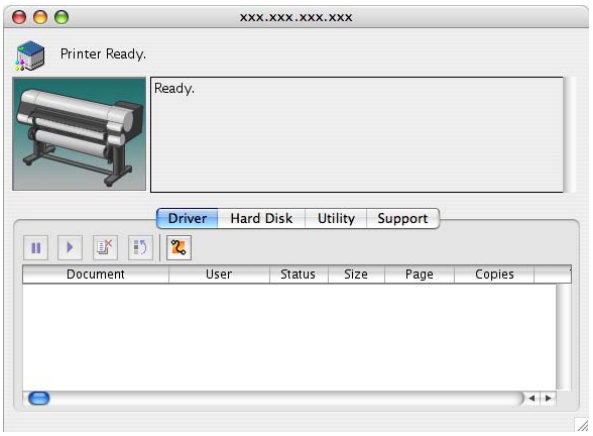


Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings**	The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the **Export** dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.
D **About**	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Printmonitor

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
  4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
     Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Network Setting

Network Setting

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
    - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
    - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
    - Windows Server 2008 (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition)
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the operating systems mentioned
- Printing over an AppleTalk network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the operating systems mentioned

Note

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.

- Printing over a NetWare network
  - Compatible servers
    - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
  - Compatible clients
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Professional)
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the operating systems mentioned

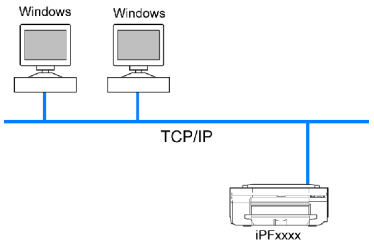
Note

- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Network Environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

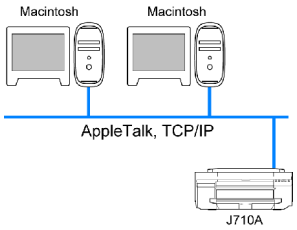
- Example of a Windows network
  In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.



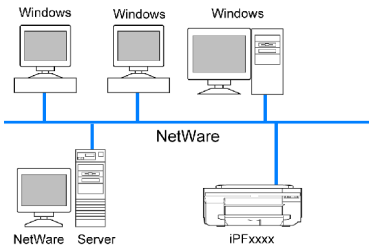
Note

- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network
  In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour (Zeroconf) functions.



- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use both TCP/IP and AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer in a TCP/IP network.
The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Quick Start Guide.
Configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (→P.444)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.445)
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands (→P.446)

Important

- If you use a DHCP server for automatic assignment of the printer's IP address, printing may no longer be possible after the printer is turned off and on. This is because an IP address different from before has been assigned. Thus, when using DHCP server functions, consult your network administrator and configure the settings in one of the following ways.
  - Configure the setting for dynamic DNS updating
    In RemoteUI, activate the setting **Enable DNS Dynamic Update**. (→P.448)
  - Configure the setting for assignment of the same IP address each time the printer starts up

Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in networks other than TCP/IP networks. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.447)

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.416)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Product Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Setting**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the ► button.
6. After you press ◄ or ► to select the input field, numerical input is possible.
7. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.

Note

- Pressing the ▲ button increases the number by 1. The maximum value is "255," after which "0" is displayed.
- Pressing the ▼ button decreases the number by 1. The minimum value is "0," after which "255" is displayed.
- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.

8. Repeat steps 6-7 to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.
9. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any settings are changed, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 9. This will activate the values you have entered.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.
To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's MAC address.

   You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

   1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
   2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
   3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the ► button.
   4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **MAC Address**, and then press the ► button.

   Note

   - You can investigate the MAC address by printing a Status Print report.
     (→P.69)

2. In Windows, open a command prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.
3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.

   arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]

   Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00-00-85-xx-xx-xx

   Note

   - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format "arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00:00:85:xx:xx:xx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.

   ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479

   Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479

   Note

   - In "-l," the "l" is the letter "l".
   - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format "ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

Note

- The subnet mask and default gateway will be set to "0.0.0.0." Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.447)

Using RemoteUI

Enter the printer's IP address in a web browser to display the RemoteUI page. After you log on to RemoteUI from the page, you can check and change the status of the printer and print jobs, and configure network settings.

To access RemoteUI, start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://"printer IP address or name"/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings (→P.448)
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings (→P.450)
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings (→P.451)
- Specifying Printer-Related Information (→P.453)

Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. To change the display language, select the desired language under **Language** before logging on in administrator mode.

Important

- Use Netscape Navigator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later as a web browser. In Mac OS X, you can also use Safari 1.32 or later or Safari 2.03 or later.
- Access is not possible via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IP** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters. When using a standard Windows port for IPP printing, enter an URL less than 255 bytes for all characters for "http://"IP address"/IPP-URI."	printer
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On

Item	Details	Default Setting
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
FTP Printing	Activate this setting to use FTP Printing.	On
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and "-" (hyphens). Do not use numbers or "-" for the first character or "-" for the last character.	NB-17FBxxxxxxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, "-" (hyphens), and "." (periods). Do not use numbers, "-", or "." for the first character, or "-" or "." for the last character.	blank
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name. (1-63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes a minute or two to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers, DNS host name, and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

   AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled**.	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, *, :, and =.	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, :, and =. Also avoid using "*" (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

   *1:The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is "Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)." (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

   2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk "" entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-

Item		Details	Default Setting
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-15)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server. (0-32 characters)	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server. (0-255 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-64 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254)	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.
5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
6. Refer to the table of settings for device information, security, and email notification as you complete these settings.

   Device Information Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Enter a device name. (0-32 characters)	blank
Location	Enter the location where the device is installed. (0-32 characters)	blank
Administrator	Enter the administrator’s name. (0-32 characters)	blank
Phone	Enter the administrator’s contact information. (0-32 characters)	blank
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any comments regarding the administrator. (0-32 characters)	blank

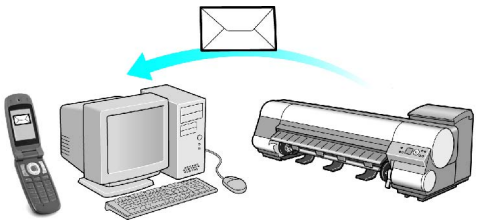
   Security Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
Old Password	Enter the current device password. (0-14 characters)	blank
New Password	Enter the new password. (0-14 characters)	blank
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-14 characters)	blank

   Besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP and FTP authentication settings.
7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions,see "Specifying Printer-Related Information". (→P.453)

Note

- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer". (→P.443)
- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.447)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.
6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.
- If you use the Control Panel to initialize the network settings, press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**, and then press ▲, ▼, and ► to select **Interface Setup** → **Ethernet Driver** → **Init. Settings** → **Yes** (in this order), and finally press the **OK** button.

Network Setting (Windows)

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.
The procedure described below is the configuration based on the LPR or Raw protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).

Important

- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address on the Printer (→P.443)

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** to open the printer properties window.
3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.
4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.
6. Click **New Port**.
   After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address.
9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
12. Click **Close** to close the printer properties window.

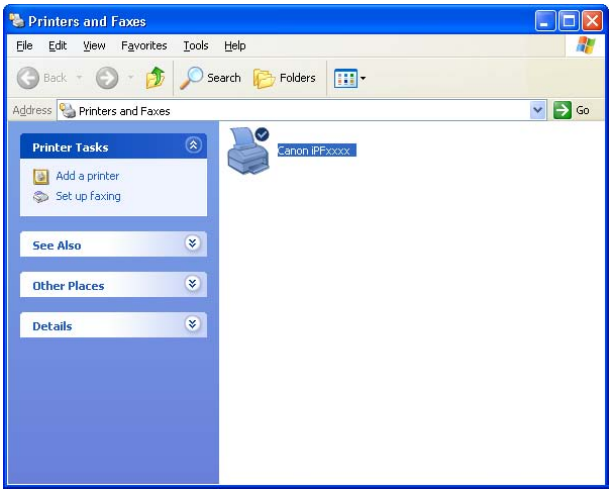
Sharing the Printer in Windows

If you set up a computer as a print server in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008, the computer can receive print jobs sent from other computers (clients) connected to it for printing. This topic describes how to share the printer in Windows.

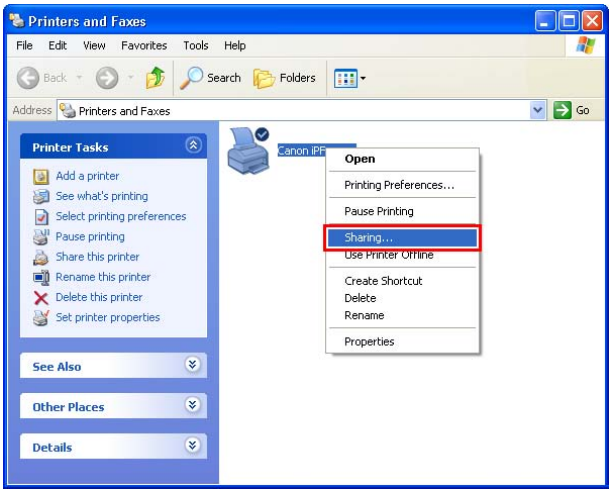
Important

- We recommend that your network administrator configure your network for printer sharing.

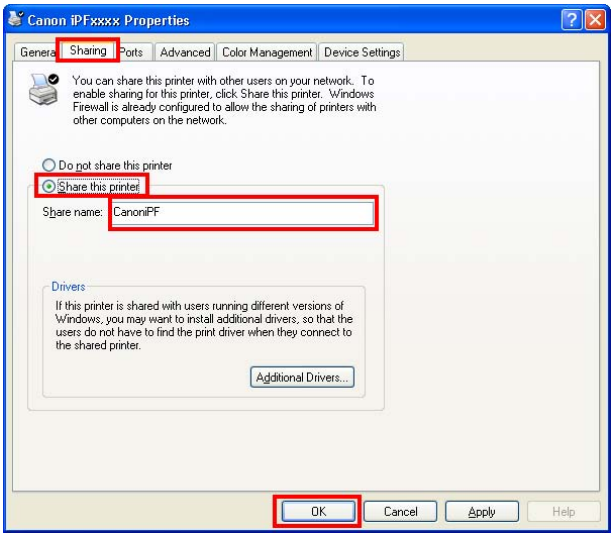
1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.



2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Sharing** to open the printer properties window.



3. On the **Sharing** sheet, click **Share this printer** and enter the shared name.



4. To print jobs from clients running other versions of Windows, click **Additional Drivers** and follow the instructions to install the printer driver of the corresponding version.
   If you are prompted to choose the location of the printer driver file, insert the provided User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and specify the folder where the printer driver is located.
5. Click **OK**.

Important

- When installing the printer driver on client computers, select "Network Printer" on the connection type screen in the printer wizard, and then select the printer shared from the computer set up as the print server.

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-

Item		Details	Default Setting
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-15)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server. (0-32 characters)	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server. (0-255 characters)	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-64 characters)	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0-20 characters)	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0-47 characters)	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254)	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.
Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.

Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.

Important

- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.416)

Specifying the Frame Type Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **NetWare Frame Type** list, select the frame type.
5. Click **ETHERNET II** under **Frame Type** in **TCP/IP**.
6. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.

   Important

   - You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Specifying the Frame Type Using the Printer Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the ► button.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **NetWare** menu.
10. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
    If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 10. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more.

Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following software.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE
  (from Novell, provided with NetWare)

Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.

Note

- In NetWare 5.1 or 6.0, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and bindery
  NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue server mode and remote printer mode
  Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue server mode
    When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote printer mode
    In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.
2. Run Quick Setup.
   1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
   2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
   3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
   4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
   5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
   6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
   7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.

   Note
   - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.
   - When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number "0." When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from "0."
3. Set a password.
   1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
   2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
   3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
   4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.
4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.

   To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" at the file server and press the Enter key.

   Note
   - This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Supervisor and start PCONSOLE.
2. Switch to bindery mode.
3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup** and press the Enter key.
    2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.

    Note
    - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.

4. Specify the printer type.
    1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
    2. Press the Esc key.
    3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
    2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
    3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
    4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

Specifying NetWare Protocols

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.

Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.447)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Make sure the **Frame Type** indicates the frame type used on the NetWare network.
7. To use burst mode, choose **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.

   Note

   - Burst mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, choose **On**.

8. In **Print Application**, click the print service to be used.

   Note

   - Only one print service selected here will be enabled. Multiple print services are not available at the same time.

9. For packet signature, click **If Requested by Server** in **Packet Signature**.
10. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.
    - If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
      2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"
      3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"
      4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
    - If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"
      2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)" Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.463)"

11. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.
12. Click **Reset** to activate the settings.

For a list of NetWare protocol settings items, see “Configuring the Printer’s NetWare Network Settings”. (→P.451)

Note

- If you use RemoteUI to display the print log in RPrinter or NPrinter mode, the document and user information cannot be obtained. Thus, **Document Name** only indicates **Unknown**, and the **User Name** information is identified as **RPRINTER/NPRINTER**.

Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.
   For instructions, see “Specifying the Printer’s Frame Type”. (→P.461)
2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Print Services”. (→P.463)
3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Protocols”. (→P.466)
   After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.
4. Connect to the NetWare network.
   Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.
5. Install the printer driver.
   Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.
6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port. This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.
   1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
   2. Right-click the printer icon and choose **Properties**.
   3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
   4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.416)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Product Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Network Setting (Mac OS X)

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in an AppleTalk network, see "Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh)". (→P.473)
- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)". (→P.476)
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)". (→P.479)

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

   AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled**.	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, *, :, and =.	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, :, and =. Also avoid using "*" (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

   *1:The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is "Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)." (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

   2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk "" entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh)

To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

Activating AppleTalk on the printer

Important

- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any of the settings is changed, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 5. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note

- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used by AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.
  For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.447)

Configuring the destination (Mac OS X)

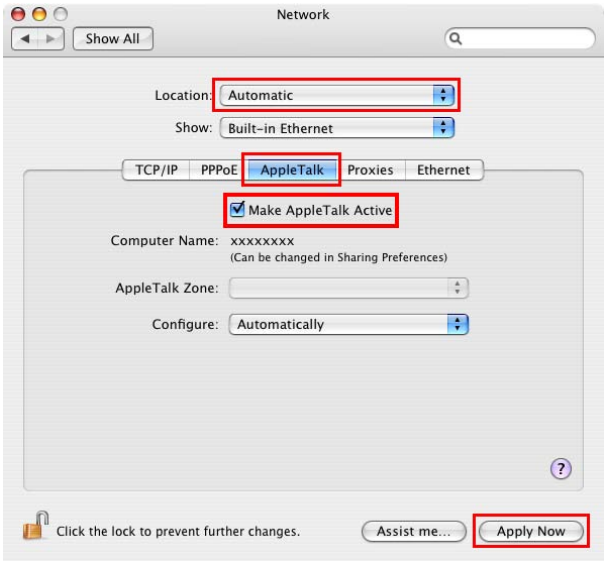
Important

- AppleTalk is supported in Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4.

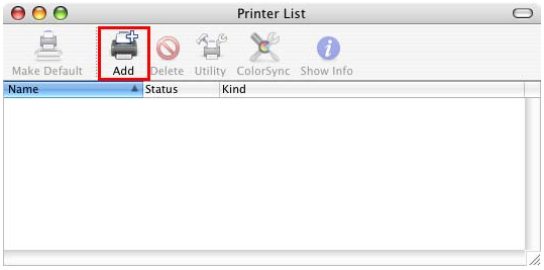
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

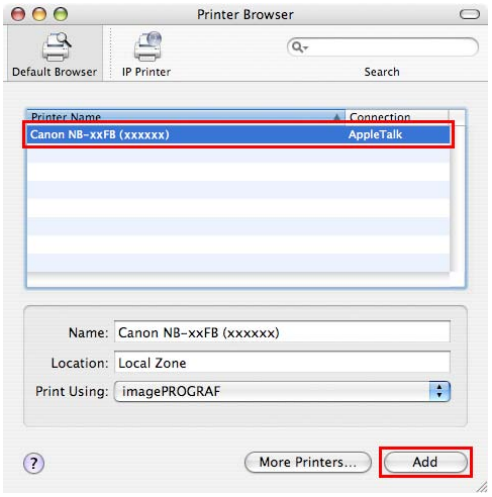
1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.
2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.



3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.
4. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
5. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
6. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



7. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)

Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network.

Important

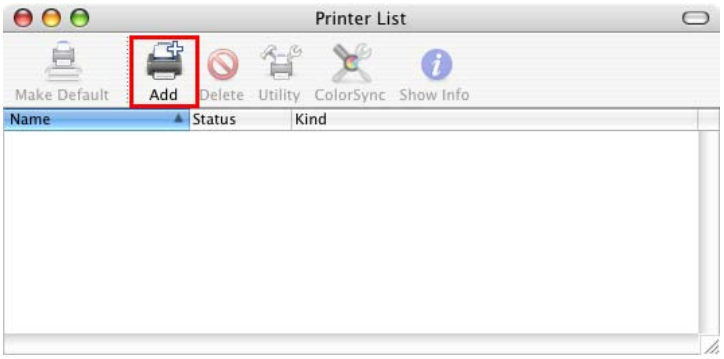
- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.445)

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

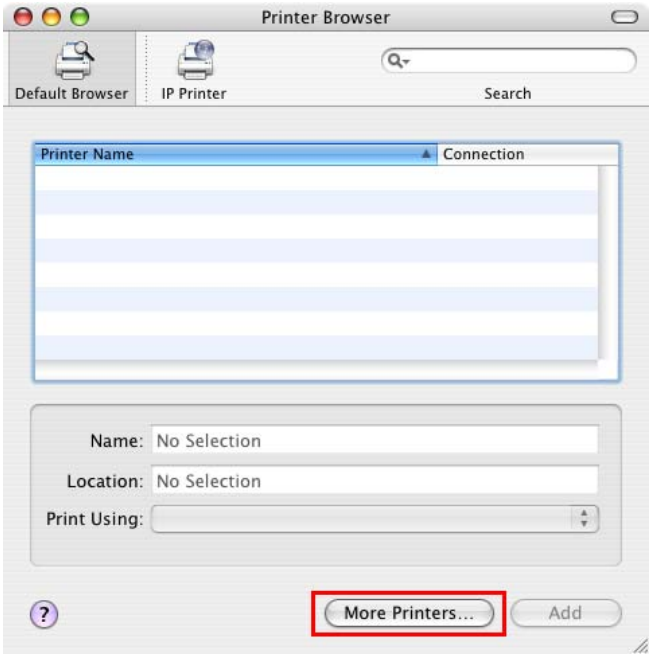
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X. If you use other versions, refer to the help for the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**).

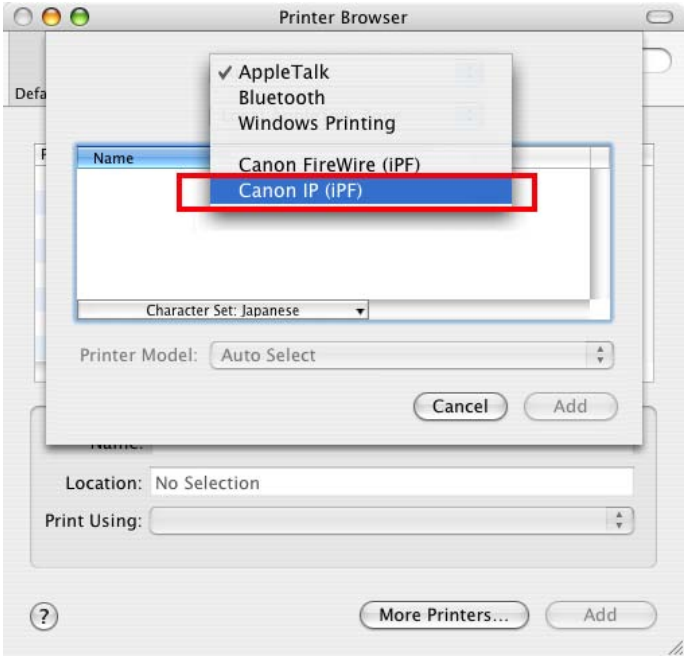
1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. Click **Add** to display the **Printer Browser** window.



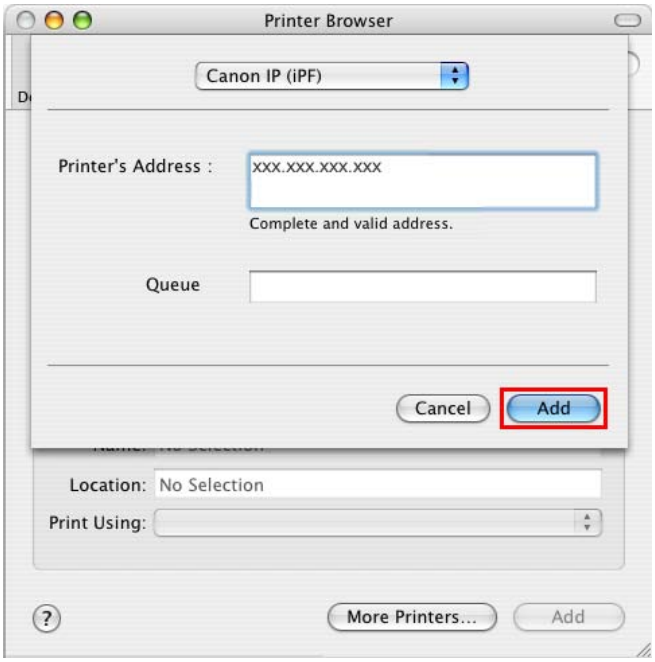
4. Click **More Printers**.



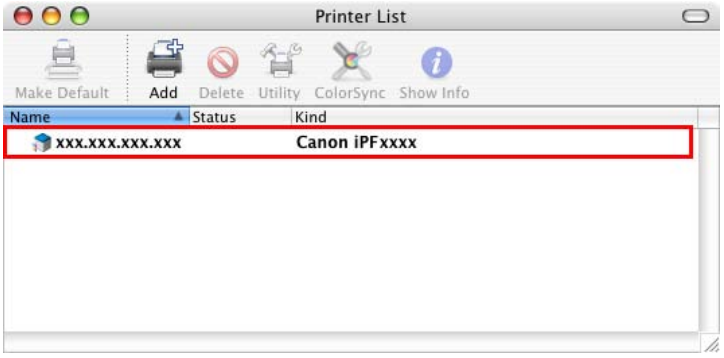
5. In the list of connection methods, click **Canon IP(iPF)**.



6. Enter the printer's IP address in **Printer's Address** and click **Add**.



7. Make sure the printer has been added, and then close the **Printer List** window.



Important

- If **imagePROGRAF Generic** is indicated in **Kind**, the printer information is not properly acquired. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network. (→P.634)

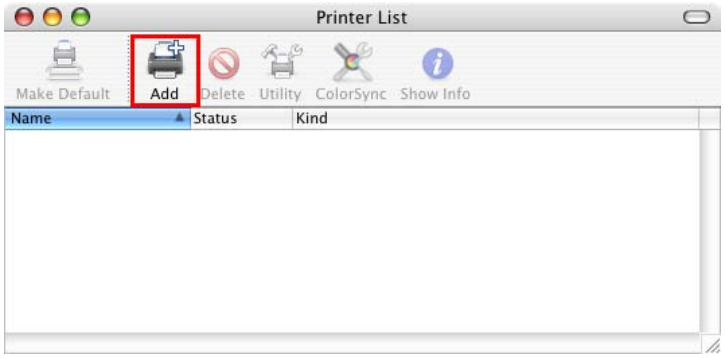
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)

In Mac OS X 10.2.8 and later, use Bonjour functions to easily connect the printer to the network. Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

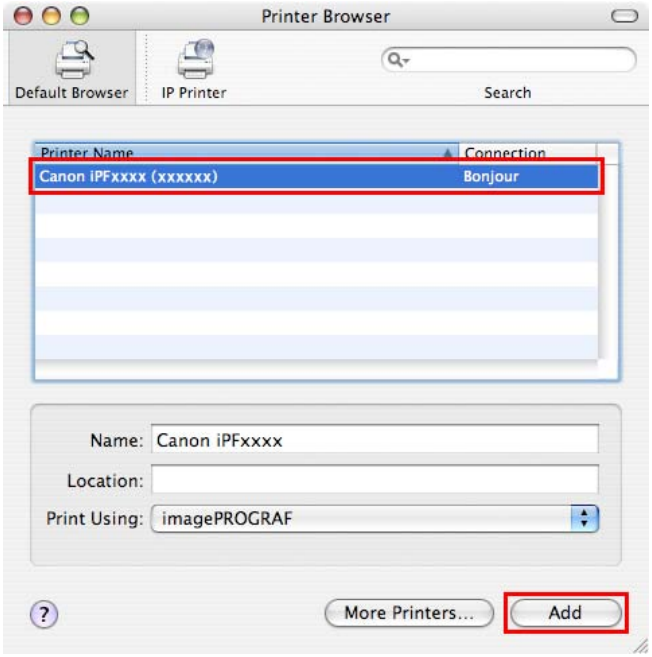
Important

- Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. The printer name as displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X is predefined as the **Multicast DNS Service Name**. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.447)

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



4. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Hard Disk

Hard Disk

Printer Hard Disk Operations

Printer hard disk operations are available from the following programs and interfaces.

- Printer driver
- imagePROGRAF HDI Driver
- imagePROGRAF Free Layout
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
- imagePROGRAF Status Monitor
- imagePROGRAF Printmonitor
- RemoteUI
- Control Panel

The hard disk operations available through each interface are as follows.

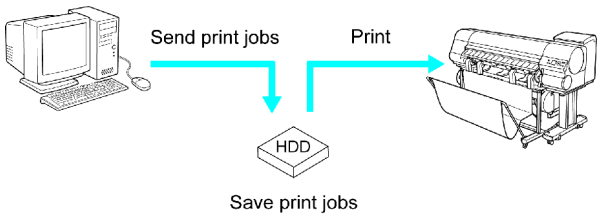
Windows		Printer driver	image-PROGRAF Free Layout	image-PROGRAF Status Monitor	RemoteUI	Control Panel
		image-PROGRAF HDI Driver	Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy			
Mac OS		Printer driver	Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy	image-PROGRAF Printmonitor		
Operation		**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**
Saving print jobs	Print	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	Print (auto delete)	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	Save in mail box	Yes	No	No	No	No
	Save data before printing(*1)	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
	Do not save print jobs in the common box	No	No	No	No	Yes
	Save print jobs sent from sources other than the printer driver	No	No	No	No	Yes

Windows		Printer driver	image-PROGRAF Free Layout	image-PROGRAF Status Monitor	RemoteUI	Control Panel
		image-PROGRAF HDI Driver	Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy			
Mac OS		Printer driver	Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy	image-PROGRAF Printmonitor		
Operation		**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**	**Availability**
Operations with saved jobs	Print saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Job queue management	Display job queue	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Preempt Jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mail box management	Move saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify mail boxes	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Print a list of saved jobs	No	No	No	No	Yes
	Display a list of saved jobs	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other operations	Display free hard disk space	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Initialize hard disk	No	No	No	No	Yes
	Display the time of printing	No	No	Yes	No	No
Display error messages		No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1:This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved and then printed.

Saved Print Jobs

Saving print jobs refers to the process of sending print jobs from a computer and storing them on the printer's hard disk. By saving print jobs, you can print them repeatedly as needed without sending them from a computer again.



Saving print jobs enables you to do the following things.

- Save the time spent using a computer

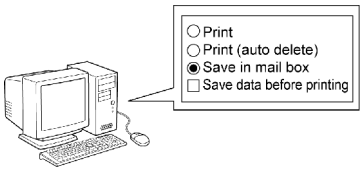
  When you send a print job to the printer, you can either print it and save it on the printer at the same time or simply save it on the printer without printing it yet. Saved print jobs can be printed in the required quantity later without the need to use a computer again.
- Simplify reprinting, if any errors occur

  If errors occur in the middle of printing (as when paper runs out), you can resume printing after clearing the error without resending the print job from a computer.
- Streamline printing work

  Without using a computer, you can select print jobs and print in the desired quantity. You can also select multiple print jobs to print during the same period. This enables unattended operation at night, for example.

Format of saved print jobs

Choose the format when saving print jobs on the printer's hard disk. Choose from three formats for saving print jobs: **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. You can also choose **Save data before printing**, as desired.



- **Print**

  Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
- **Print (auto delete)**

  Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
- **Save in mail box**

  Save print jobs on the printer.
- **Save data before printing**

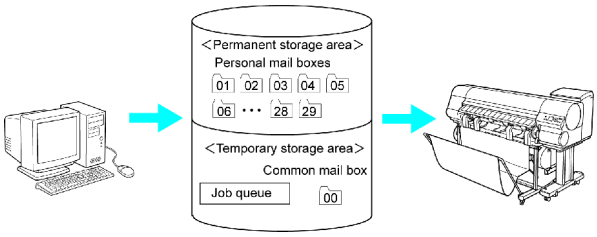
  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Note

- The saving format cannot be specified during HP-GL/2 printing. Instead, the saving format is identified as **Print**.

Storage destination

The storage area on the printer's hard disk is divided into a temporary storage area and a permanent storage area. Print jobs in the "job queue" or "Common Box" are saved in the temporary storage area. Jobs in "Personal Boxes" are saved in the permanent storage area.



- Job queue

  Print jobs in progress(*1) are temporarily saved in the job queue, a storage space where jobs are saved in the order they will be printed.

  Up to ten jobs can be stored in the queue. Subsequent jobs are treated as "standby" jobs, to be processed when possible.

  *1: Jobs that are being saved, received, prepared for processing, processed, or printed, or jobs that have been interrupted or are being deleted

- Common Box

  If you have specified **Print** as the format, jobs sent from the computer are saved in the Common Box.

  There is one Common Box, numbered "00". A password cannot be set for the Common Box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved here, but they will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

  - If there are more than 100 jobs in the Common Box and job queue combined
  - If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs in the format **Print** or **Print (auto delete)** are received
  - If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs in the format **Save in mail box** are received

- Personal Boxes

  You can store jobs in Personal Boxes in either of the following ways.

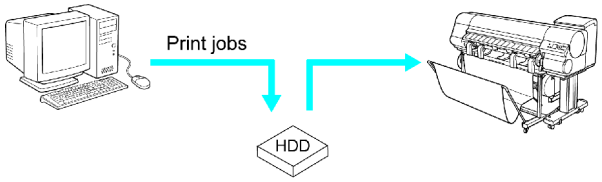
  - By moving a job stored in the Common Box into a Personal Box
  - By selecting **Save in mail box** as the format

  There are 29 Personal Boxes, numbered "01" to "29". You can specify a name and password for each Personal Box.

  Up to 100 print jobs can be saved in all Personal Boxes combined.

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver

To save print jobs sent from software or systems other than the printer driver provided with the printer, complete the **Output Method** and **Save and Print** settings in the printer menu.



Important

- Contact the software or system developer for information about support for this printer function.

Specifying Output Method

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Output Method**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the output method, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
   - **Print (Auto Del)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save: Box 01** (Here, the number represents a box number)
     Save print jobs on the printer. If you select this option, go to step 5 and select the box for saving print jobs.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box, and then press the **OK** button.

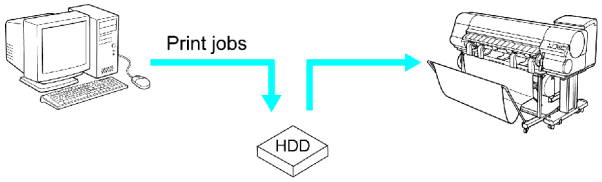
Specifying Save and Print

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Save and Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.
   If you select **On**, print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Saving Print Jobs

You can save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

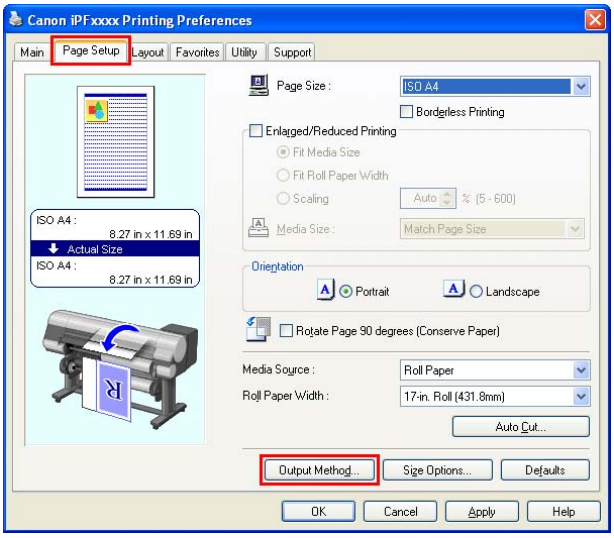


Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk as follows.

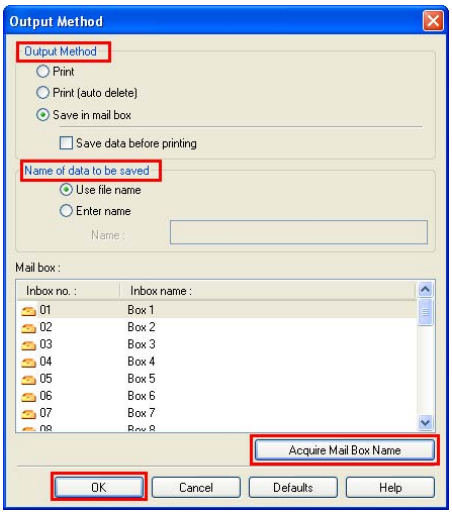
- Using the printer driver (Windows) (→P.486)
- Using HDI Driver (Windows)
  See "Output Method Setting."
- Using Free Layout (Windows)
  See the section on the **Output Method** dialog box.
- Using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (Windows)
  See the section on the **Output Method** button on the **Output Settings** sheet.
- Using **imagePROGRAF Preview** (Windows)
  Printer driver settings will be used for the format of saved print jobs. (→P.486)
- Using the printer driver (Mac OS) (→P.488)
- Using Free Layout (Mac OS)
  Printer driver settings will be used for the format of saved print jobs. (→P.488)
- Using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (Mac OS)
  See the section on the **Output Method** button in the **Output Settings** pane.
- Using **imagePROGRAF Preview** (Mac OS)
  Printer driver settings will be used for the format of saved print jobs. (→P.488)
  However, the document name will be imagePROGRAF.

Using the printer driver (Windows)

1. Access the **Page Setup** sheet.



2. Click **Output Method** to display the **Output Method** dialog box.



3. In **Output Method**, choose the format for saved print jobs.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save in mail box**
     Save print jobs on the printer.
     If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box in the **Mail box** list.

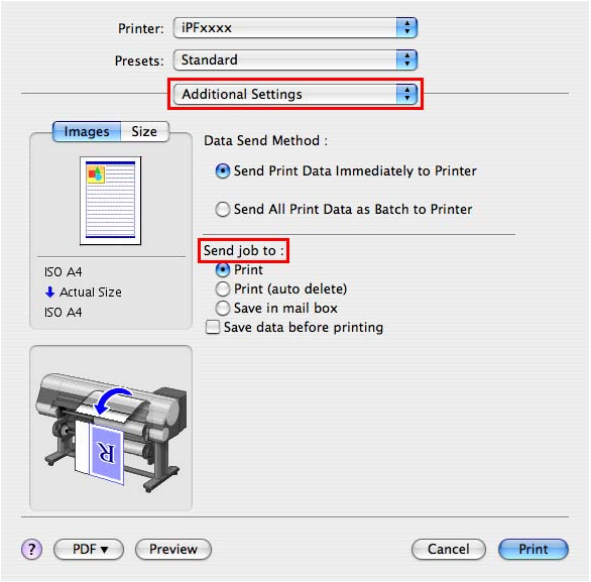
Note

- Click **Acquire Mail Box Name** to display personal box names in the **Mail box** list, as acquired from the printer.
- **Save data before printing**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

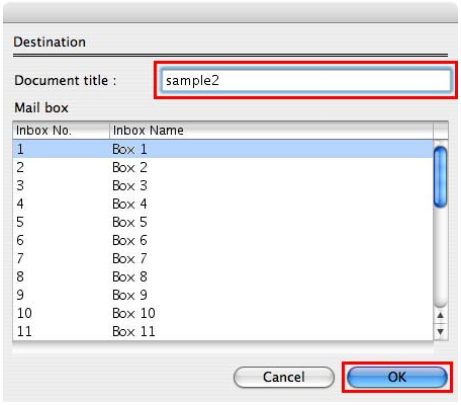
4. In **Name of data to be saved**, specify how to name saved print jobs.
    - To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.
    - Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.
5. Click **OK** to close the **Output Method** dialog box.

Using the printer driver (Mac OS)

1. Access the **Additional Settings** pane.



2. In **Send job to**, choose the format for saved print jobs.
   - **Print**
     Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed.
   - **Print (auto delete)**
     Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
   - **Save in mail box**
     Save print jobs on the printer.
     The **Destination** dialog box is displayed if you select **Save in mail box**. Here, specify the name and personal box number for saved print jobs.



   1. In **Document title**, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.
   2. Select the personal box number in the **Mail box** list.
   3. Click **OK** to close the **Destination** dialog box.

Note

- **Save data before printing**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**, **Print (auto delete)**, and **Save in mail box**. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk and then printed.

Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box

If you have specified **Print** in the printer driver as the format for saving print jobs, jobs sent from the computer are saved in the Common Box. (→P.482)
You can select **Save: Shared Box** > **Off** in the printer menu so that print jobs for which you have selected **Output Method** > **Print** in the printer driver are deleted from the box after printing.
Use this function when printing highly confidential documents.

Note

- If an error occurs, print jobs that are printed after you clear the error are deleted.

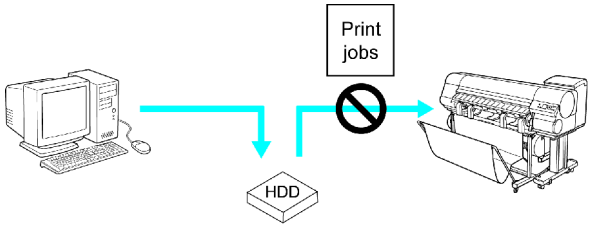
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Save: Shared Box**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

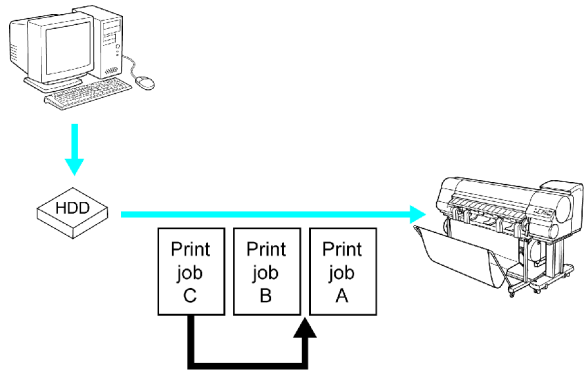
Managing Queued Jobs (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)

Print jobs can be deleted or their printing order changed to print them immediately, depending on their status. You can determine the status of print jobs in Windows by checking the Control Panel, RemoteUI, or imagePROGRAF Status Monitor and on a Macintosh computer by checking imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

- Deleting queued print jobs
  You cannot manually delete jobs that are already in the process of being deleted.



- Preempting other jobs
  Print jobs that are being received or prepared for printing can be selected for preemptive printing.



You can manage queued print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel (→P.491)
- Using RemoteUI (→P.491)
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) (→P.492)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) (→P.492)

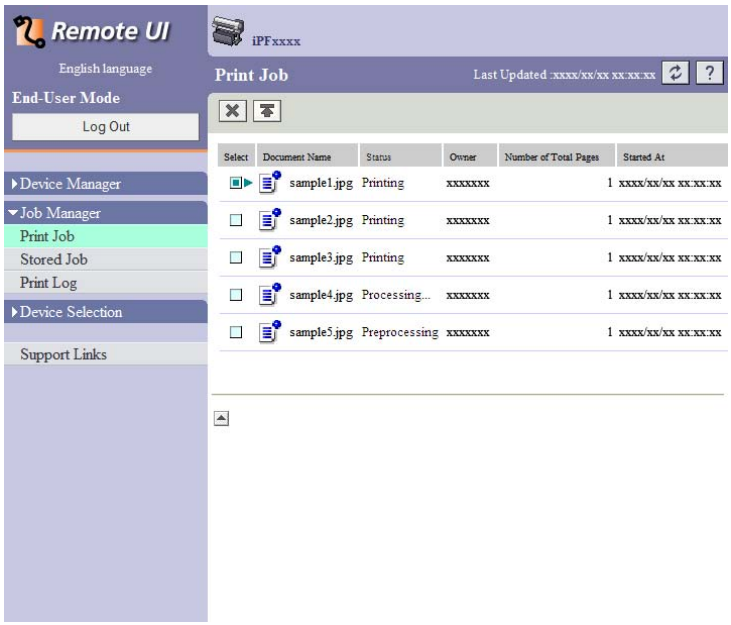
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.

2. You can manage queued jobs as follows.
   - Deleting queued jobs
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Mgmt Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to delete, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - Changing the order of printing
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Mgmt Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the ► button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the job to print first, and then press the ► button.
     4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Preempt Jobs**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

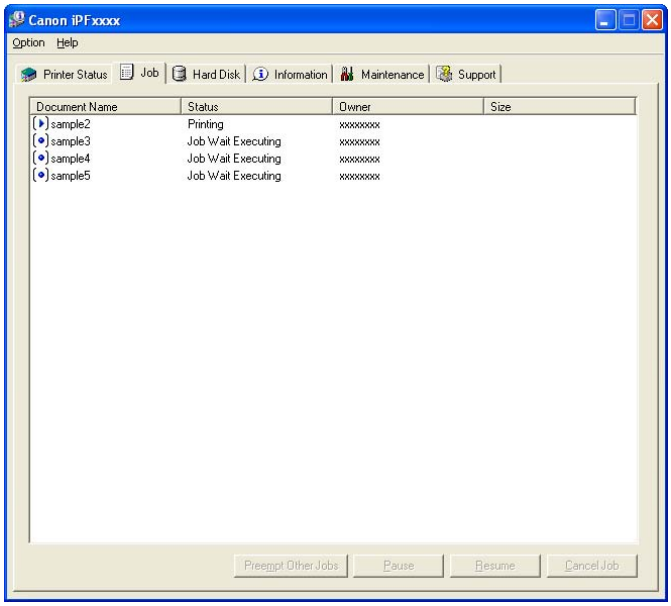
On the **Print Job** page, select the job to manage and how to manage it. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.



Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

On the **Job** sheet, select the job and the desired function. The following functions are available.

- Preempting other jobs
- Pausing printing
- Resuming printing
- Canceling print jobs

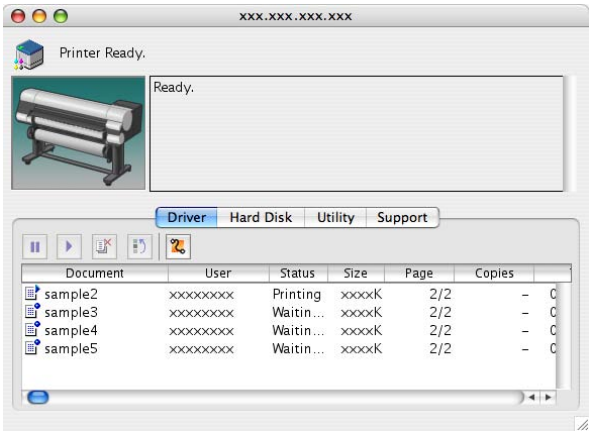


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

On the **Driver** pane, select the job and the desired function. The following functions are available.

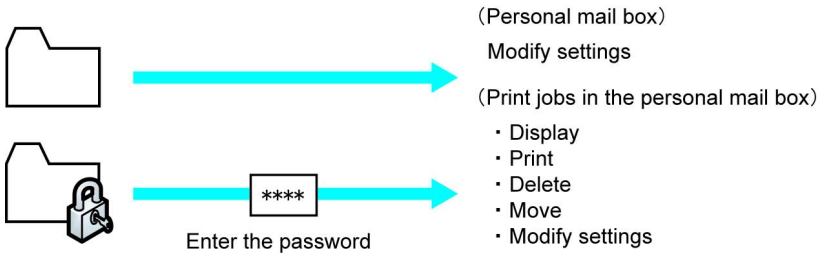
- Preempting other jobs
- Pausing printing
- Resuming printing
- Canceling print jobs



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes

By default, no passwords are set for personal boxes. For greater security, you can set passwords for each personal box. After you set a password, it will be required to modify the personal box settings, as well as to display, print, delete, move, and modify jobs saved in the personal box.



Note

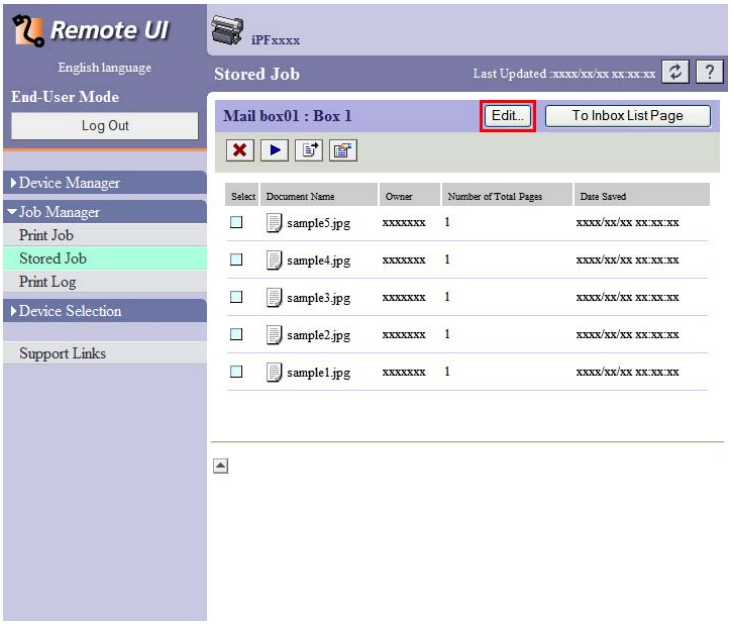
- A password cannot be set for the common box.
- Enter a four-digit number as the password, in the range 0001-9999.
- Even if you have set passwords, they are not required to access personal boxes in Administrator Mode in RemoteUI.

You can set a password for a personal box as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

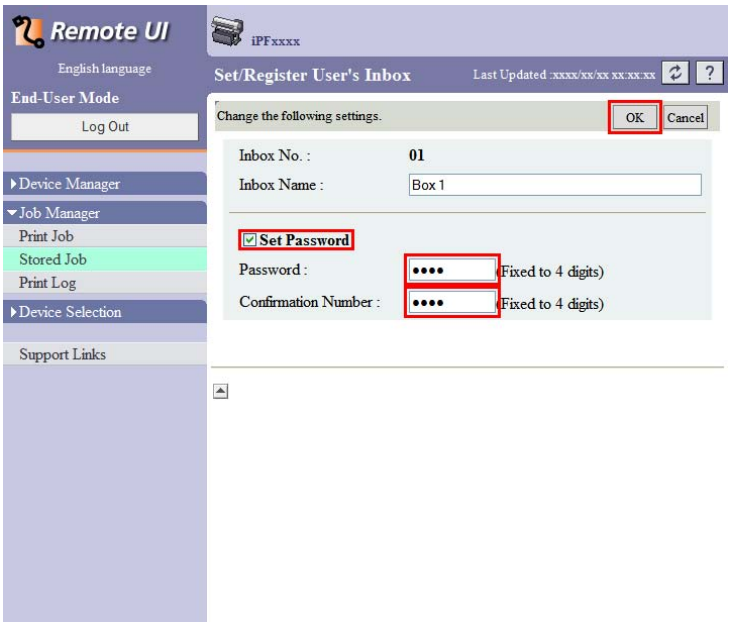
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, select the personal box for a password.
2. Click **Edit**.



3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

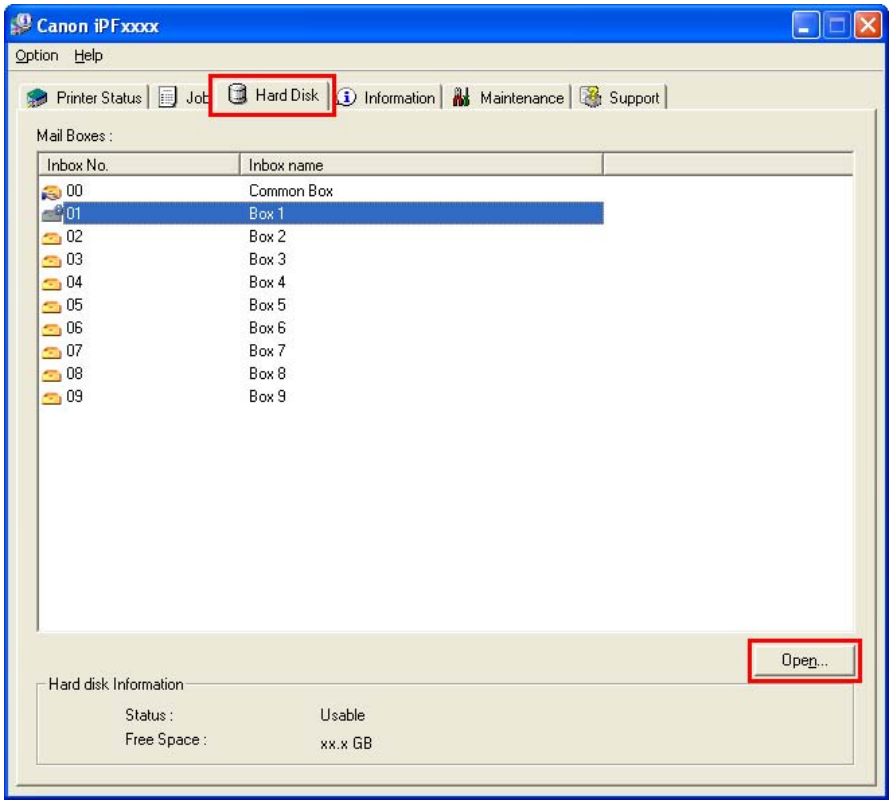
- **Set Password** : Select the check box.
- **Password** : Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
- **Confirmation Number** : Re-enter the password to confirm it.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

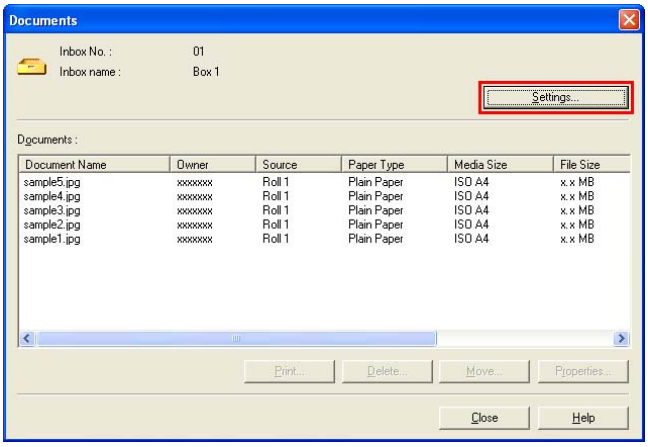
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a listed personal box for a password and click **Open**.



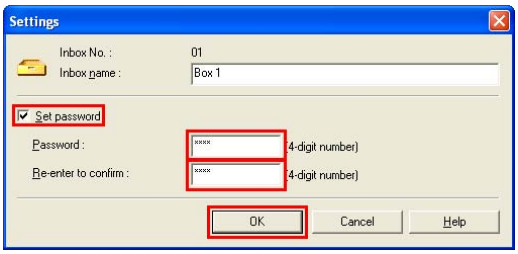
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.



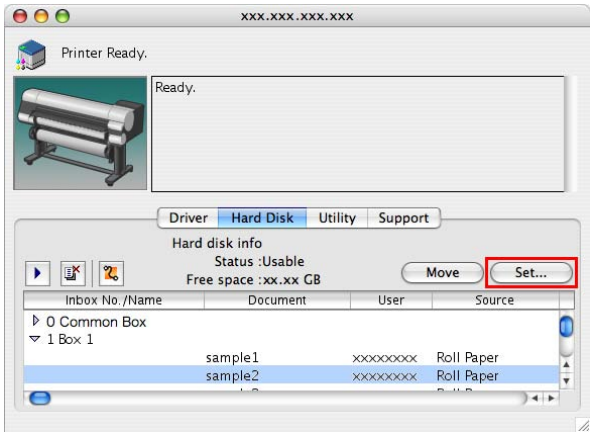
3. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.
   - **Set password** : Select the check box.
   - **Password** : Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
   - **Re-enter to confirm** : Re-enter the password to confirm it.



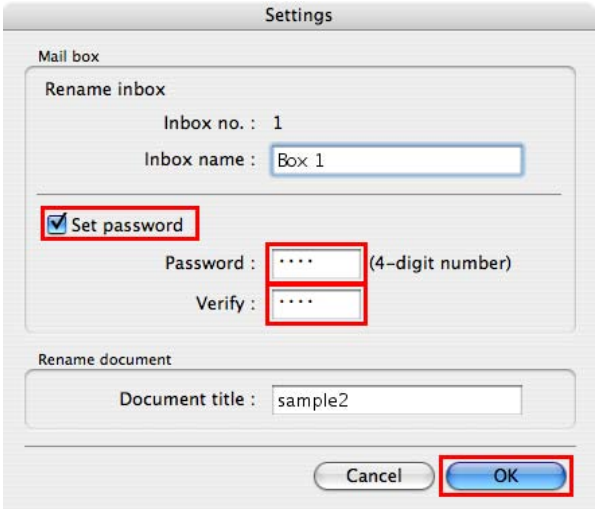
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs. Select a saved job and click **Set**.



2. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.
   - **Set password** : Select the check box.
   - **Password** : Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001-9999.)
   - **Verify** : Re-enter the password to confirm it.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

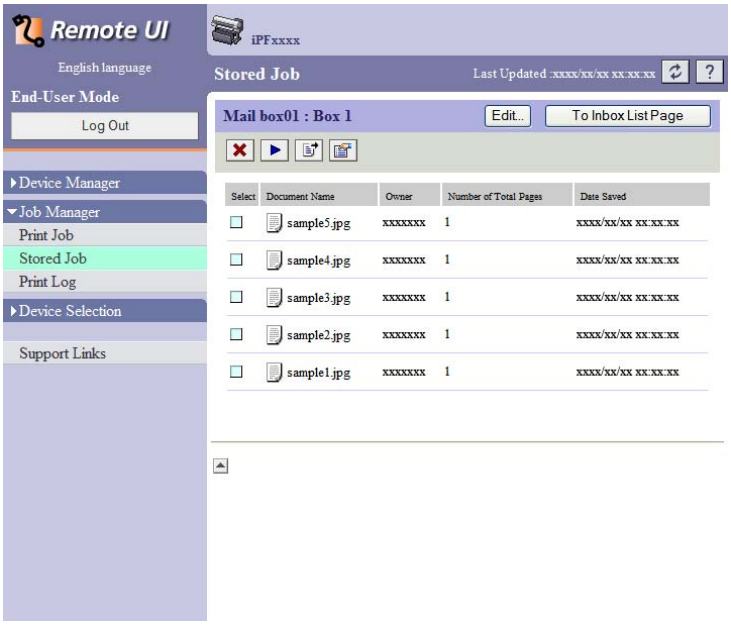
Naming Personal Boxes

By default, personal boxes are unnamed. You can name them for easier management.
You can assign a name to a personal box as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

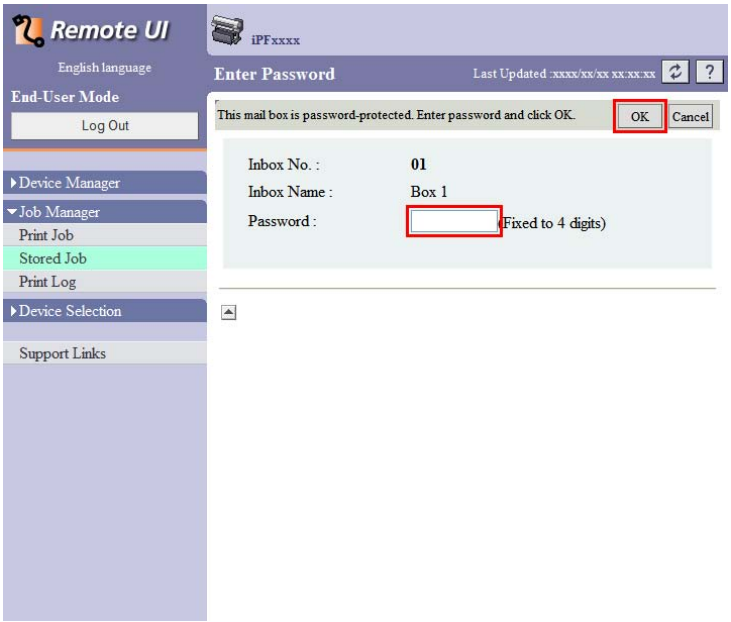
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, select the personal box to identify.

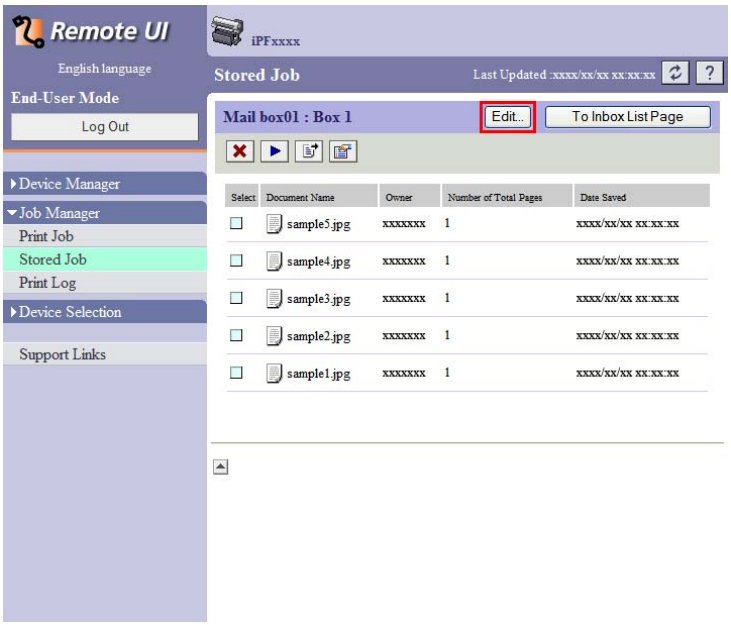


Note

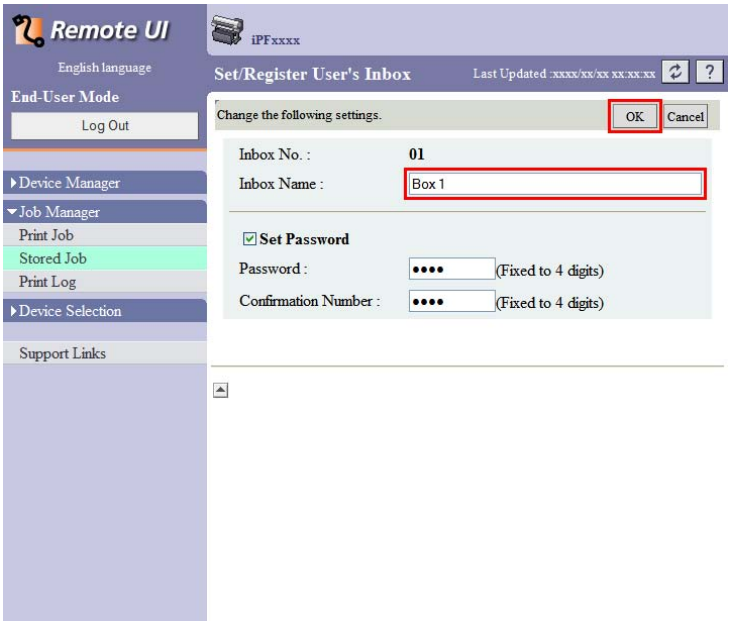
- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.



2. Click **Edit**.



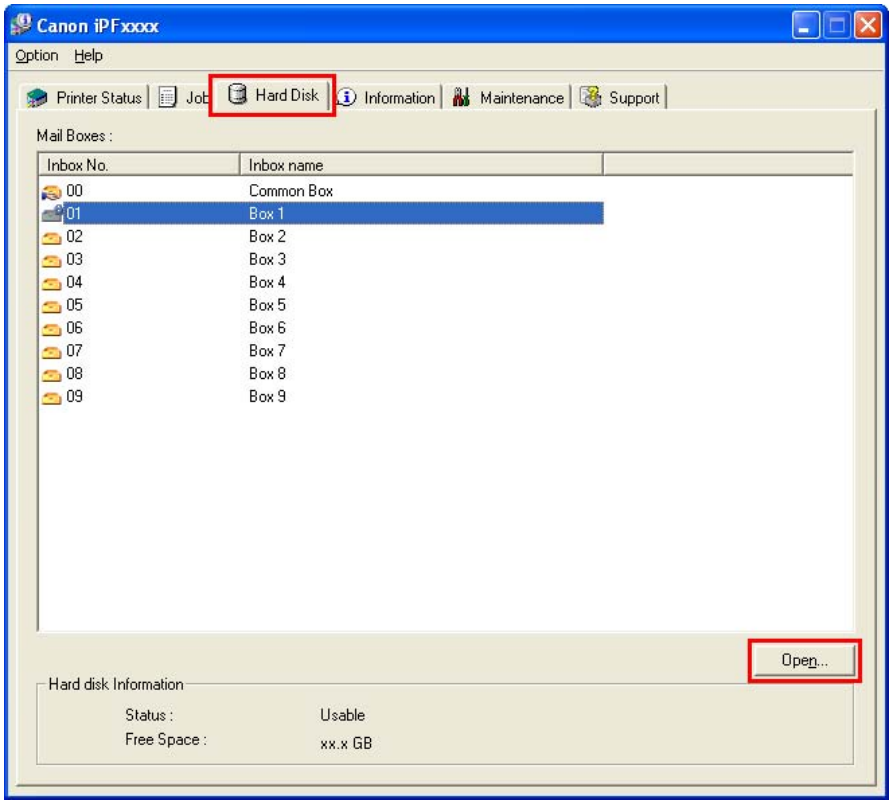
3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, enter the personal box name in **Inbox Name** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

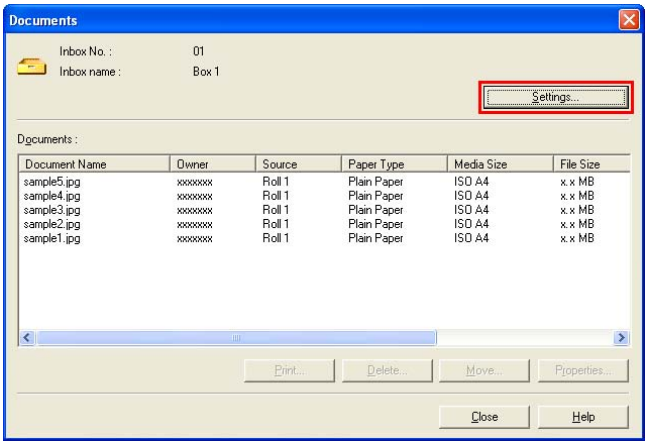
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a listed personal box to identify and click **Open**.



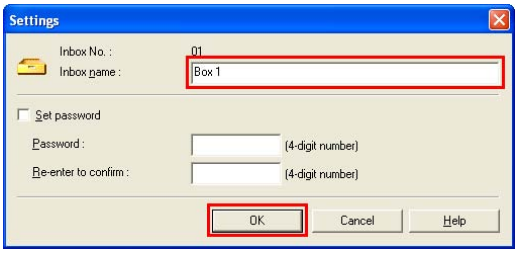
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.



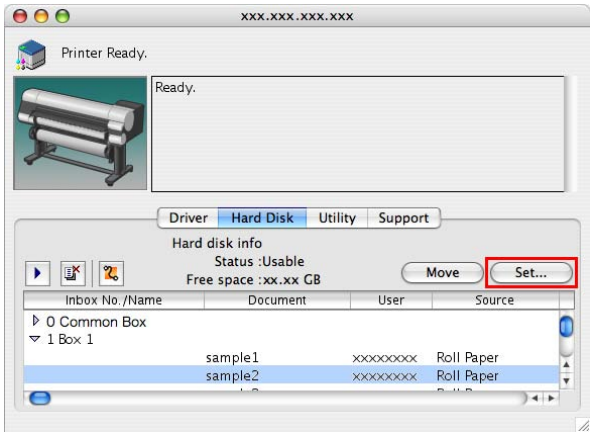
3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the personal box name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

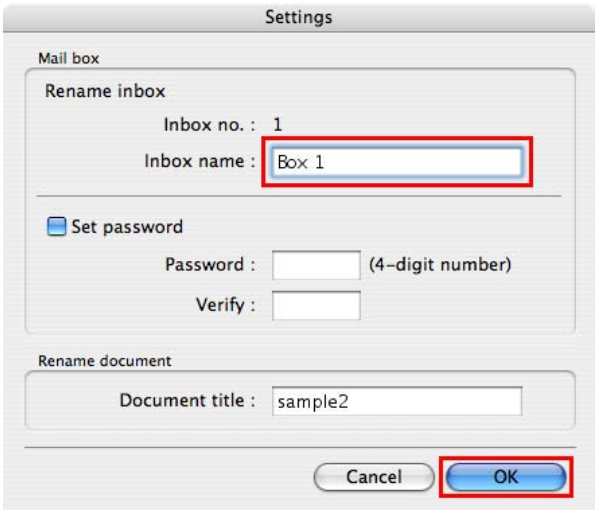
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs. Select a saved job and click **Set**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the personal box name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Displaying a List of Saved Jobs

You can display saved print jobs in the box shared among all users and in each personal box.
View the list of stored print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

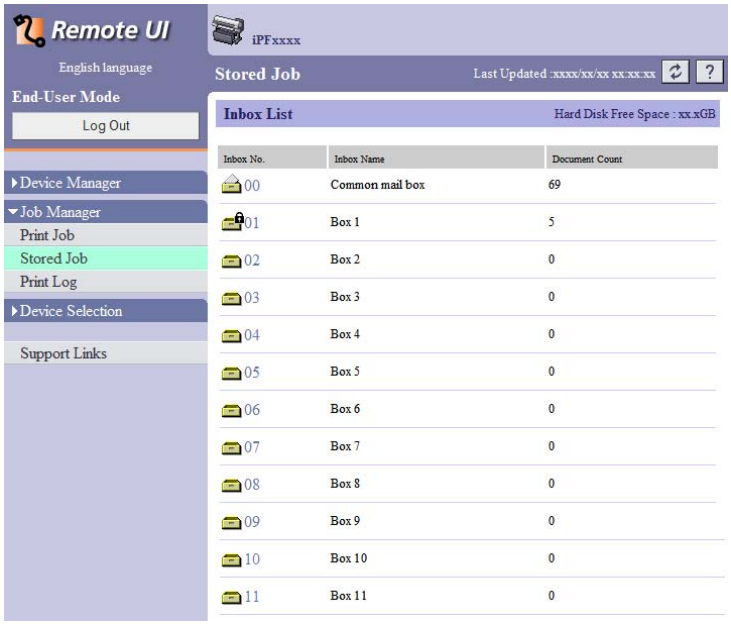
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Display a list of saved print jobs.
    1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
    2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the ► button.
    3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00-29), and then press the ► button.
    4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.
    5. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **Job List**.

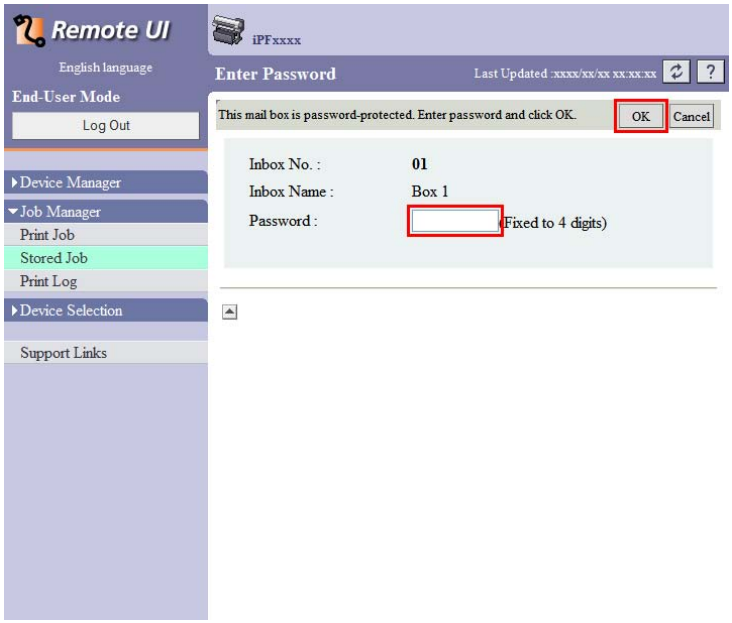
Using RemoteUI

Choose a mail box on the **Stored Job** page to display a list of jobs saved in that mail box.

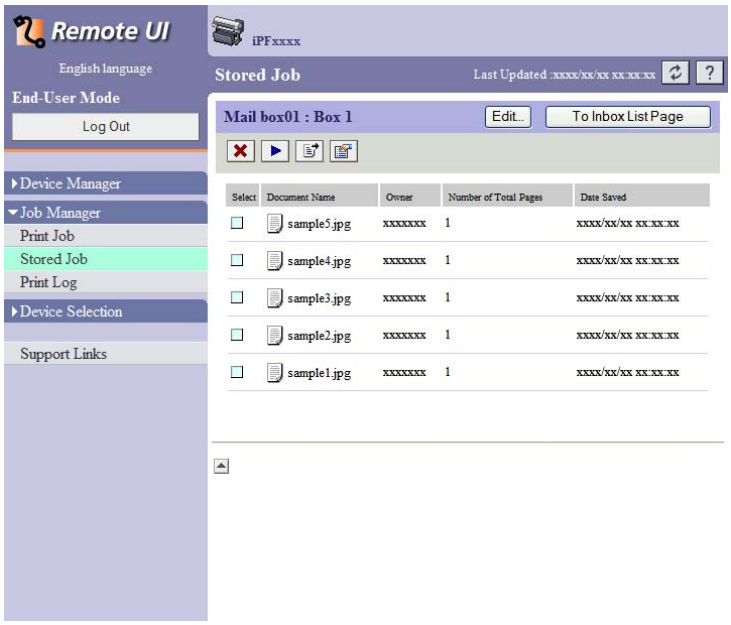


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



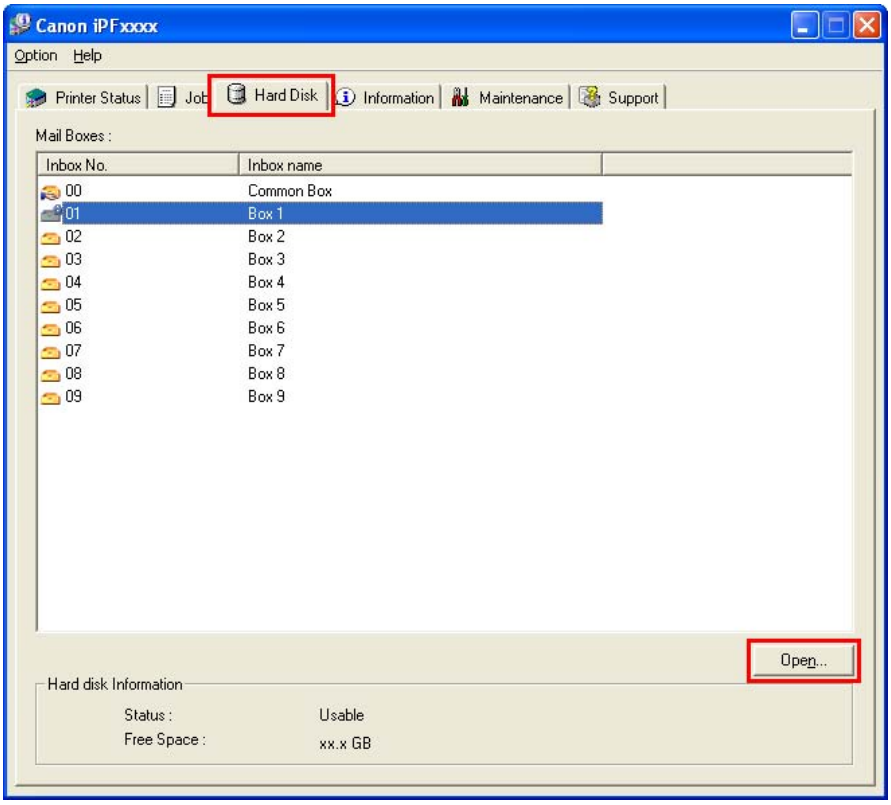
Jobs saved in the mail box are listed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

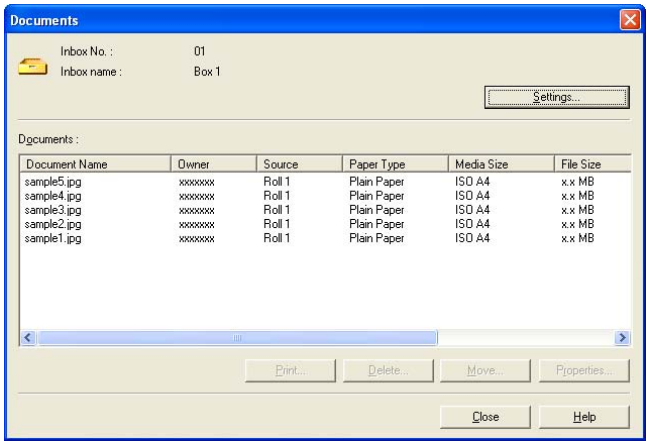
On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

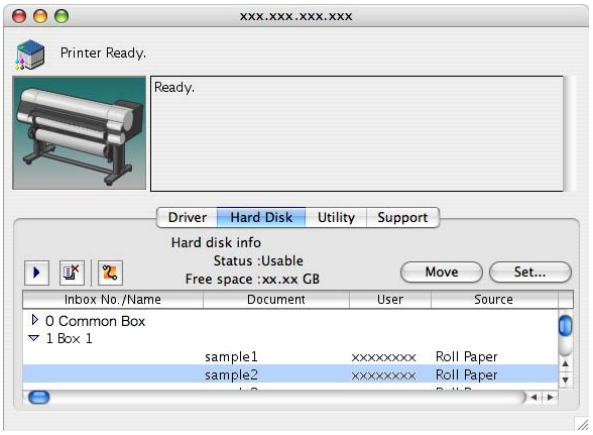
Jobs saved in that mail box are displayed in the **Documents** dialog box.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Printing a List of Saved Jobs

You can print a list of saved print jobs in the common box and each personal box.
You can also print a list of print jobs by using the Control Panel.

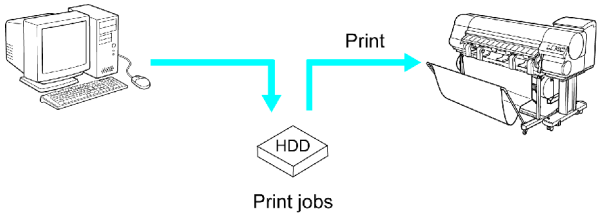
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Print a list of saved print jobs.
    1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
    2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the ► button.
    3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00-29), and then press the ► button.
    4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.
    5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the ► button.
    6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Printing Saved Jobs

You can print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)



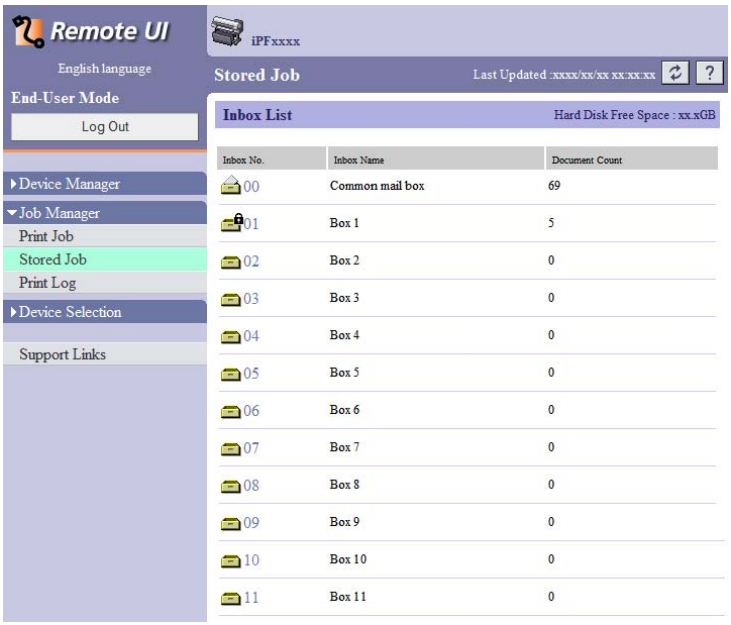
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Print the saved job.
    1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
    2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the ► button.
    3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00-29), and then press the ► button.
    4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.
    5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
    6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to print, and then press the ► button.
    7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the ► button.
    8. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

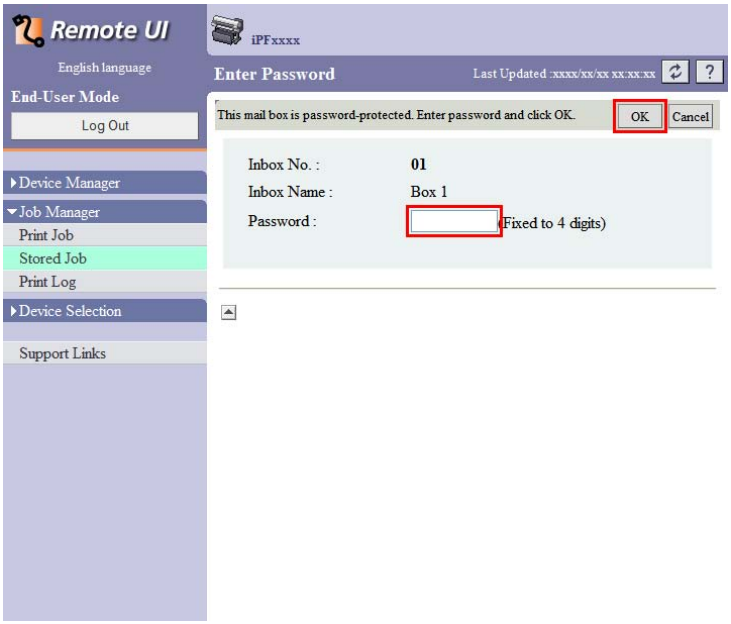
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

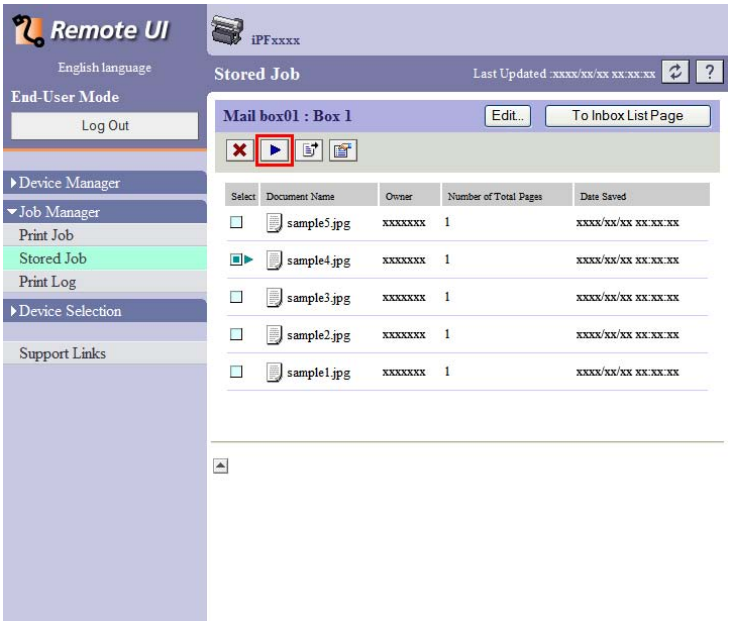


Note

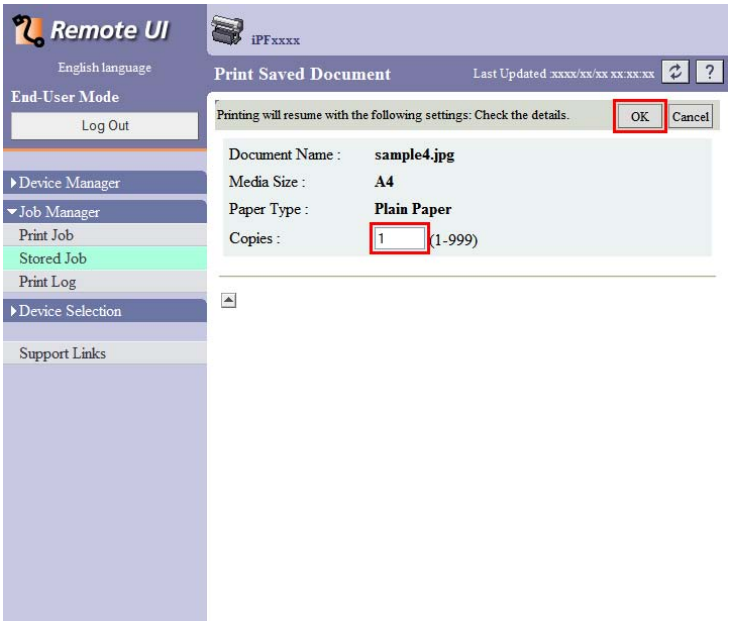
- Enter a password if one has been set.



2. Select the print job in the list and click **Print**.



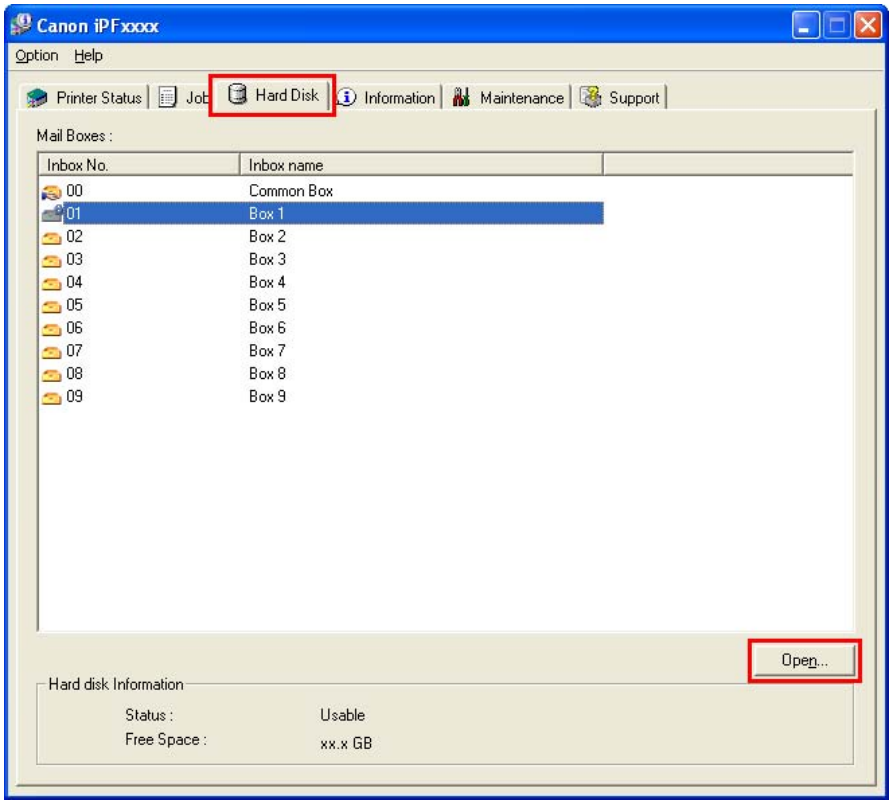
3. On the **Print Saved Document** page, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

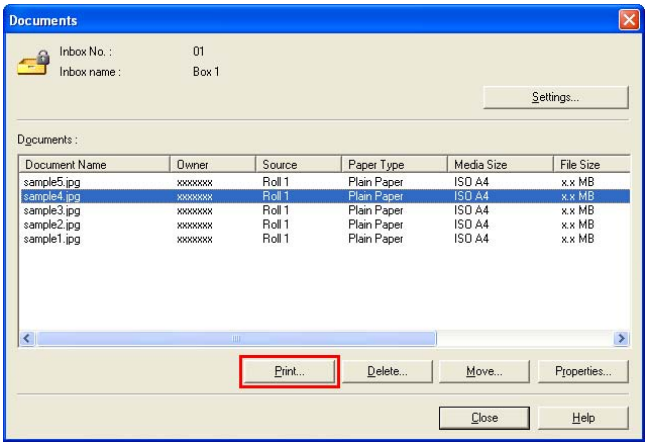
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



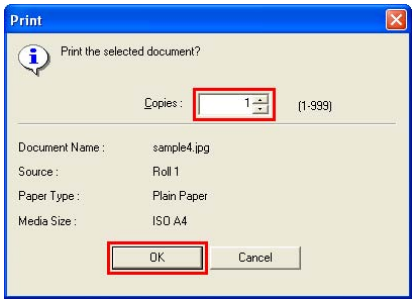
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Print**.



3. In the **Print** dialog box, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



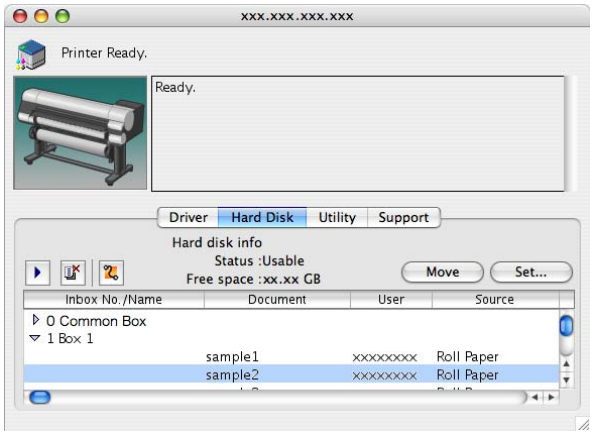
Note

- The printing time initially indicates how long it took to finish printing one copy during the previous print job.
  If you change the value in **Copies**, the printing time indicates the time it took to print one copy during the previous print job multiplied by the number of copies.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

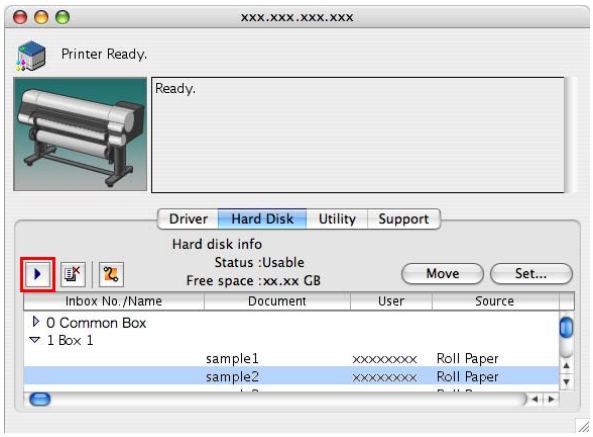
1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



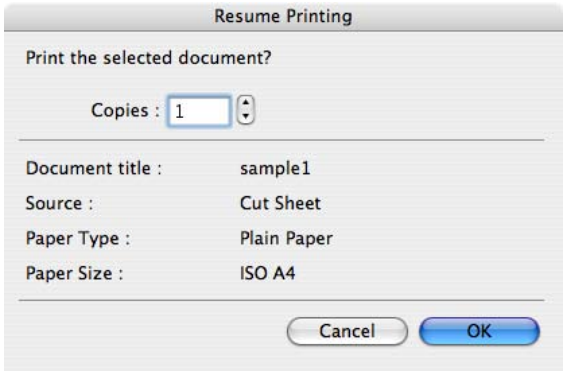
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Resume Printing** to display the **Resume Printing** dialog box.



3. Specify the number of copies and click the **OK** button.



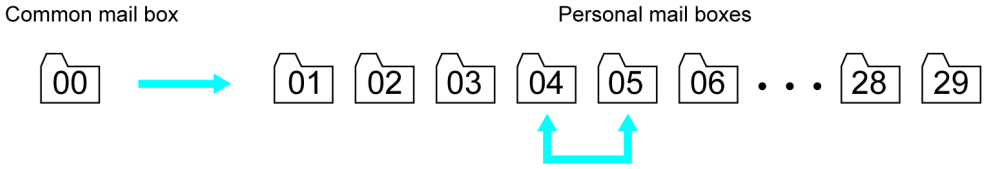
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Moving Saved Jobs

Print jobs that you have saved in the **Print** format are saved in the common box, number “00”. However, jobs in this mail box will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

- If there are more than 101 saved jobs in the common box and job queue combined
- If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs in the format **Print** or **Print (auto delete)** are received
- If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs in the format **Save in mail box** are received

You can move jobs to personal boxes “01” to “29” to prevent them from being deleted. (Up to 100 jobs can be stored here.)
You can also move saved jobs from one personal box to another.



You can move stored print jobs as follows.

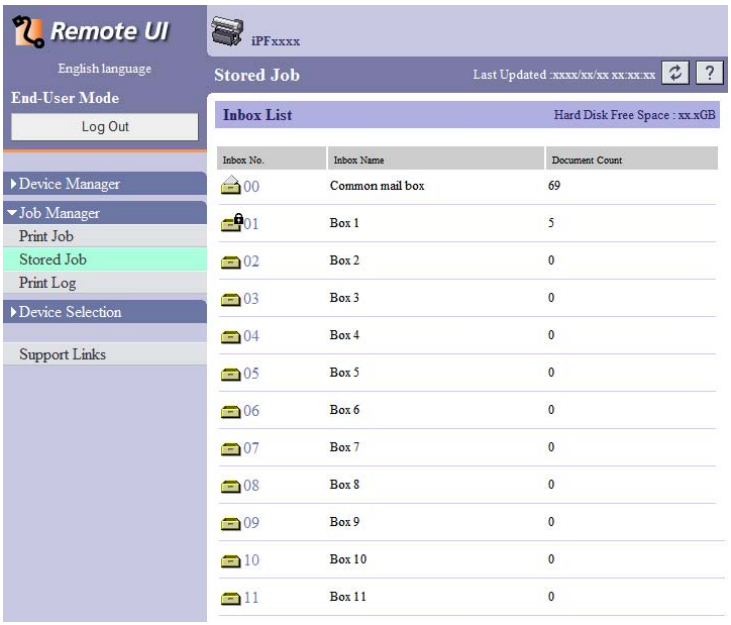
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Note

- Jobs saved in personal boxes cannot be moved to the common box.

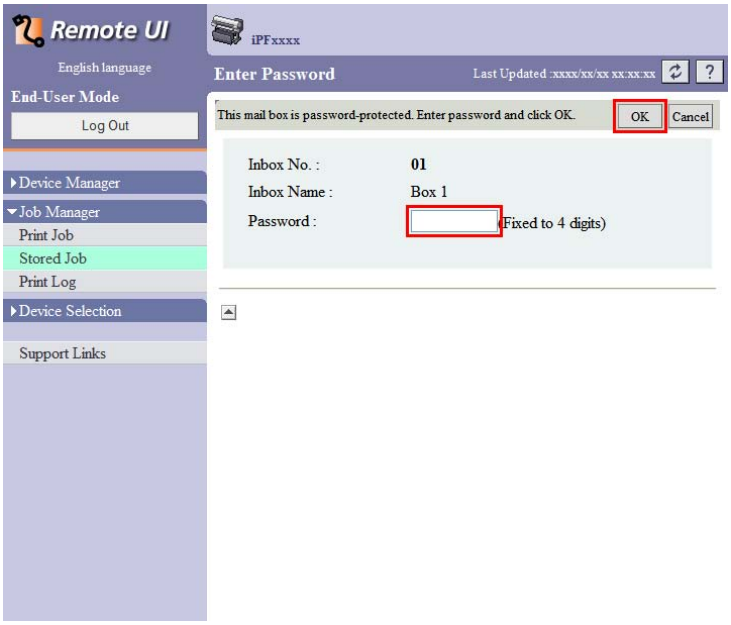
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

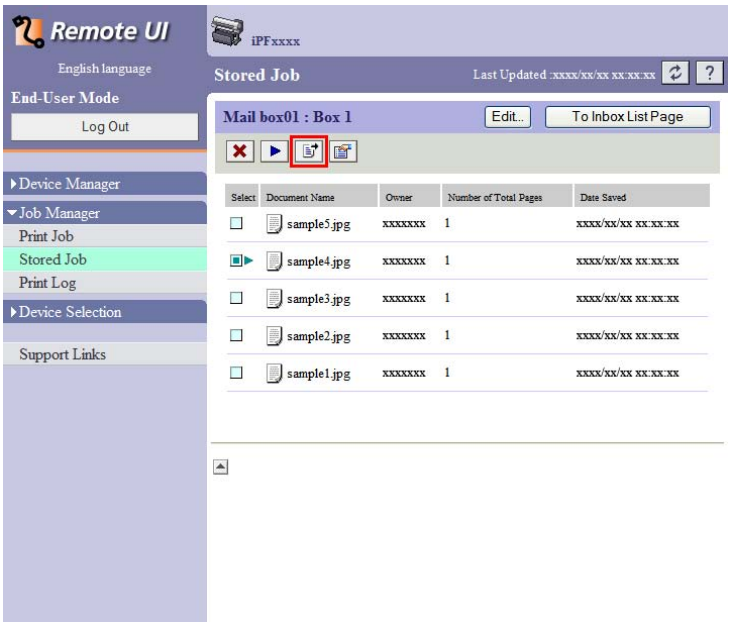


Note

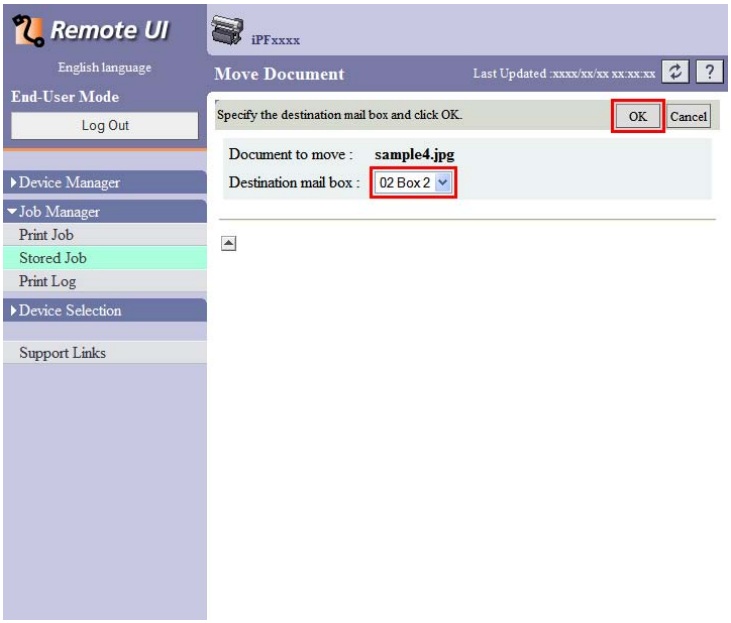
- Enter a password if one has been set.



2. Select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



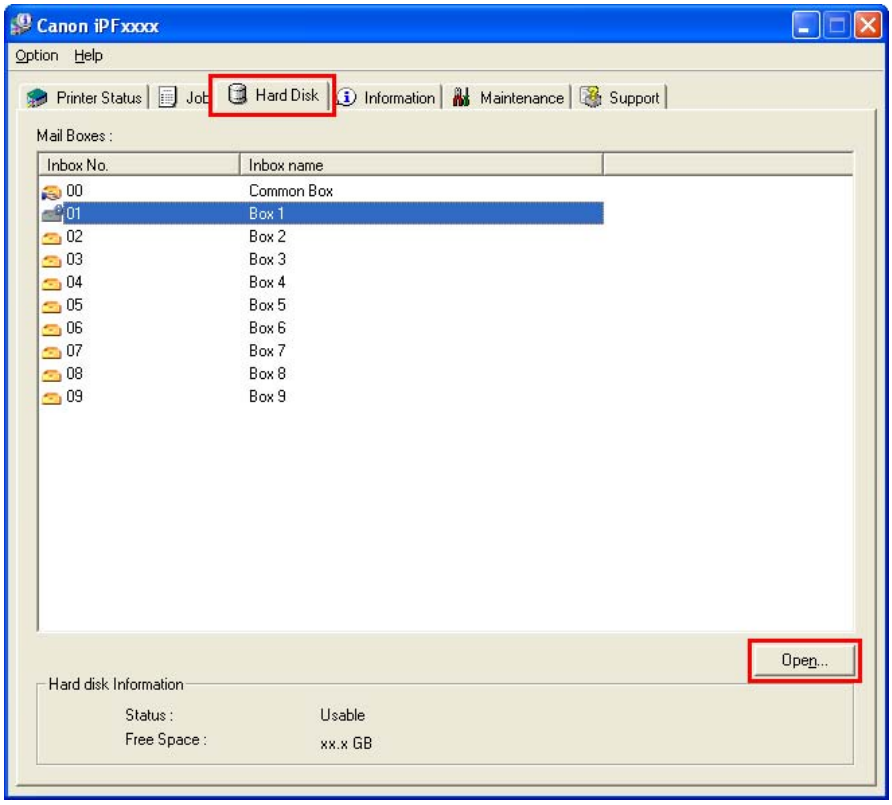
3. On the **Move Document** page, select the name or number of the destination personal box in the **Destination mail box** list and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

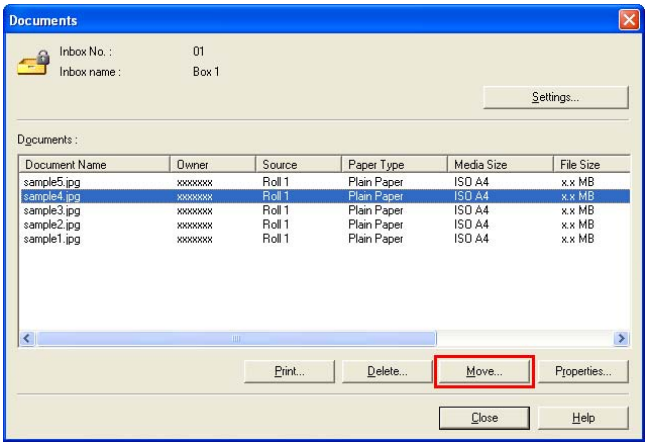
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



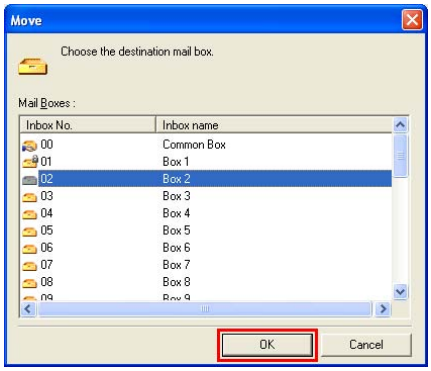
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



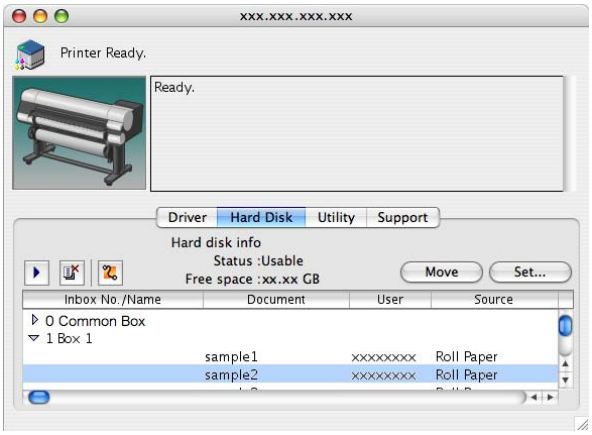
3. In the **Move** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

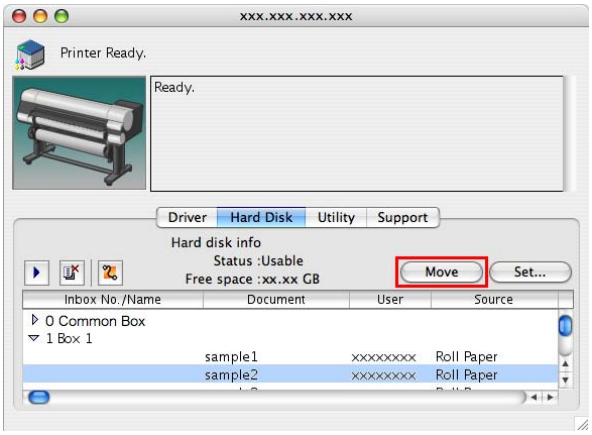
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click "►" next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



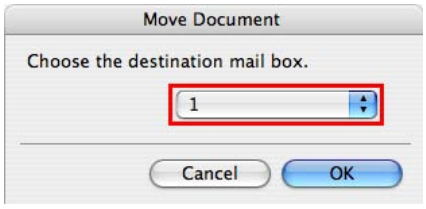
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2. Select the print job in the list and click **Move**.



3. In the **Move Document** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

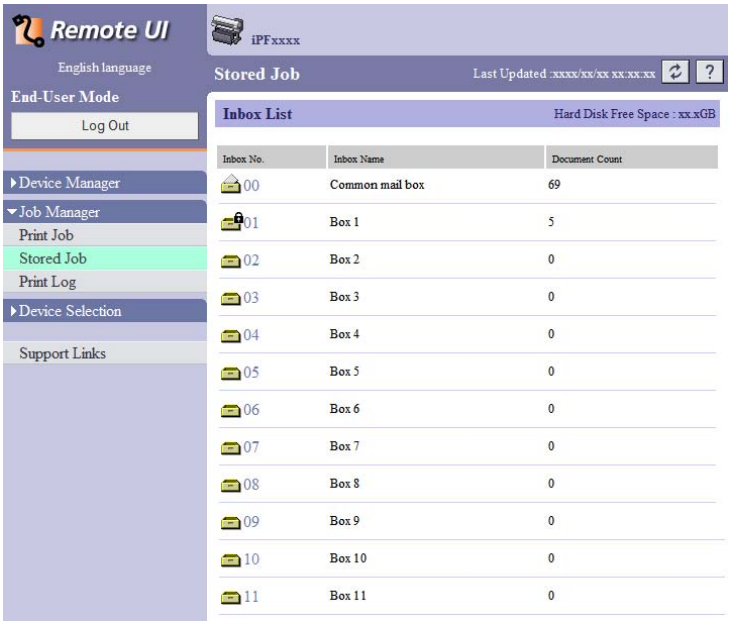
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs

You can view details of stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

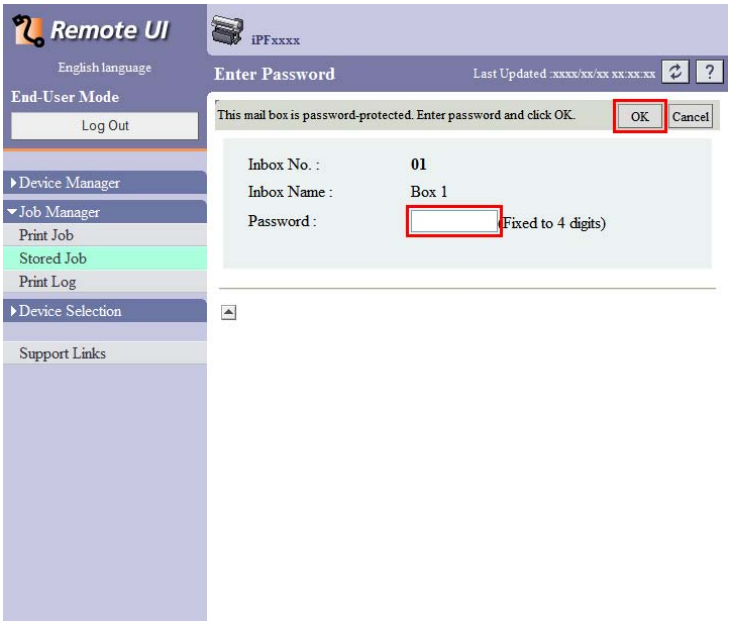
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

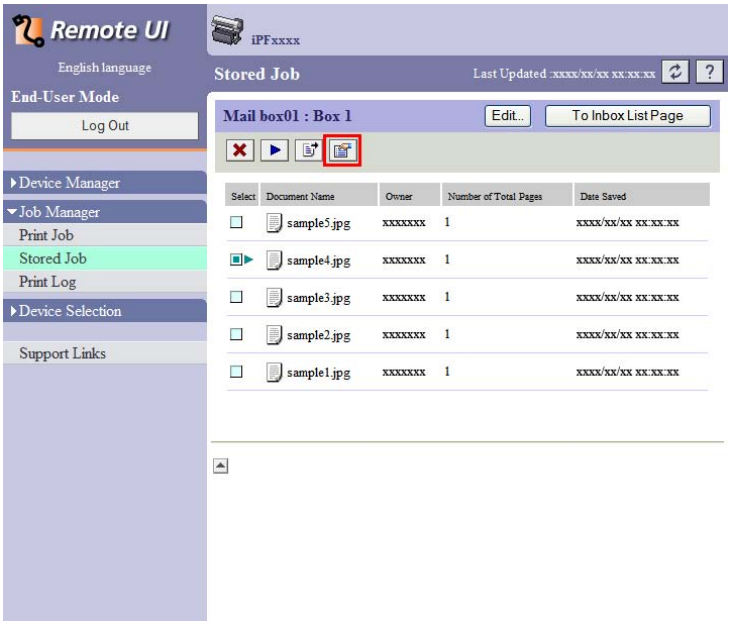


Note

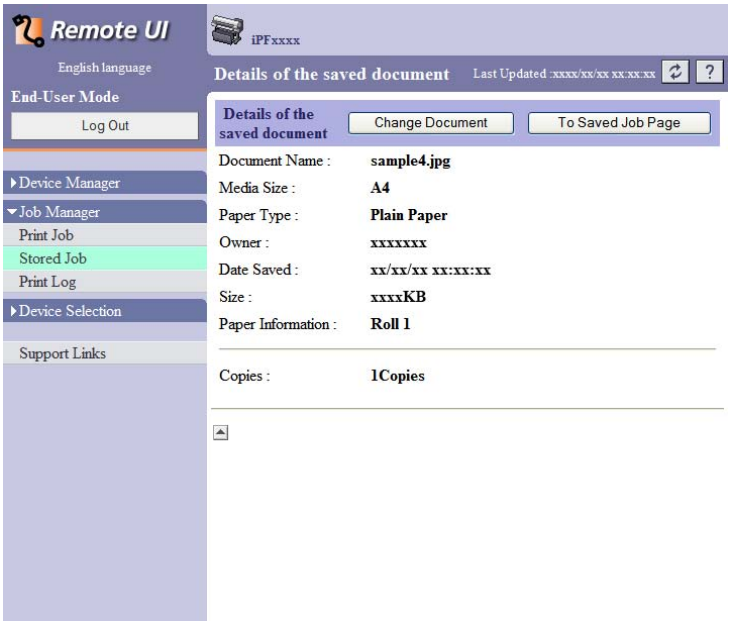
- Enter a password if one has been set.



2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Details**.



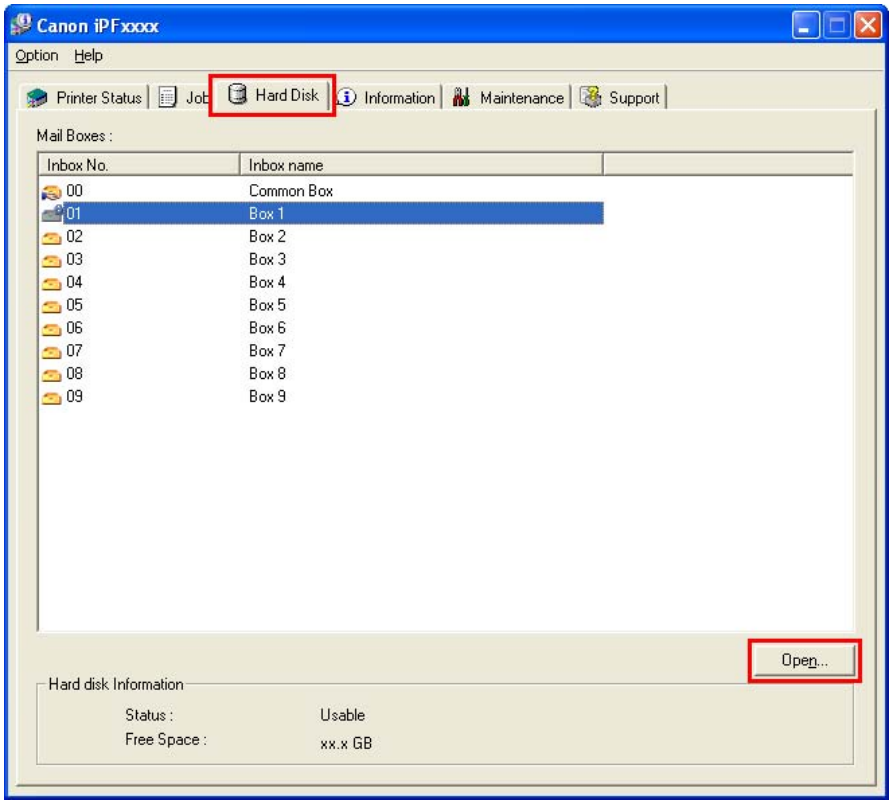
The **Details of the saved document** page is displayed.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

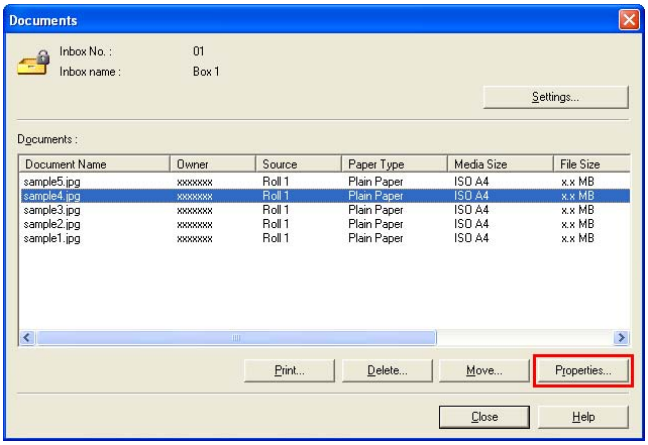
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



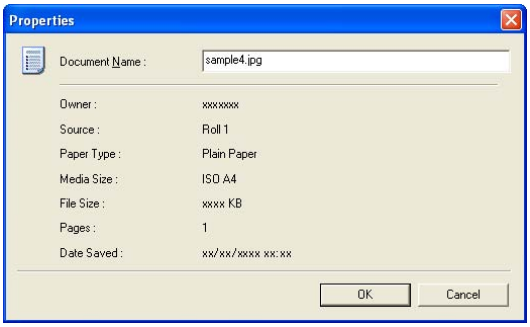
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the saved job in the list and click **Properties**.



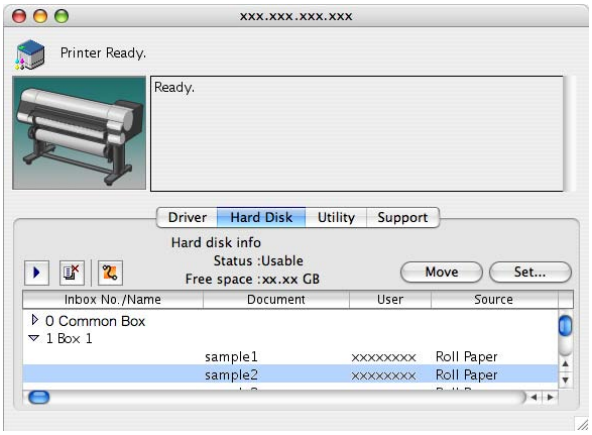
The **Properties** dialog box is displayed.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

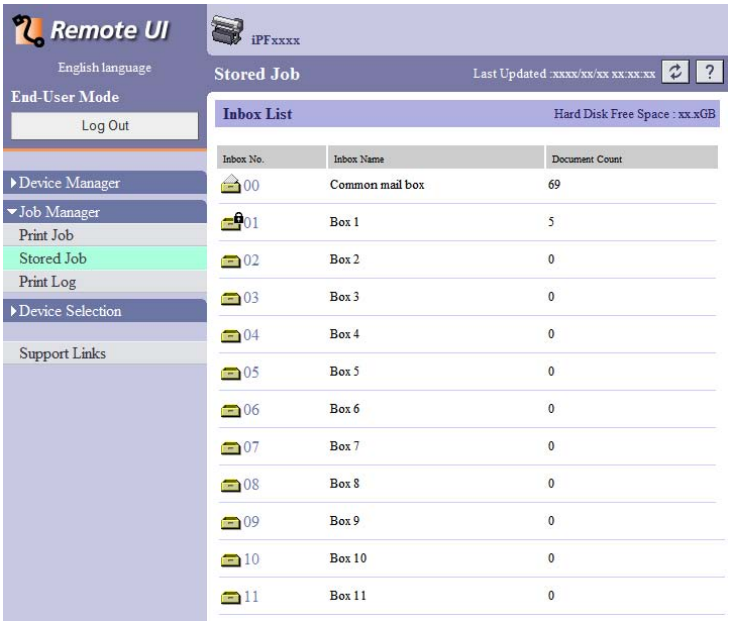
Renaming Saved Jobs

You can rename stored print jobs as follows.

- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

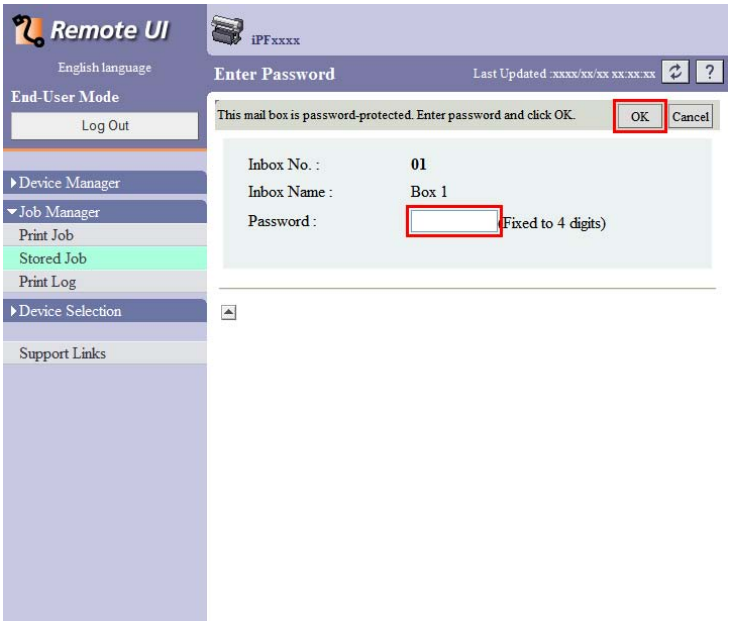
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

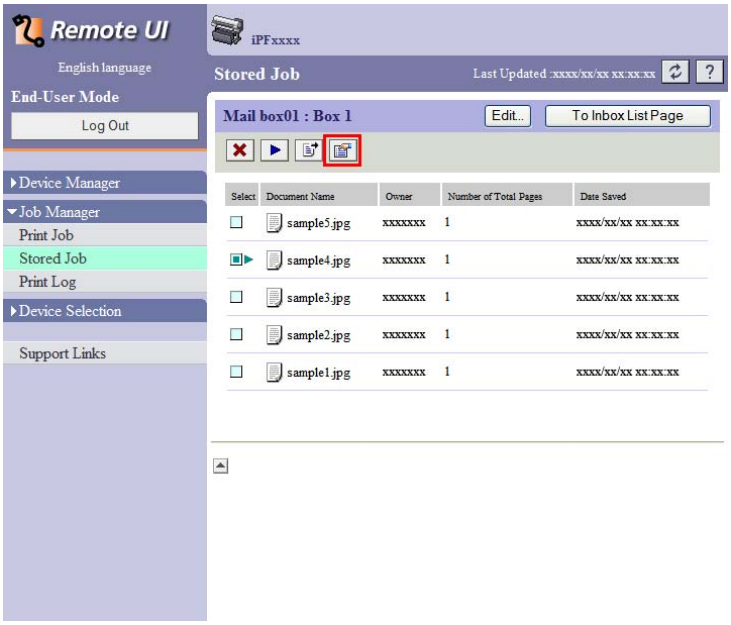


Note

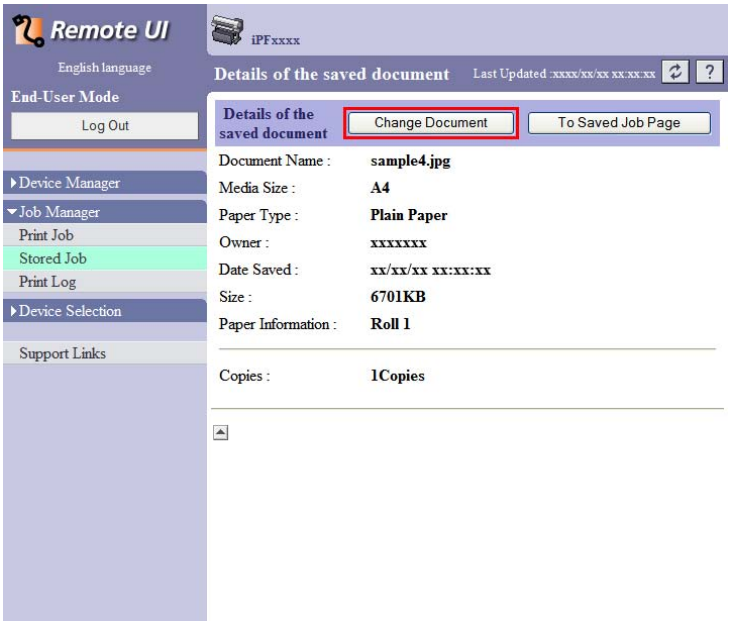
- Enter a password if one has been set.



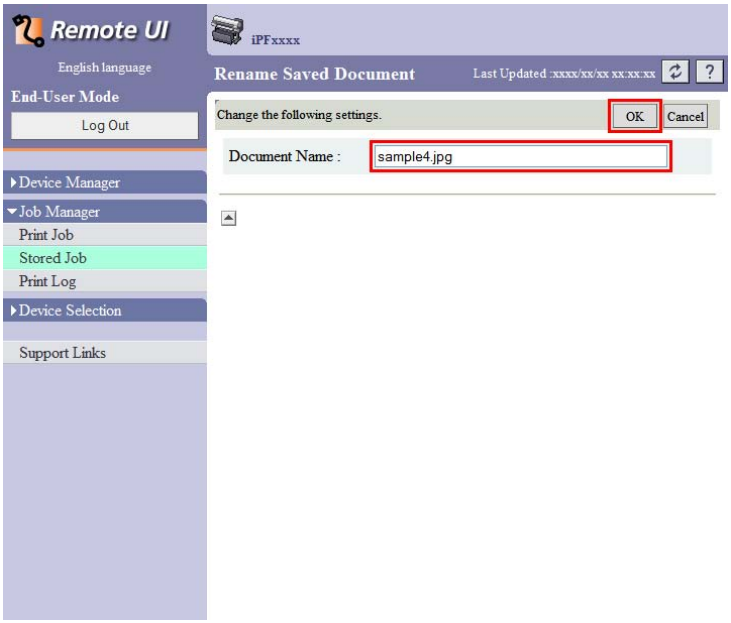
2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Details**.



3. On the **Details of the saved document** page, click **Change Document**.



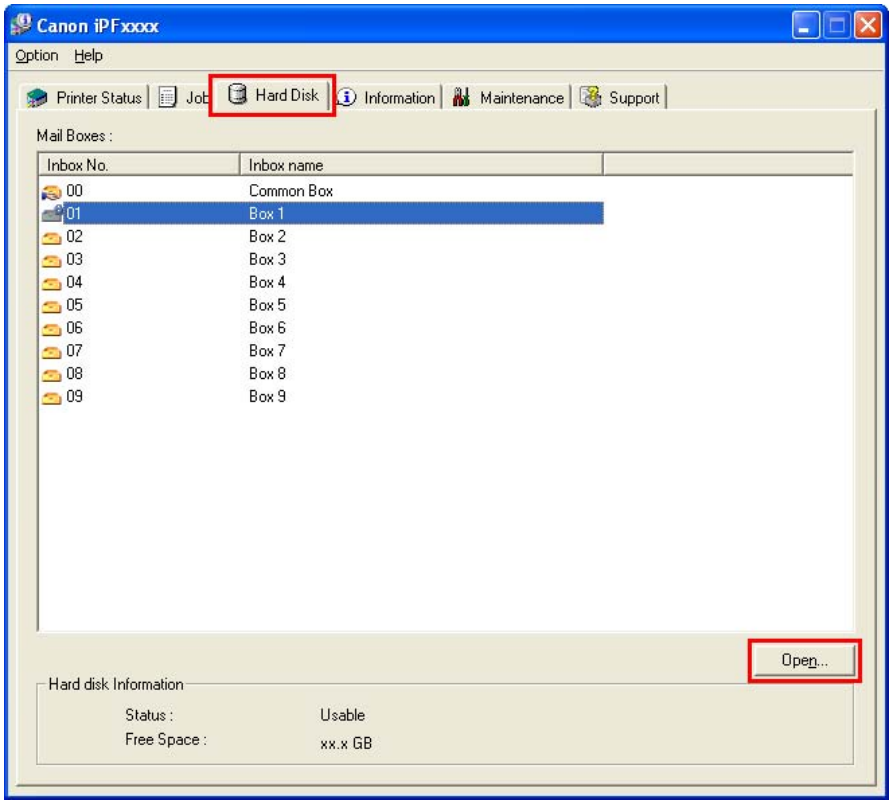
4. On the **Rename Saved Document** page, enter the new job name in **Document Name** and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

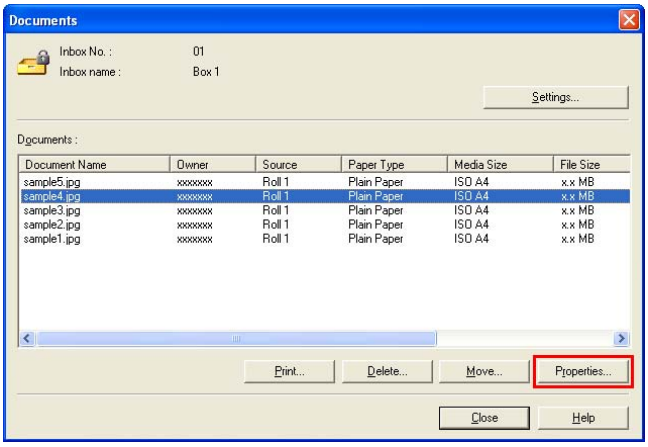
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



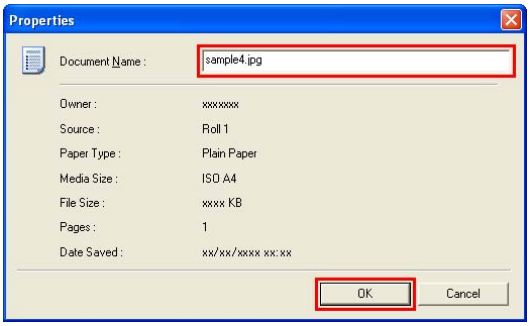
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the saved job in the list and click **Properties**.



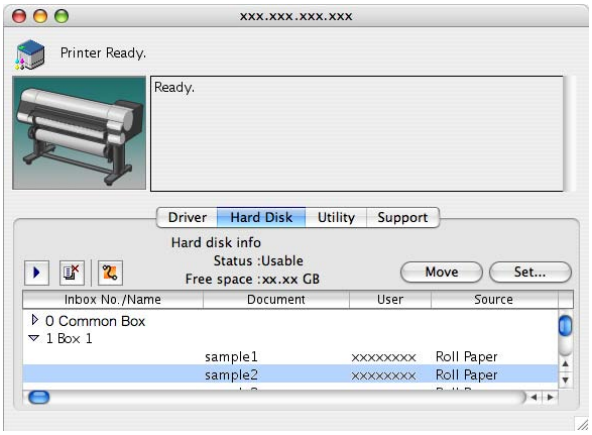
3. In the **Properties** dialog box, enter the new job name and click **OK**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

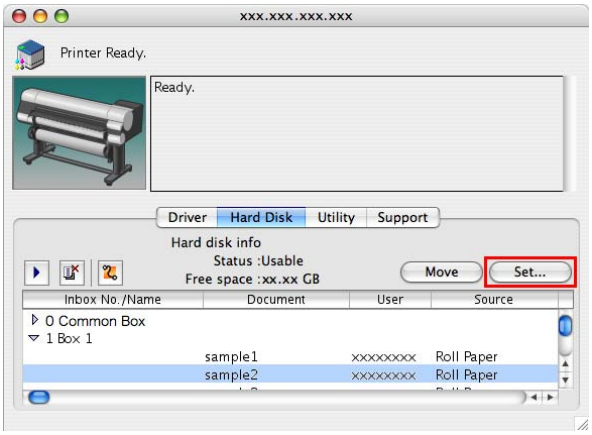
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



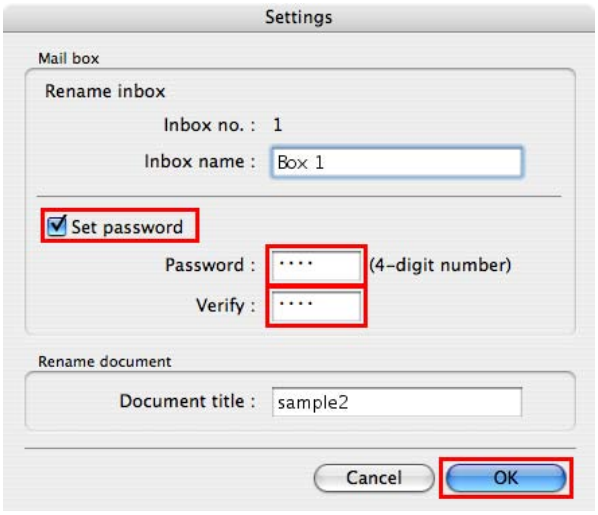
Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Set**.



3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the new job name and click **OK**.
Documents cannot be renamed unless a password has been set. In this case, specify a password. After renaming, you can cancel the password as needed.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Deleting Saved Jobs

You can delete saved jobs in the box shared among all users and in each personal box.
Delete stored print jobs as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

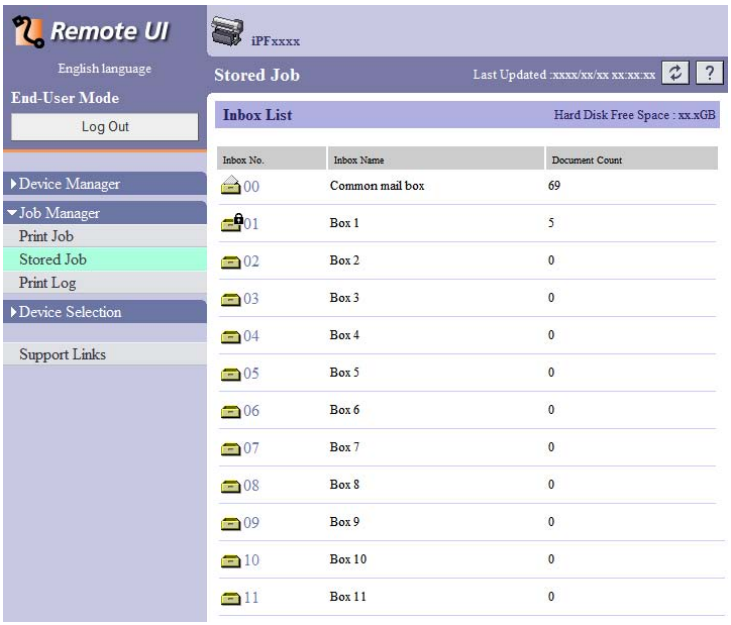
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Delete the saved job.
    1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
    2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the ► button.
    3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00-29), and then press the ► button.
    4. Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.
    5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the ► button.
    6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job to delete, and then press the ► button.
    7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the ► button.
    8. Confirm the print job for deletion and press the **OK** button.

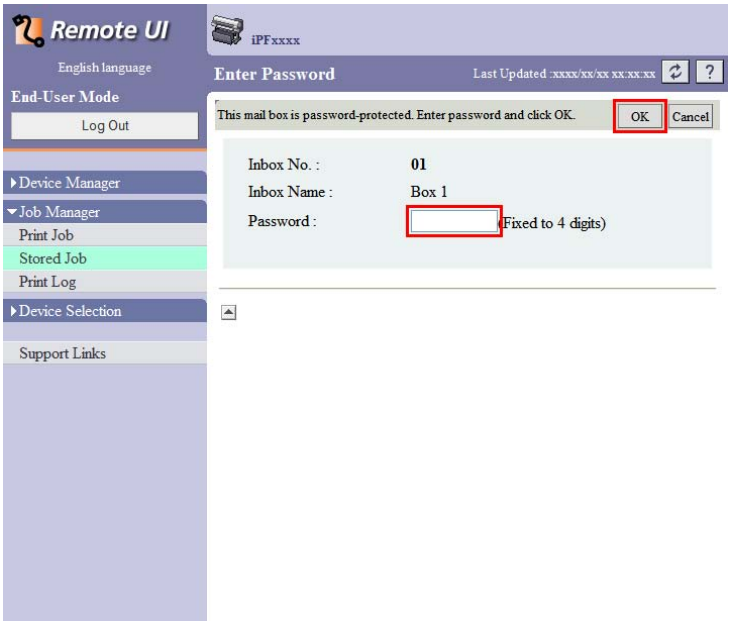
Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.

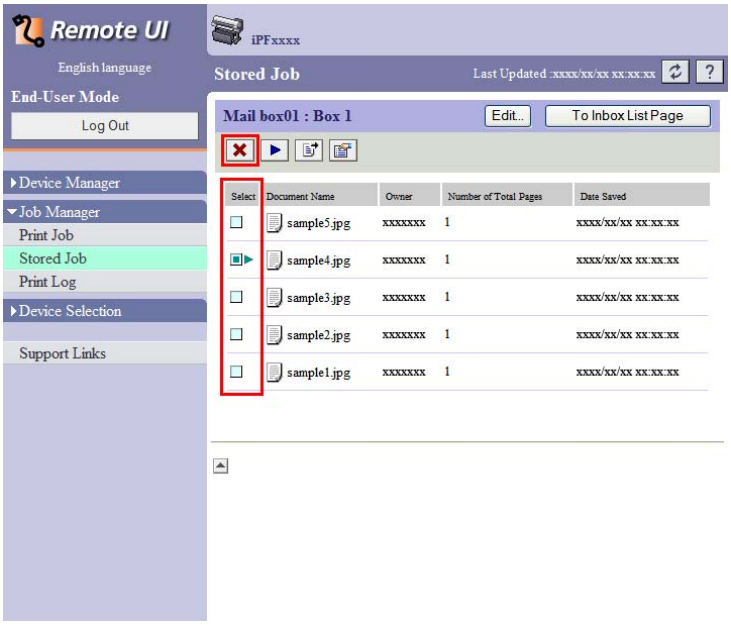


Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



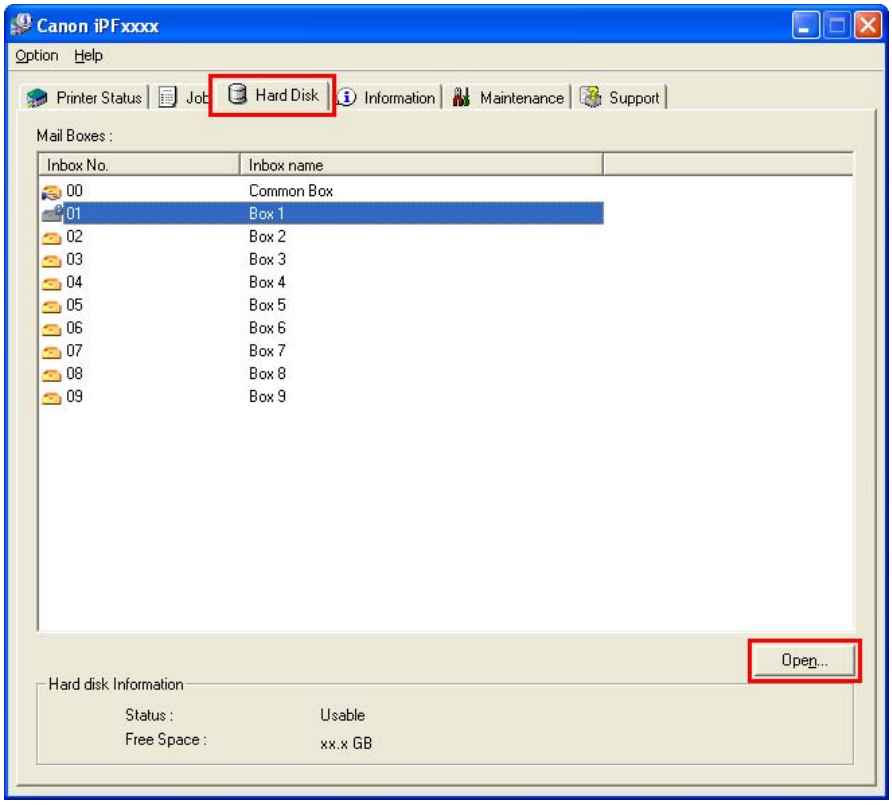
2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Delete**.



For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

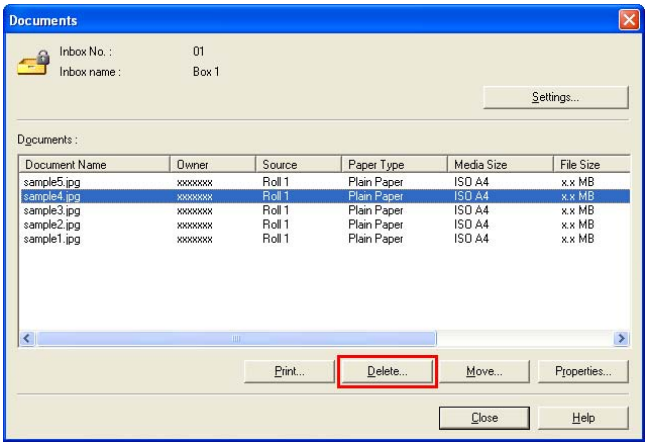
1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a mail box in the list and click **Open**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

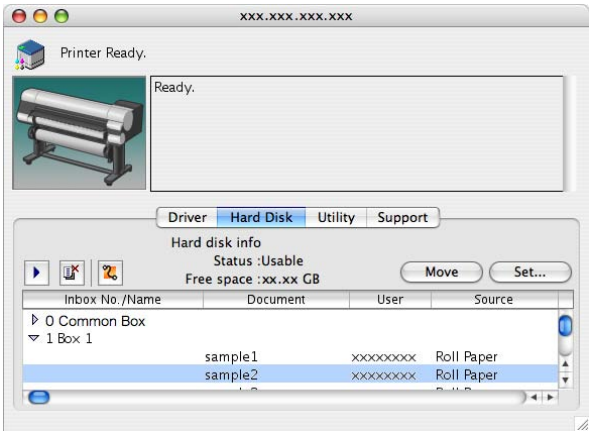
2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job in the list and click **Delete**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

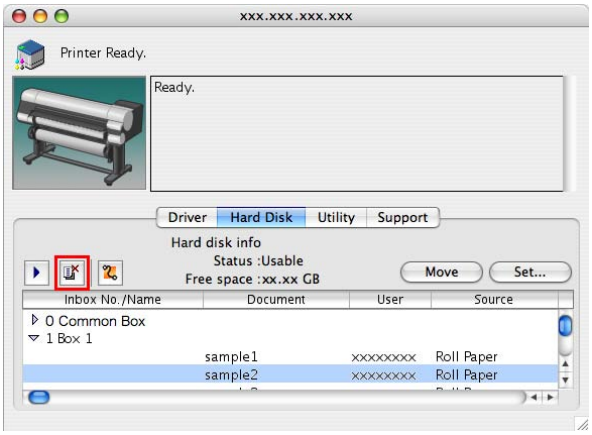
1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► next to **Inbox No./Name** to list saved jobs.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

2. Select the saved job in the list and click **Delete**.



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Checking the Free Hard Disk Space

You can check the space available on the printer's hard disk as follows.

- Using the Control Panel
- Using RemoteUI
- Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)
- Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

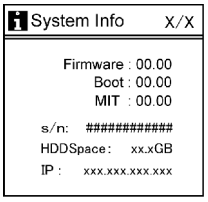
Using the Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job Management**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **HDD Information**, and then press the ► button.

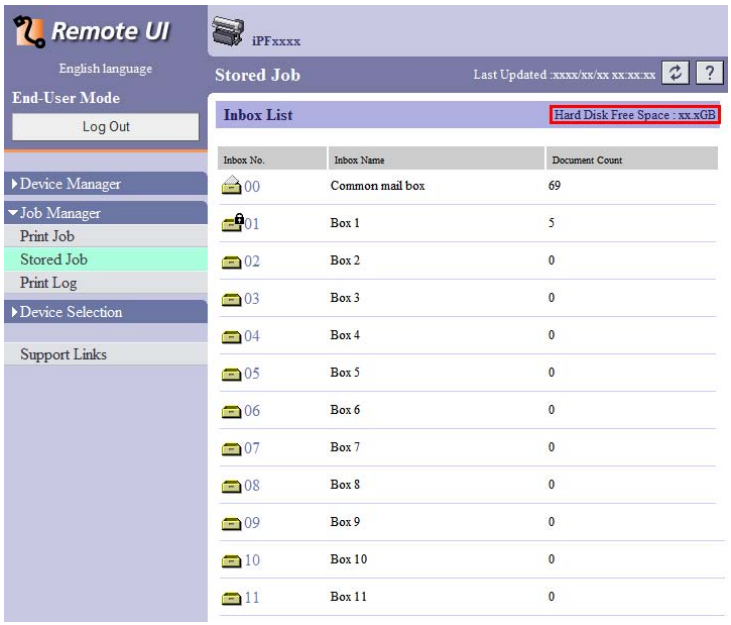
Note

- You can also check the available hard disk space in the submenu indicating printer information. Press the **Information** button to display the submenus. (→P.67)



Using RemoteUI

To view the box list, select **Stored Job** in Job Management. On the **Stored Job** page, the free hard disk space is shown in the upper-right corner when boxes are listed.

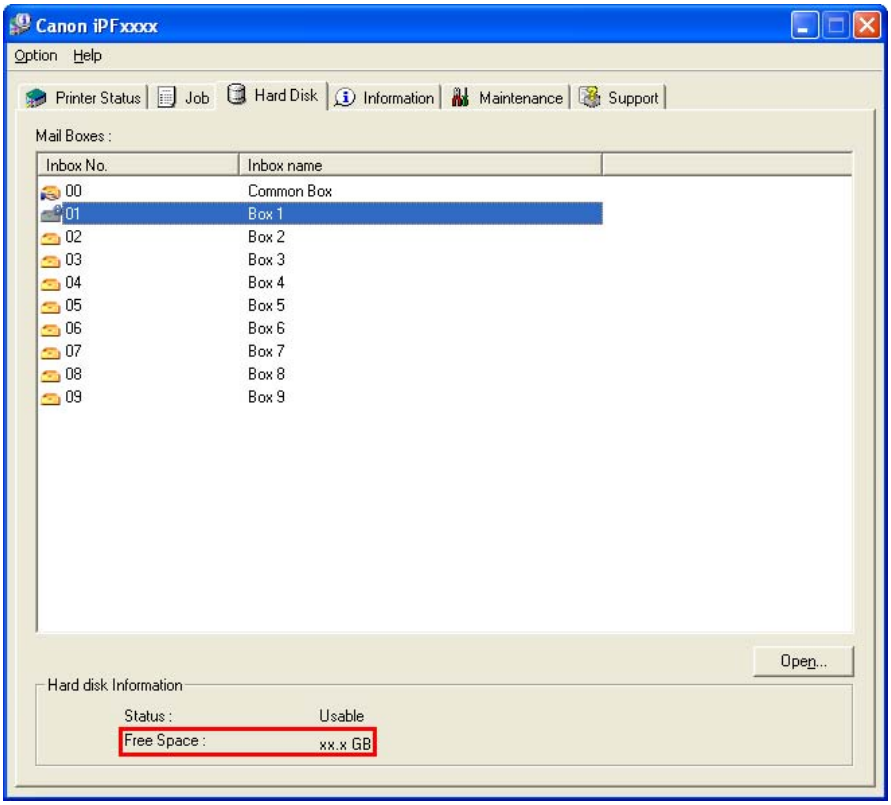


For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

The **Hard Disk** sheet shows the free hard disk space.

■Hard Disk Sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

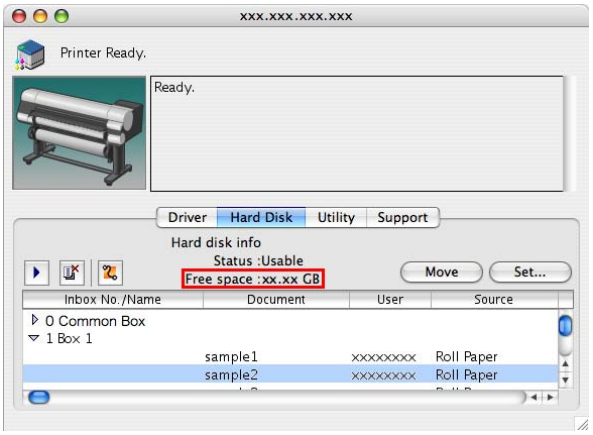


For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

The **Hard Disk** pane shows the free hard disk space.

■Hard Disk Pane in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk

You can erase data on the printer's hard disk from the Control Panel.

There are three ways to erase the data, as follows.

Erasure Method	Time Required	Details
High Speed	A few seconds	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. Choose this method for relatively fast erasure. Because only the file management data is erased, the print job data itself is not erased. Note that it may be possible to read this data using commercial data recovery software.
Secure High Spd.	About 40 minutes	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. No verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase highly confidential data. Note that it may be possible to read the overwritten data using specialized data recovery tools.
Secure	About 24 hours	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase especially confidential data. It is virtually impossible to recover the overwritten data. Conforms to the DoD5220.22-M standard of the U.S. Department of Defense.

Note

- For a more secure method of preventing data recovery, we recommend physically or magnetically destroying the hard disk. In this case, the hard disk can no longer be used.
- You cannot erase data on the hard disk during print jobs.
- Conversely, print jobs cannot be processed during erasure of hard disk data.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Erase HDD Data**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the method of erasure, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to display the confirmation screen.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to start erasure.

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

Adjusting the Printhead

Adjusting the Printhead

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the printhead.

- Printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors
  Execute **Nozzle Check** to check for printhead nozzle clogging.
  For instructions, see “Checking for Nozzle Clogging”. (→P.577)
- Printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment
  Use **Auto Head Adj.** or **Manual Head Adj** to adjust the printhead position.
  Normally, use **Auto Head Adj.**. However, when using special paper or if printing is not improved after executing **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** , try **Manual Head Adj**.
  For adjustment instructions, Automatic Straightening of Lines and Colors (Auto Head Adj.) (→P.544) or see “Manual Straightening of Lines and Colors (Manual Head Adj)”. (→P.546)
- Printed lines are misaligned
  Execute **Head Inc. Adj.** to adjust the angle of inclination of the printhead.
  Even slight misalignment can be corrected.
  For adjustment instructions, see “Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.)”. (→P.548)
- Paper rubs against the printhead, or image edges are blurred
  Executing **Head Height** to adjust the printhead height may improve printing results.
  For adjustment instructions, see “Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)”. (→P.551)

Automatic Straightening of Lines and Colors (Auto Head Adj.)

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment.
Use **Auto Head Adj.** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the printhead.
Auto Head Adj. offers two modes, **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.**.
Standard Adj. will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try **Advanced Adj.**.

Note

- If advanced adjustment does not improve printing results, or if you are using special paper, try manual adjustment.
  For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Manual Straightening of Lines and Colors (Manual Head Adj)”. (→P.546)
- Use **Standard Adj.** if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as attractive as possible.
- Use **Advanced Adj.** to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if you want printed documents to appear as vivid as possible. We recommend using **Advanced Adj.** for printing at a higher level of image quality.
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
- This function is not available with CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of paper, or try adjust the Printhead alignment manually. (→P.546)

Paper to Prepare

Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	**Standard Adj.** : One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size **Advanced Adj.** : Five sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2 or larger, or two sheets when using A3 loaded lengthwise)

Execute **Auto Head Adj.** as follows.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Head Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Standard Adj.** or **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.
   Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.
7. If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Advanced Adj.**, a confirmation message is displayed asking you whether to continue printing. Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions displayed.

Manual Straightening of Lines and Colors (Manual Head Adj)

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment.
With **Manual Head Adj**, you can manually adjust the Printhead alignment by printing and reading a test pattern. You can adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually. Normally, choose automatic adjustment. If advanced adjustment does not improve printing results, or if you are using special paper, try manual adjustment.
For instructions on straightening lines and colors automatically, see “Automatic Straightening of Lines and Colors (Auto Head Adj.)”. (→P.544)

Note

- If **Manual Head Adj** is not available although displayed in the menu, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.**. **Manual Head Adj** is available in the menu after you try **Advanced Adj.** once.
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

Paper to Prepare

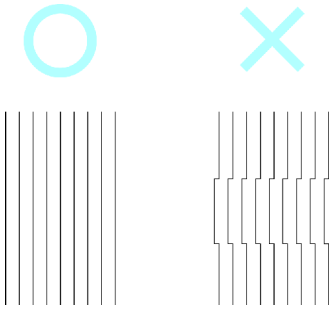
Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

Execute **Manual Head Adj** as follows.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Head Adj**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the ► button.

8. Examine test pattern **D-1** for printhead adjustment and determine the number of the pattern with straight lines.



Note

- If lines seem straightest in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.
10. Repeat steps 7 and 9 to specify the adjustment value for **D-2** to **D-5** and **D-7** to **D-11**.
11. Press the ◄ button.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the ► button.
13. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
    The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.)

If printed lines are misaligned, try adjusting the angle of the Printhead. Even slight misalignment can be corrected. Adjust the Printhead orientation by printing and reading a test pattern.

Paper to Prepare

Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

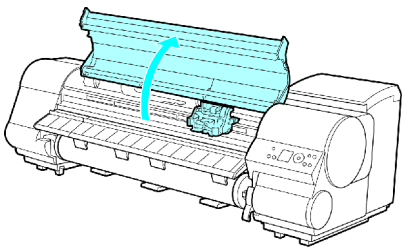
Execute **Head Inc. Adj.** as follows.

1. Load the paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)

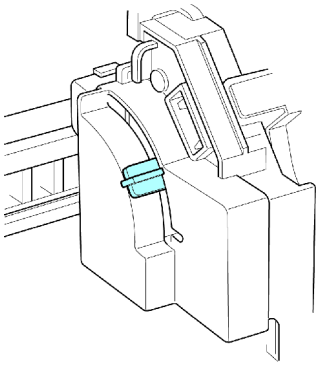
   Note
   - When loading paper, specify the type of paper correctly. Using paper that you have not specified on the printer may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.
   - We recommend loading a type of paper that you use often.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Inc. Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the Printhead is moved, a message is displayed requesting you to open the Top Cover.
6. Open the Top Cover.



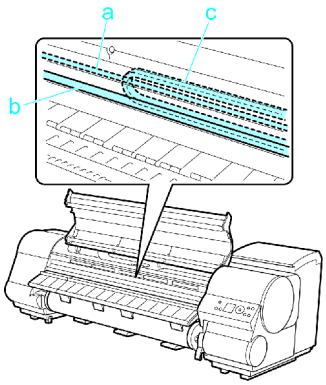
7. Align the Angle Adjustment Lever with the red square and close the Top Cover.



A test pattern is printed for adjustment.

Important

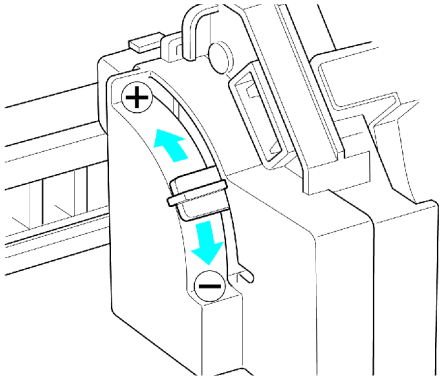
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



8. Examine the test pattern for adjustment. Determine the straightest set of lines.

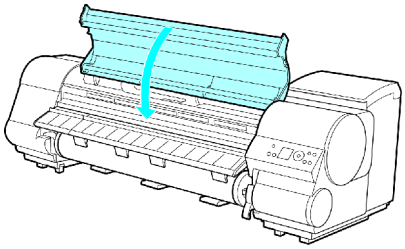
9. Open the Top Cover and move the Angle Adjustment Lever to match the number (or the square) of the straightest set of lines.

If no single set of lines is perfectly straight, move the Angle Adjustment Lever to a position between the numbers (or between the number and the square) of the two sets of lines that are least misaligned.



10. Close the Top Cover.

The Printhead is now straight, and adjustment is complete.



Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)

If paper rubs against the printer or the edge is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the Printhead height may improve results.
If image edges are blurred, it may help to lower the Printhead.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Printhead height, and then press the **OK** button.

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

- Banding in different colors
- Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

1. Depending on the issue, change the **Feed Priority** setting for the particular type of paper. (→P.553)
2. Based on the **Feed Priority** setting, use **Auto Band Adj.**, **Manual Band Adj**, or **Adjust Length**. (→P.554) (→P.556) (→P.559)
3. If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Auto Band Adj.** or **Manual Band Adj**, use **Fine Band Adj.** in the **Menu Durng Prtng**. (→P.558)

Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority)

Methods of adjusting the amount paper is fed are set for each type of paper, in the **Feed Priority** setting. Adjust the **Feed Priority** setting to suit your particular printing application.

- **Band Joint** : Adjusts the feed amount to reduce banding across the sheet in printed documents.
  The settings of **Auto Band Adj.** or **Manual Band Adj** are applied. If you have executed **Fine Band Adj.**, in addition to the settings of **Auto Band Adj.** or **Manual Band Adj**, the settings of **Fine Band Adj.** are also applied.
- **Print Length** : Adjusts the feed amount for better accuracy of lines in printed documents.
  The settings of **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in the **Adjust Length** menu are applied.
- **Automatic** : **Band Joint** or **Print Length** is selected, depending on **Print Priority** as selected in the printer driver at the time of printing.
  Image or **Office Document** : **Band Joint** is selected.
  Line Drawing/Text : **Print Length** is selected.

Note

- Use **Manual Band Adj** for transparent media or other paper for which adjustment with **Auto Band Adj.** is not possible.
- Either **B:Standard/Draft** or **A:High** in the **Adjust Length** menu is applied, depending on printer driver settings at the time of printing.
- If you have selected **Easy Settings** in the printer driver, follow these steps to confirm the **Print Priority** setting.
  - Windows: Click **View Settings** on the **Main** tab to display the **View Settings** dialog box.
  - Mac OS X: Click **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.

Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Automatic**, **Band Joint** or **Print Length** and then press the **OK** button.

Auto Band Adjustment (Auto Band Adj.)

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed.
Auto Band Adj. offers two modes, **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.**. Use **Advanced Adj.** if **Standard Adj.** does not eliminate banding, or when using paper other than genuine Canon paper or paper for purposes other than checking output.
Always check the **Feed Priority** setting before using **Auto Band Adj.**. (→P.553)

Note

- When using highly transparent media not compatible with **Auto Band Adj.**, you must adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.556)
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Auto Band Adj.**, use **Fine Band Adj.**. (→P.558)
- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.559)
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

Paper to Prepare

Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	**Standard Adj.** : One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size **Advanced Adj.** : Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2 or larger)

Execute **Auto Band Adj.** as follows.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)

   Note

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Band Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Standard Adj.** or **Advanced Adj.**, and then press the ► button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for band adjustment.
   Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or on sheets of A2 size or larger.
7. If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Standard Adj.**, a confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen, requesting you to continue printing. Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions on the Display Screen.

Manual Band Adjustment (Manual Band Adj)

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed.

Use **Manual Band Adj** for transparent media or other paper for which adjustment with **Auto Band Adj.** is not possible.
We recommend automatic adjustment for other types of paper. (→P.554)
Always check the **Feed Priority** setting before using **Manual Band Adj**. (→P.553)

Note

- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Manual Band Adj**, use **Fine Band Adj.**. (→P.558)
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

Paper to Prepare

Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

Execute **Manual Band Adj** as follows.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)

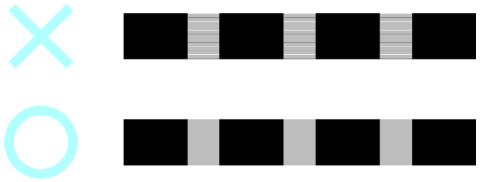
   Note

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual Band Adj**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Test pattern A is printed for band adjustment.

6. Examine test pattern A for band adjustment. Determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable.



Note

- If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the number selected in step 6, and then press the **OK** button.
   Test pattern B is printed for band adjustment.
8. Examine test pattern B for band adjustment. Determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the number selected in step 8, and then press the **OK** button.
   The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

Banding Adjustment During Printing (Fine Band Adj.)

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears at 50 mm (2 in.) intervals, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. The results of adjustment are applied to printing in progress, enabling you to check the results immediately. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.
Use **Fine Band Adj.** after **Auto Band Adj.** or **Manual Band Adj** if finer adjustment is required. (→P.554) (→P.556)

Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value is reset to 0 if you use **Auto Band Adj.** or **Manual Band Adj**.

Execute **Fine Band Adj.** during printing as follows.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display the menu during printing. (→P.66)

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Menu Durng Prtng**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

6. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.

Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length)

Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length.

In the **Adjust Length** menu, choose the mode of length adjustment (**A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft**) that suits your particular printing application.

- **A:High** : This setting is applied when **Highest** or **High** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.
- **B:Standard/Draft** : This setting is applied when **Standard** or **Draft** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.

Check the **Feed Priority** setting before using **Adjust Length**. (→P.553)

Note

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- If you have selected **Easy Settings** on the printer, follow these steps to confirm the **Print Quality** setting.
  - Windows: Click **View Settings** on the **Main** tab to display the **View Settings** dialog box.
  - Mac OS X: Click **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.

Paper to Prepare

Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

Follow these steps to change the **Adjust Length** setting.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)

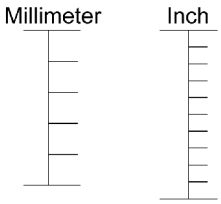
   Note

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified in the settings. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft**, and then press the ► button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment based on the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage.
The scale bar shows “Millimeter” in 50 mm units and “Inch” in 1 inch units.



Note

- A test pattern is printed in black when you choose **A:High** or in magenta if you choose **B:Standard/Draft**.
- To cancel printing the test pattern for adjustment, hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more, and then go to step 7.

7. Measure the length of the adjustment pattern. Calculate the difference between the measured length and actual length. Enter it as a percentage and press the **OK** button.
You can adjust the value in 0.02% increments. Press ▲ to increase the value or ▼ to decrease it.
If the scale is printed shorter than actual size, set the value toward the positive side; if it is printed longer, set the value toward the negative side.

Note

- You can also specify the adjustment value in **Adjust Length** in the **Paper Details** menu. In this case, no test pattern for adjustment is printed.

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if paper rubs against the printer or the edge is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of suction against paper on the Platen, and then press the **OK** button.

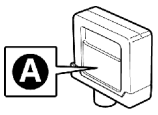
Maintenance

Ink Tanks

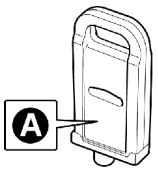
Ink Tanks

Ink tanks that can be used in the printer are labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing ink tanks, make sure an “A” is printed on the label, along with the following Ink Tank serial numbers.

- 330 ml (11.2 fl oz)
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-303MBK
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-303BK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-303C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-303M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-303Y



- 700 ml (23.7 fl oz)
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-703MBK
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-703BK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-703C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-703M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-703Y



Note

- For instructions on ink tank replacement, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.563)

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible ink tanks

Replacement ink tanks in 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) and 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) capacities are supported.
These ink tanks are labeled with a white letter “A” in a black circle on the side. Request ink tanks with the same label when you purchase new ones. For details, see “Ink Tanks”. (→P.562)

Precautions when handling ink tanks

Take the following precautions when handling ink tanks.

Caution

- For safety, keep ink tanks out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

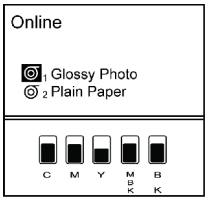
- When it is time to install ink tanks, before opening the pouch tilt the tank to the left and right gently seven or eight times. If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.
- Do not remove and agitate ink tanks that have already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the ink supply section of ink tanks you remove. Handle ink tanks carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Printing quality may be affected if you use older ink tanks.
- Do not leave the printer without ink tanks installed for extended periods (a month or more). Residual ink may become clogged inside the printer and affect printing quality.
- If you pause printing to replace an ink tank, it may cause uneven colors in the printed image.

How to replace an Ink Tank

1. Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement. (→P.564)
2. Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement. (→P.564) (Otherwise, open the Ink Tank Cover.)
3. Remove the Ink Tank.
    - 330 ml ink tanks (→P.565)
    - 700 ml ink tanks (→P.567)
4. Load the new Ink Tank.
    - 330 ml ink tanks (→P.569)
    - 700 ml ink tanks (→P.571)

Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement

You can replace ink tanks if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Online** or **Offline**, or if messages advise you to check the amount of ink left or replace ink tanks.



If a message requests you to replace ink tanks, press the **OK** button.

Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printhead cleaning.

Note

- Ink Tank replacement is possible even when print jobs are being canceled or if paper is being advanced.

Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement

Note

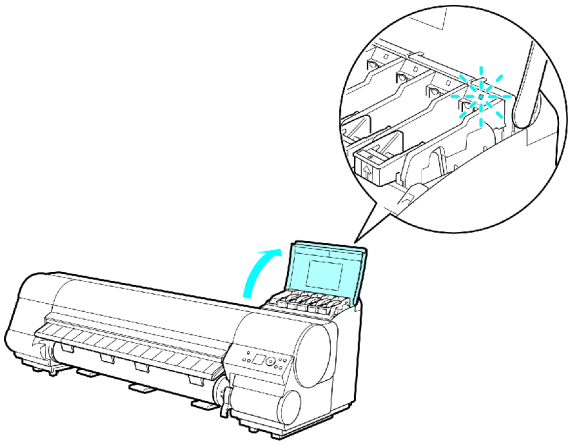
- This step is not necessary if a message requests you to replace ink tanks. Check the message on the Display Screen and press the **OK** button. Remove the Ink Tank at this point.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Remove the Ink Tank at this point.

Remove the Ink Tank (330 ml)

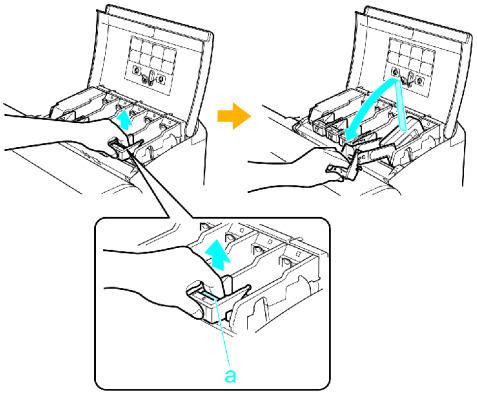
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover of the tank for replacement and check the Ink Lamp.
   The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



Caution

- Avoid hitting the printer when replacing an Ink Tank. Handle the printer gently when replacing tanks.

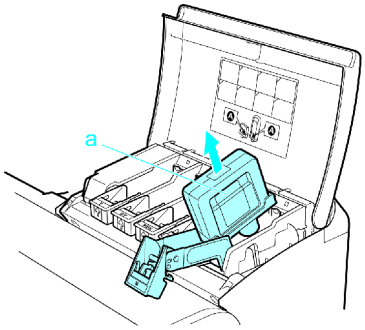
2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever for the color to replace. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.



Important

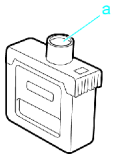
- Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever down until it locks.
- Make sure the Ink Tank Lock Lever does not return to the original position.

3. Hold the Ink Tank by the grips (a) and remove it. Press the **OK** button.



Note

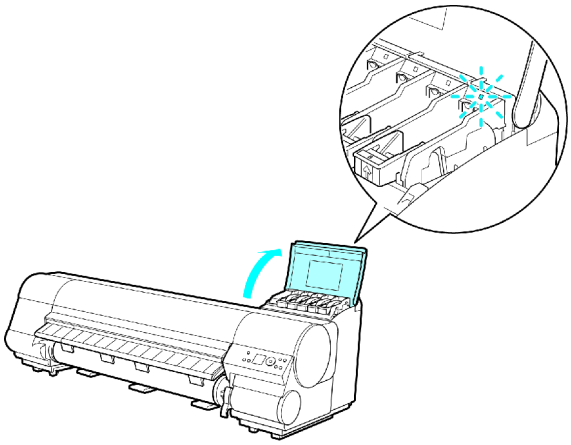
- If there is still ink in the Ink Tank you removed, store it with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.



- Dispose of used ink tanks according to local regulations.

Remove the Ink Tank (700 ml)

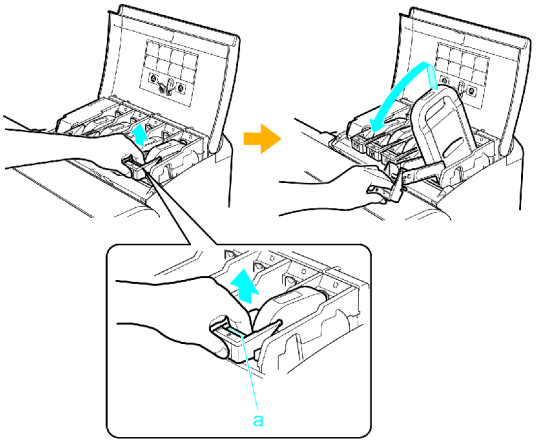
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover of the tank for replacement and check the Ink Lamp.
   The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



Caution

- Avoid hitting the printer when replacing an Ink Tank. Handle the printer gently when replacing tanks.

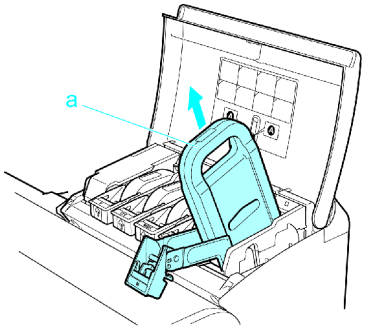
2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever for the color to replace. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.



Important

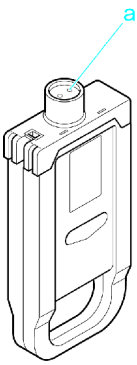
- Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever down until it locks.
- Make sure the Ink Tank Lock Lever does not return to the original position.

3. Hold the Ink Tank by the handle (a) and remove it. Press the **OK** button.



Note

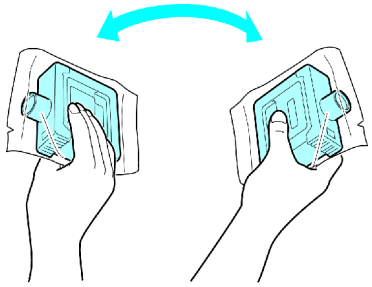
- If there is still ink in the Ink Tank you removed, store it in the box with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



- Dispose of used ink tanks according to local regulations.

Load the ink tank (330 ml)

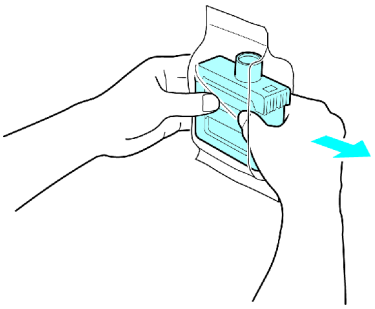
1. Before opening the pouch, tilt the Ink Tank to the left and right gently seven or eight times.



Note

- If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

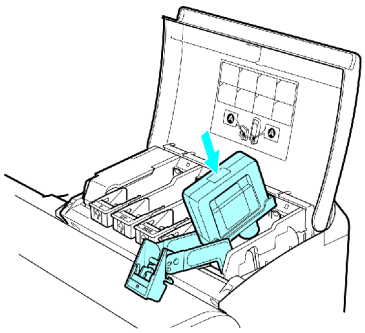
2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Note

- Never touch the ink holes or electrical contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove and agitate ink tanks that have already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

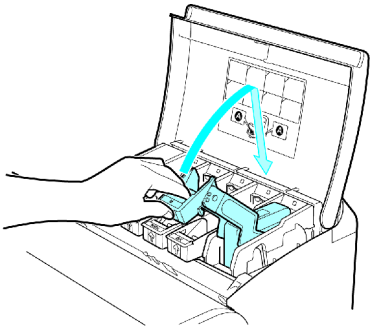
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder with the ink holes facing down, as shown.



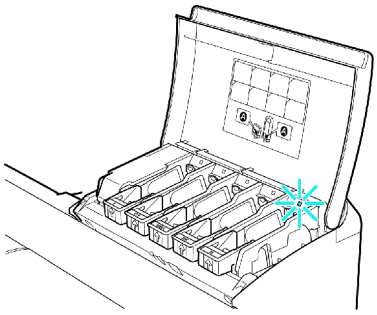
Important

- Ink tanks cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is incorrect.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down until it clicks into place.



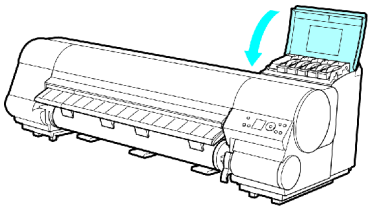
5. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- If the Ink Lamp is not lit in red, reload the tank.
- Ink lamps flash when there is little ink left.

6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



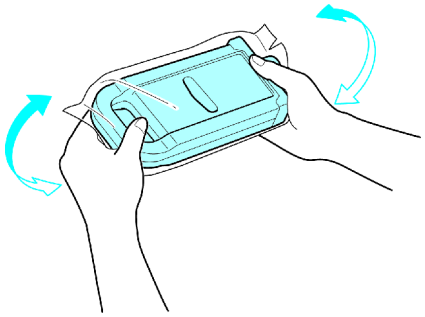
The printer will go online or offline.

Important

- After Ink Tank replacement, always close the Ink Tank Cover. If the Ink Tank Cover cannot close, some Ink Tank Lock Lever may not be closed completely. Make sure all ink tank lock levers are fully closed.

Load the ink tank (700 ml)

1. Before opening the pouch, hold the new Ink Tank with both hands and tilt it to the left and right as shown, shaking gently it seven or eight times.



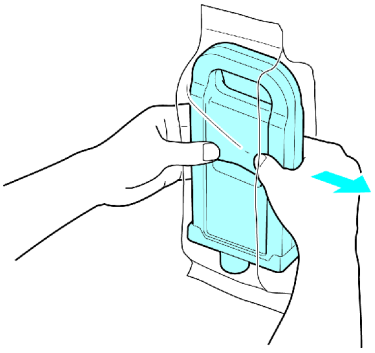
Caution

- 700 ml ink tanks are heavy, so use your whole arm to agitate it instead of just your wrist.

Note

- If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

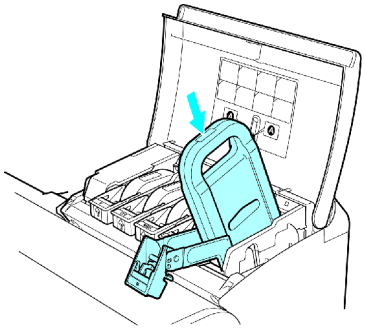
2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Note

- Never touch the ink holes or electrical contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove and agitate ink tanks that have already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

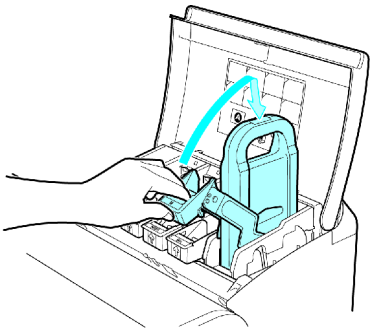
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder with the ink holes facing down, as shown.



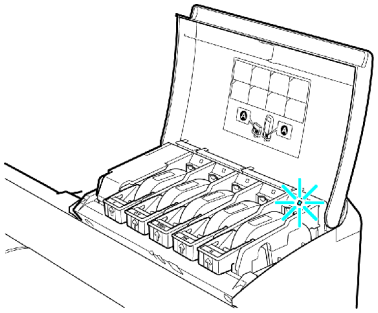
Important

- Ink tanks cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is incorrect.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down until it clicks into place.



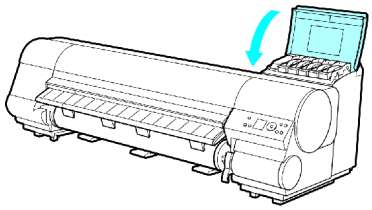
5. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- If the Ink Lamp is not lit in red, reload the tank.
- Ink lamps flash when there is little ink left.

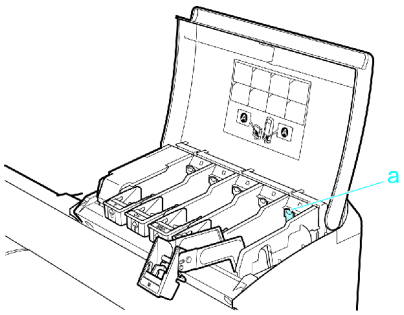
6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



The printer will go online or offline.

Important

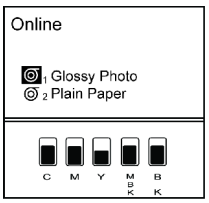
- After Ink Tank replacement, always close the Ink Tank Cover. If the Ink Tank Cover cannot close, some Ink Tank Lock Lever may not be closed completely. Make sure all ink tank lock levers are fully closed.
- To close the Ink Tank Cover when no Ink Tank is installed (as when moving the printer), push the release lever (a) as shown while returning the Ink Tank Lock Lever to the original position.



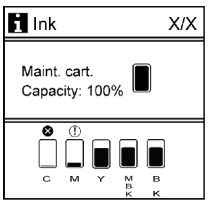
Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the Ink Tank.

The Display Screen indicates the remaining ink levels, unless an error message is displayed.



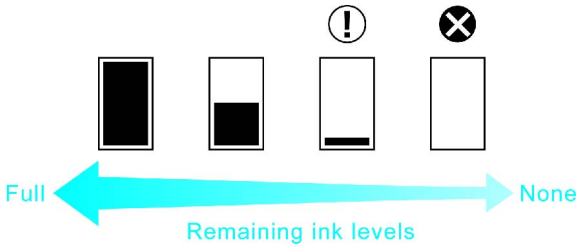
During error messages, press the **Information** button to view the ink levels on the Display Screen.



These levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.

These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “×” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.

The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



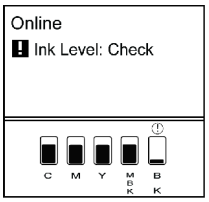
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (→P.563)

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace Ink Tank in the following situations.

If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the Message lamp is lit and **Ink Level: Check** is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (→P.574)

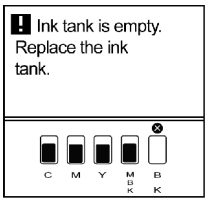


Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance.

If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the Message lamp flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.

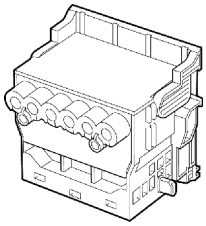


Printheads

Printhead

This is a replacement Printhead for the printer.

- Printhead PF-03



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.579)

Checking for Nozzle Clogging

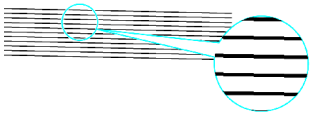
If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

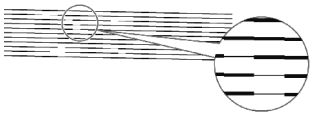
- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.53)

1. Load unused paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.150)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer goes online and prints a test pattern.
6. Check the printing results.
   The Printhead L prints the test pattern for nozzle checking on the top line in each color, and the Printhead R prints the test pattern on the bottom line.
   If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



   If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



   If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.
   1. Clean the Printhead. (→P.578)
   2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

Cleaning the Printhead

Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.
Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.53)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.

Cleaning the Printhead

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** one or two times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tank during cleaning.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about three minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**
     Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about four minutes to complete.

   The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.577)

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

Replace the Printhead in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after one or two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
- If the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover and replace the printhead.**
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead

Compatible printheads

For information on compatible printheads, see “Printhead”. (→P.576)

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

Important

- Avoid dropping or shaking the Printhead. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.
- If you need to put a Printhead somewhere temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts (→P.582) facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
- Never attempt to take apart or modify a Printhead. This may damage the printer.
- Never touch the Printhead nozzles or metal contacts. This may cause printing problems.

Replacing the Printhead

Follow these steps to replace the Printhead. Failure to follow this procedure may cause ink to leak from the Printhead, resulting in stains.

Caution

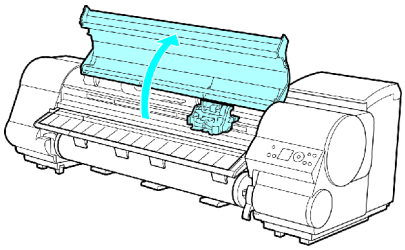
- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.

Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.
- Choose **On** in **Auto Print** to have the printer automatically adjust the Printhead alignment after replacement of the Printhead. (→P.53)

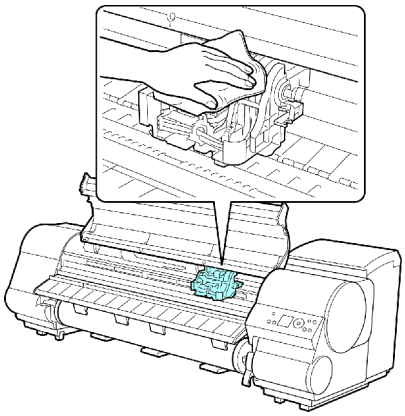
1. If the roll is not ejected because of the cutting method selected, cut it manually and remove it. (→P.366)
2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.597)
3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Ink is now filled.
   After about two minutes, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.
7. Open the Top Cover.



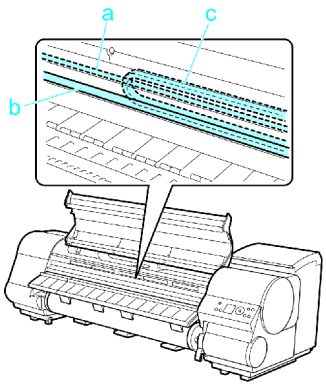
Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Printhead replacement.

8. If the Printhead Fixer Cover or Printhead Fixer Lever is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



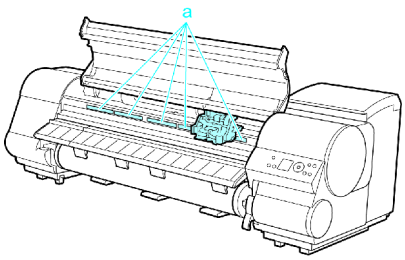
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.

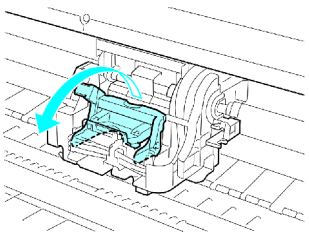


- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

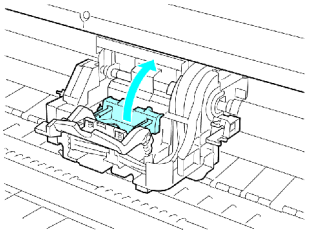
9. If the ventilation duct (a) is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean. Move the Carriage out of the way manually if the Carriage is concealing the ventilation duct, and then clean the duct.



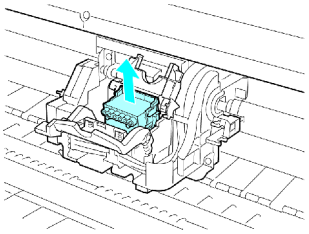
10. Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.



11. Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



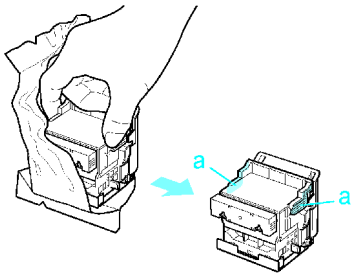
12. Remove the used Printhead.



Note

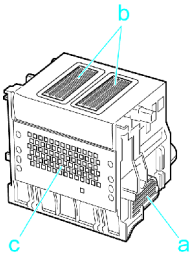
- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

13. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the case.

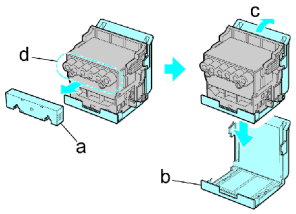


Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.



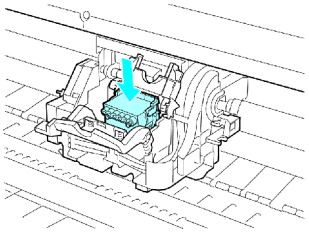
14. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Safety Cap 1 (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Safety Cap 2 (b) and pull it down to remove it.



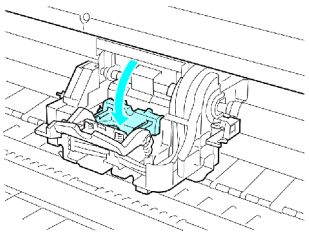
Important

- Safety Cap 1 (a) may be coated with ink to protect the Printhead. Be careful not to touch areas other than the grips.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.
- The inside surface of Safety Cap 2 (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Handle it carefully to avoid touching the nozzles or spilling ink. Spilled ink may cause stains. The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. If this ink is accidentally spilled, it may stain the printer or surrounding area. We recommend removing the Safety Cap 2 (b) on top of the Printhead package or safely out of the way. Wipe off any spilled ink with a dry cloth.
- Do not reattach the Safety Cap or protective material. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

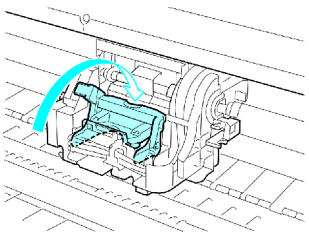
15. With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, insert the Printhead into the Carriage. Carefully push the printhead firmly into the Carriage, ensuring that the nozzles and metal contacts do not touch the carriage.



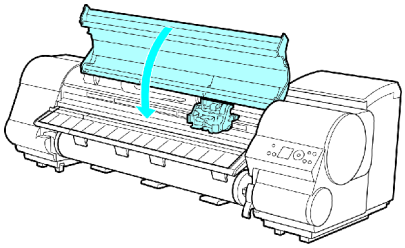
16. Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



17. Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.



18. Close the Top Cover.



Ink now fills the system.

After about six minutes, the Printhead will be automatically aligned, and the printer will go online.

If no paper has been loaded, a message is displayed requesting you to load paper.

Important

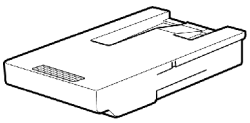
- Never remove an Ink Tank while the system is filling with ink.
- If **Auto Print** is **Off** in the printer menu, the Printhead alignment will not be adjusted. In this case, adjust the alignment after Printhead replacement by accessing **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.**. (→P.544)

Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge

A replacement Maintenance Cartridge. The Maintenance Cartridge is provided with a Shaft Cleaner.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-09



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.586)

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible maintenance cartridges

For information on compatible maintenance cartridges, see “Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.585)

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

Caution

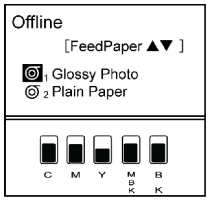
- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

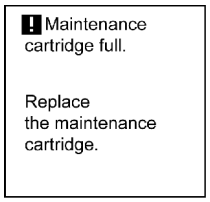
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   You can replace the Maintenance Cartridge if the Display Screen indicates the printer is **Offline** or if messages advise you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.



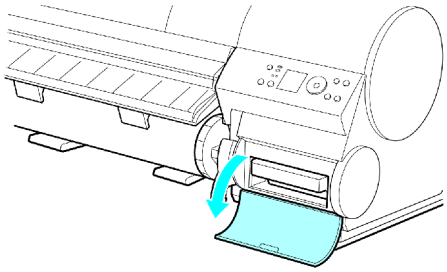
   If a message prompts you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, press the **OK** button. Steps 2-5 are unnecessary in this case. Go to step 6 and remove the Maintenance Cartridge.



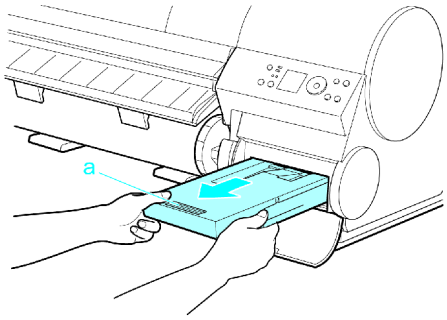
   Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, or while ink is being drawn out.
   If you pause printing to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, it may cause the printed images to be blurry.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.
6. At this point, open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



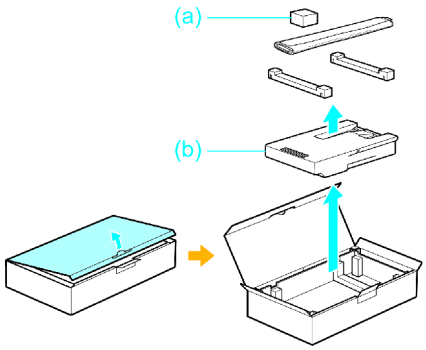
7. Hold the used Maintenance Cartridge by the grip (a) with one hand and put your other hand under the Maintenance Cartridge to hold it firmly on the bottom, keeping it level as you pull it out.



Important

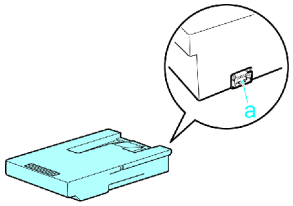
- Used maintenance cartridges are heavy. Always grasp the cartridge firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

8. Open the box, remove the plastic bag, packaging material, and Shaft Cleaner (a), and then take out the Maintenance Cartridge (b).

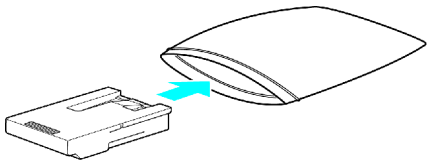


Important

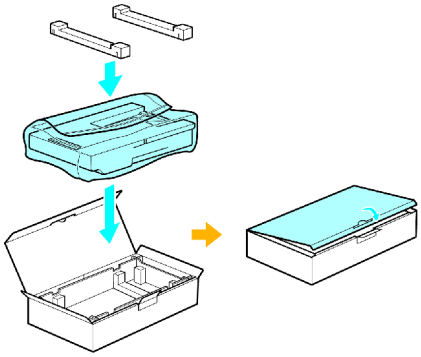
- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.



9. Keep the used Maintenance Cartridge level as you put it in the plastic bag. Expel excess air from the plastic bag and seal the zipper.



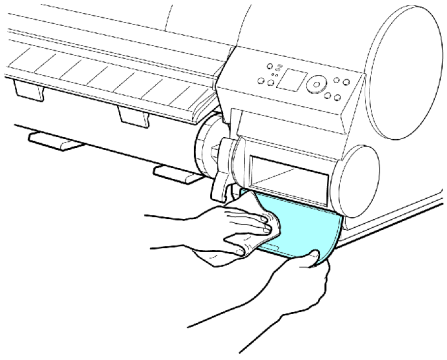
10. Confirm the Maintenance Cartridge is right-side up, put it in the box with the packaging material attached, and store it so that it stays level.



Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- In accordance with corporate environmental protection policies, Canon collects used maintenance cartridges. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

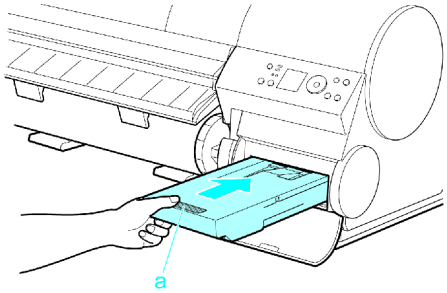
11. Wipe away any soiling on the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



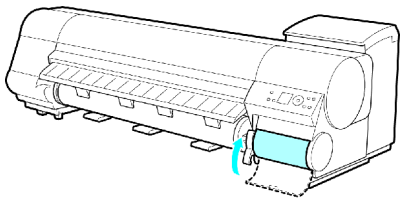
Important

- Support the Maintenance Cartridge Cover from underneath as you wipe it.

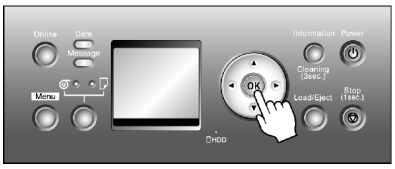
12. Keeping the new Maintenance Cartridge level, insert it all the way in.



13. Close the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



14. Press the **OK** button.



The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.

Next, replace the Shaft Cleaner.

Replacing the Shaft Cleaner

Replace the Shaft Cleaner when you replace the Maintenance Cartridge. New Shaft Cleaner is included with replacement Maintenance Cartridge.
After you execute **Repl. maint cart** and replace the Maintenance Cartridge, a message will appear on the Display Screen requesting you to replace the Shaft Cleaner. Select **Yes** and press the **OK** button. Next, go to step 4.

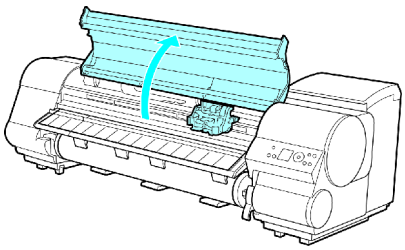
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. S. Cleaner**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the Carriage is moved, the Display Screen indicates **Open Upper Cover**.

Note

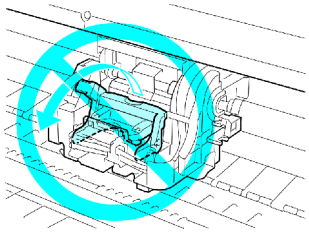
- If you do not respond within two minutes, shaft cleaner replacement is canceled and the printer goes online automatically. In this case, repeat the procedure.

5. Open the Top Cover.

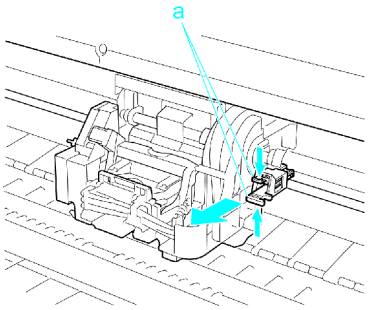


Note

- Do not open the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the front.
  Accidentally opening the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the front will draw out ink, which consumes ink.

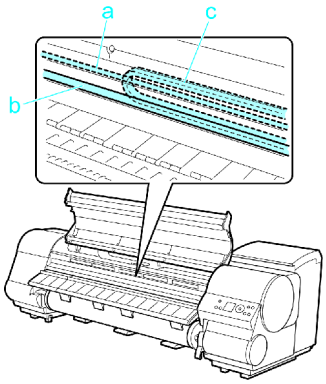


6. Hold the Shaft Cleaner on the right side of the Carriage by the grips (a) and pull it toward you to remove it.

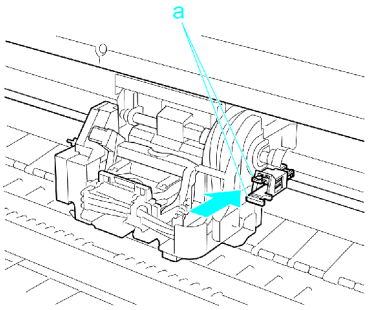


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



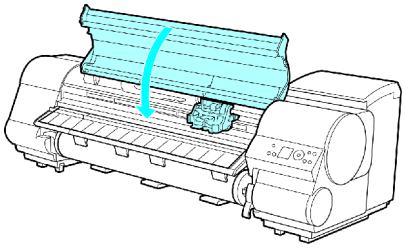
7. After removing the cap of the new Shaft Cleaner, hold it by the grips (a) and attach it to the Carriage.
Push the Shaft Cleaner until it clicks into place.



Note

- Attach the cap from the new Shaft Cleaner on the used one. Be sure to put the used Shaft Cleaner in the small box before putting it in the larger box with the used Maintenance Cartridge for disposal.

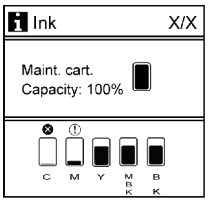
8. Close the Top Cover.



The Carriage is moved, and the printer goes online.

Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.
Press the **Information** button to display the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge on the Display Screen.



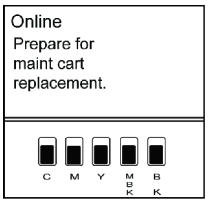
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and replace the Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (→P.586)

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

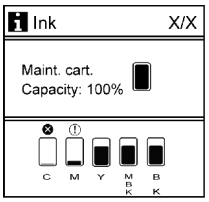
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low, the Message lamp is lit and **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** is displayed. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (→P.594)



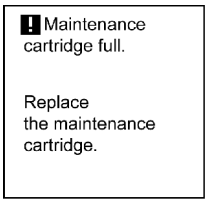
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) To check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, press the **Information** button. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge and perform related maintenance as needed.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the Message lamp flashes and a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

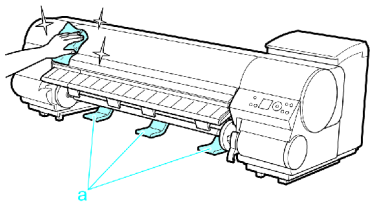
Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.25)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe away any dirt or paper dust from the Paper Feed Slot (a), power cord plug, and so on. Dry these parts with a dry cloth.



Caution

- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

Important

- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.
(→P.597)

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

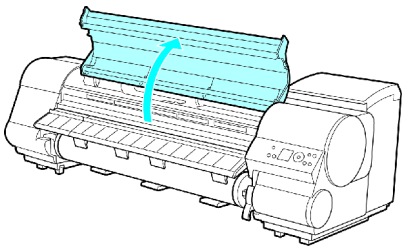
Clean inside the Top Cover to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust
- If the message **Blue platen switch is dirty.** is displayed

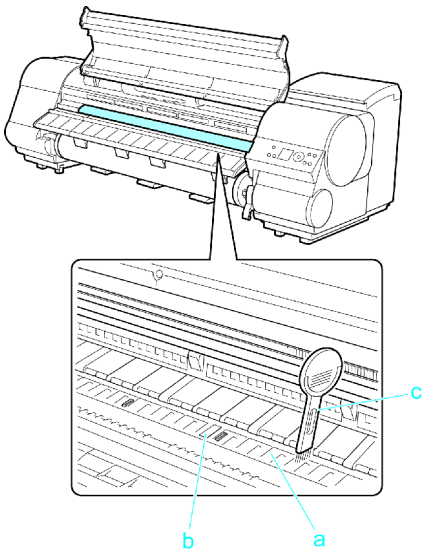
Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

1. Open the Top Cover.

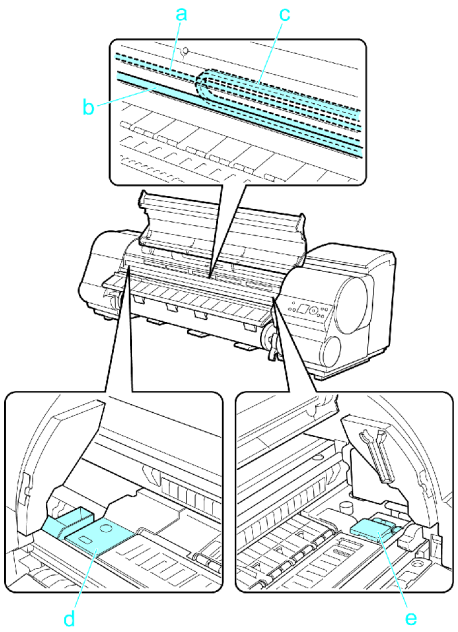


2. If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush (c) provided with the printer to wipe it away.



Important

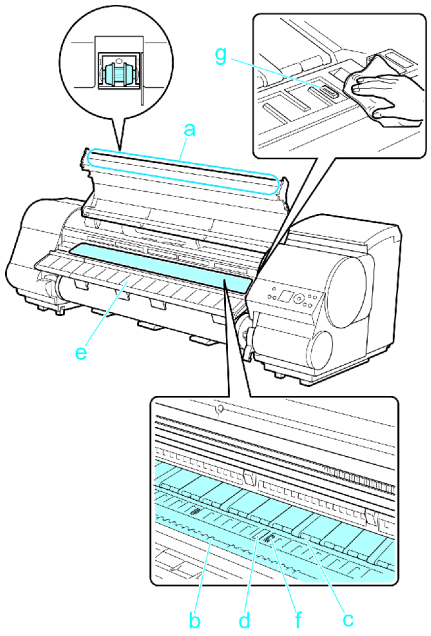
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.
  Avoid cleaning where the Carriage is retracted, in position (d) or (e).



Note

- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

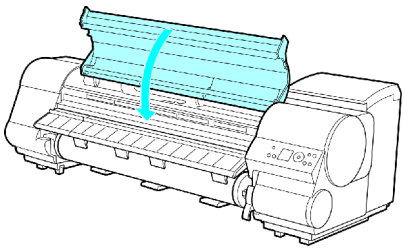
3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe away dirt or paper dust (debris from cutting) inside the Top Cover.
Wipe away any ink residue and paper dust (debris from cutting) on the Top Cover Roller (a), all over the Platen (b), the Paper Retainer (c), the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (d), the Ejection Guide (e), the blue Switch (f), the section around the right-side Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (g), and so on.



Important

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.
- Do not touch the clear sheet on the side of the Top Cover Roller. This may damage the roller.

4. Close the Top Cover.



Cleaning the Printhead

Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.
Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Noz. Check Freq.** menu for automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.53)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.

Cleaning the Printhead

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** one or two times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or Ink Tank during cleaning.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about three minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**
     Use **Head Cleaning B** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about four minutes to complete.

   The printhead is cleaned, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.577)

Other Maintenance

Preparing to Transfer the Printer

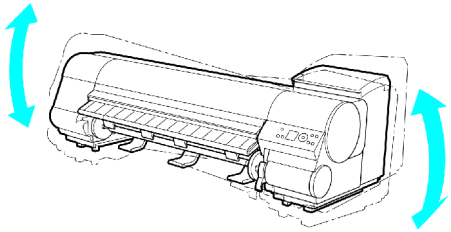
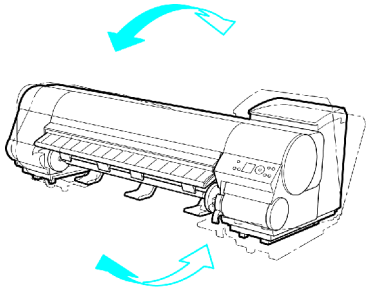
To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow the steps below before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Setup Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.

Important

- Be sure to contact your Canon dealer before transferring the printer to a new location. Ink may leak and damage the printer if you do not prepare the printer correctly and it is tipped or stood on end in transit.

Note

- It is not possible to prepare the printer for transfer if the Display Screen requests Maintenance Cartridge replacement or checking of the remaining capacity. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. (→P.586)
- Depending on the state of the printer, part replacement may be necessary when preparing to transfer the printer (that is, when you execute the printer menu item to prepare for transfer).
- Ink must be drained before Level 2 or Level 3 printer transfer, as described in the following table. Prepare a Maintenance Cartridge in advance.
- Always follow the instructions of the service representative when transferring the printer under Level 3 conditions.

Level	Shipping Method (Example)	Permitted Angle of Inclination	Amount of Ink to Dispose of	Required Maintenance Cartridges(*1)
1	By truck	Lengthwise: 0°-30°  Rotation: 0°-10° 	0	0 or 1
2	By plane	All directions: 0°-30°	Approx. 200 ml	1 or 2
3	Tipping the printer or holding it upright for elevators or stairs	Lengthwise: 0°-90° Rotation: 0°-30°	Approx. 700 ml	2 or 3

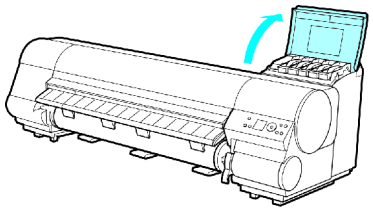
*1: The quantity of cartridges required depends on the capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge in use.

1. Remove the Wheeled Output Stacker from the printer.
   (→P.159)
2. Remove the paper.
   - Rolls (→P.125)
   - Sheets (→P.155)
3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

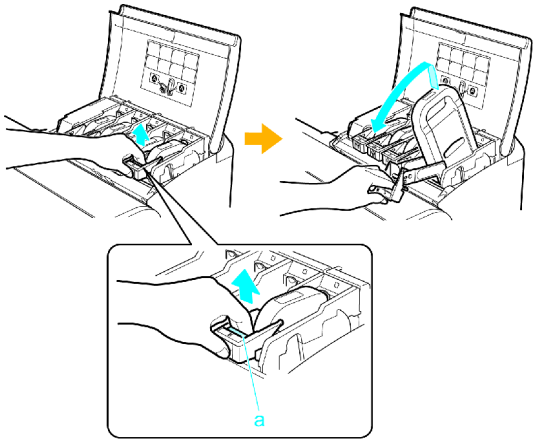
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Move Printer**, and then press the ► button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of transfer, and then press the **OK** button.
7. After the message **Always contact service before preparing to move the printer.** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button.
   The Display Screen indicates **Please Wait..**.
   - If you have selected **Level 1** in step 6, after processing in preparation to move the printer is finished, the message **Finished preparing to move printer. Turn off printer.** is shown on the Display Screen. Go to step 15.
   - When you are finished preparing to transfer the printer after selecting **Level 2** or **Level 3** conditions, the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Follow the procedure starting with step 8.

   Important
   - If consumables must be replaced, the message **Consumables must be replaced. Call for service.** is shown on the Display Screen and preparation is not possible. If this message is displayed, press the **OK** button and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

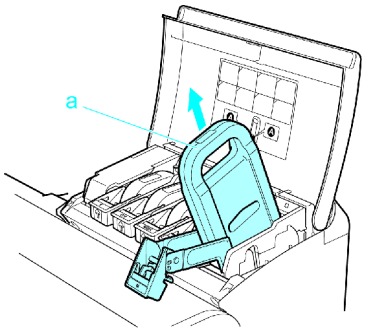
8. Open the Ink Tank Cover.



9. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever (a). Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.

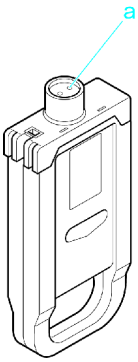


10. Remove the Ink Tank.



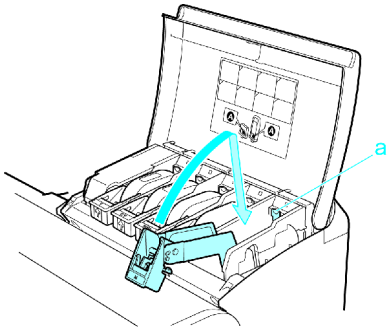
Note

- Store the Ink Tank you removed in the box with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

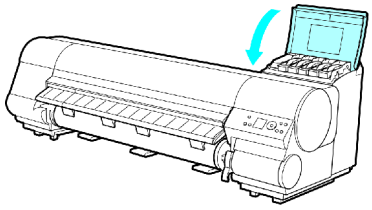


11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 to remove all ink tanks.

12. Push down the release lever (a) as shown as you gently return all ink tank lock levers to the original position.



13. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.

Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during this process.

When the process is finished, **Finished preparing to move printer. Turn off printer.** is displayed.

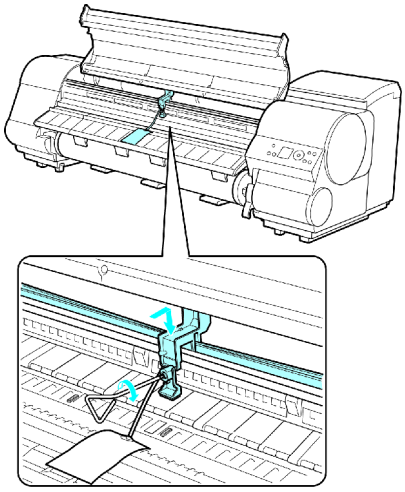
14. Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.

Important

- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the Ink Tank, wait until the printer comes online, and follow this procedure again.

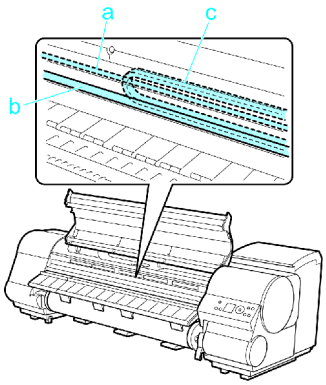
15. Disconnect the printer power cord and interface cable, as well as the Roll Unit power cord.

16. Open the Top Cover, grasp the Belt, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper with a hex screw at the position indicated.

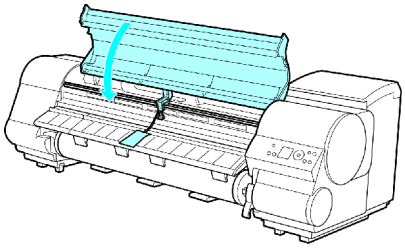


Important

- Here, the Belt Stopper is the one that was removed and stored after initial installation. Neglecting to attach the Belt Stopper may damage the printer.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



17. Close the Top Cover.



18. Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.

19. Remove the Stand by reversing the installation procedure, when it was attached to the printer.

20. Disassemble and repackage the Stand by following the installation procedure in reverse.

21. Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press ►.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the **OK** button.

   The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the Firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
How do I print on a roll?	When printing on rolls, after loading the roll, specify the paper type and length, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. ⇒"Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.89) "
How do I print on a sheet?	When printing on sheets, specify the paper type and size in the printer driver before loading the paper. ⇒"Loading and Printing on Sheets (→P.93) "
How do I switch between printing on rolls and sheets?	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to switch the paper source between the roll and a sheet. ⇒"Selecting the Paper Source (→P.112) "
How do I change the paper type or size?	Specify the type and size of paper, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. • Specifying it in the printer driver ⇒"Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (→P.223) " • Specifying it on the Control Panel Selecting the paper type ⇒"Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.113) " ⇒"Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) (→P.149) " Selecting the paper size ⇒"Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) (→P.114) "
How do I cut the roll paper after printing?	You can wait until ink dries before cutting the roll, and you can cut rolls at a desired position. ⇒"Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls (→P.139) "
How do I print without borders?	Borderless printing is possible on rolls. You can also specify borderless printing in the printer driver by adjusting the original size to match the paper size. Before borderless printing, set the blue Switch on the platen to the ● side. Borderless printing is not supported on sheets. ⇒"Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.265) " ⇒"Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.272) " ⇒"Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.258) " ⇒"Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen (→P.629) "

Question	Answer
How do I print an A4 original enlarged on A2 paper?	In the printer driver, you can adjust the original image to match the paper size or width, or you can specify enlargement or reduction before printing as desired. ⇒"Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.228) " ⇒"Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.234) " ⇒"Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.240) "
How do I print without wasting paper?	To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins. ⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.335) " ⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.341) "
How do I print without wasting all the blank space on the right side when printing an A4-sized original at A3 size?	By specifying to rotate originals 90 degrees in the printer driver, you can print at A4 size to fill the width of A3 paper. ⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.335) "
How do I print in landscape (or portrait) orientation?	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. ⇒"Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) (→P.286) "
How do I print on a custom paper size?	You can specify custom sizes temporarily in the printer driver. ⇒"Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.297) "
How do I register custom paper sizes?	You can add desired sizes (Custom Paper Sizes) in the **Paper Size Options** dialog box of the printer driver. ⇒"Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.297) "
How do I print lines thicker?	By specifying **Thicken Fine Lines** in the printer driver, you can print fine lines thicker to make them easier to see. ⇒"Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.211) "
How do I modify how colors are printed?	You can adjust colors as desired in the printer driver before printing. ⇒"Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.201) "
How do I use printer driver settings again in subsequent jobs?	By saving settings information in a favorite, you can apply the settings again before printing anytime as needed. ⇒"Using Favorites (→P.362) "

Question	Answer
Can I use the printer in combination with a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	The printer can be used for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. ⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.196) "
How do I print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can automatically print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. ⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.196) "

Problems Regarding Paper

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

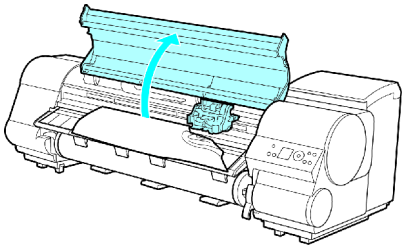
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

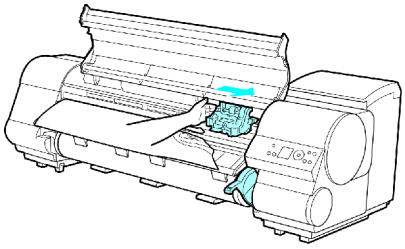
Note

- If you do not find any scraps or jams, see “Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found”. (→P.615)

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.25)
2. Open the Top Cover.

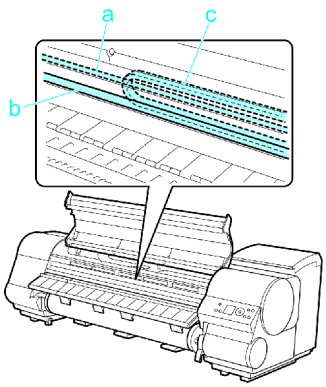


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper.

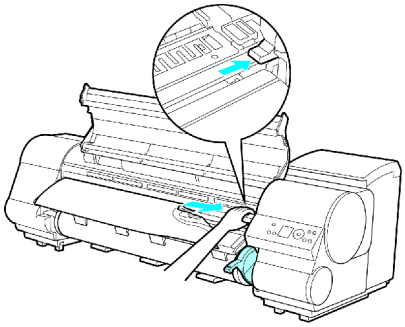


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



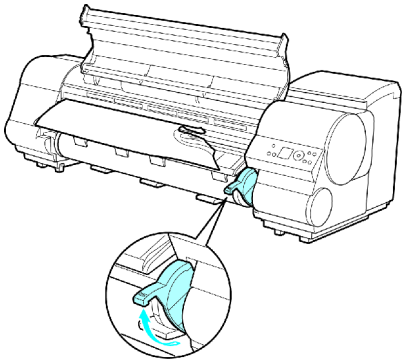
4. If the Cutter is out, move the Cutter to the right side, away from the paper.



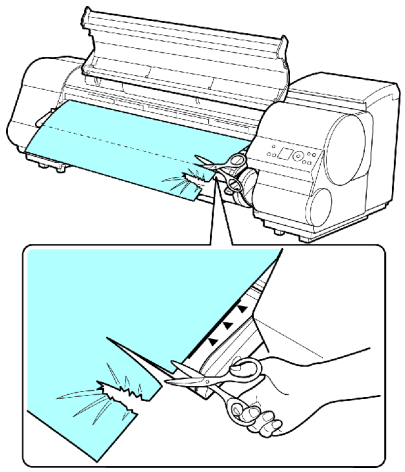
Important

- If the Cutter is on the left side, be sure to move it to the right. If the Cutter is on the left side when you turn the printer on, the printer may rip the paper.

5. Lift the Release Lever.



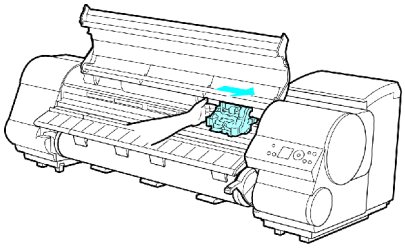
6. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use a scissors or cutting tool to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

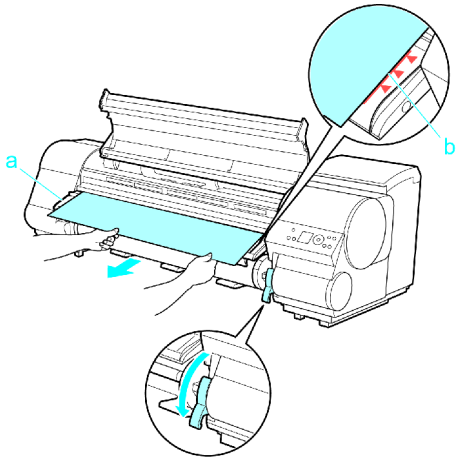
7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

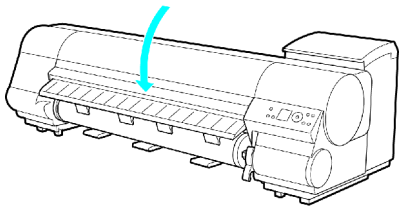
8. Hold the edge of the roll paper in the middle as you gently pull it evenly to the position of the Ejection Guide (a). Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b), keeping this side parallel to the line, and then lower the Release Lever.



Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.
- If you pull out too much of the roll, an excessive amount will be cut away.

9. Close the Top Cover.



10. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

Note

- You can ensure that the edge is cut neatly by selecting **Paper Cutting** in the printer menu. (→P.139)

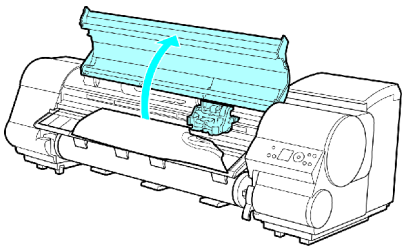
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

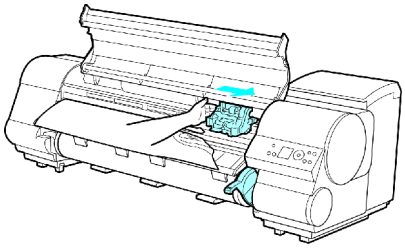
Caution

- Remove any jammed paper promptly.

1. Turn the printer off. (→P.25)
2. Open the Top Cover.

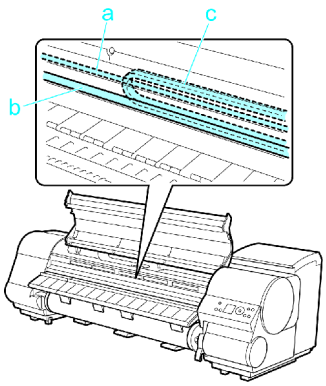


3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper.

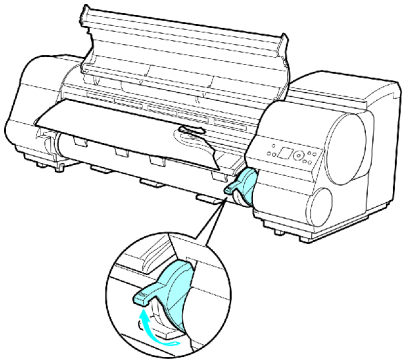


Important

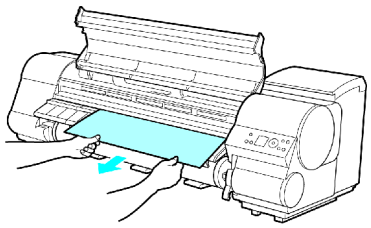
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Ink Tube Stabilizer (c). Touching these parts may damage them.



4. Lift the Release Lever.



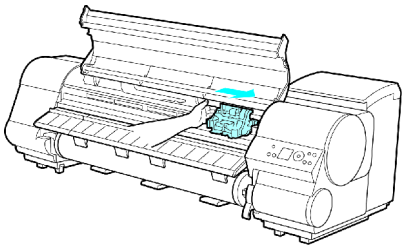
5. Hold the paper and pull it out, toward the front.



Note

- If you do not find any scraps or jams, see “Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found”. (→P.615)

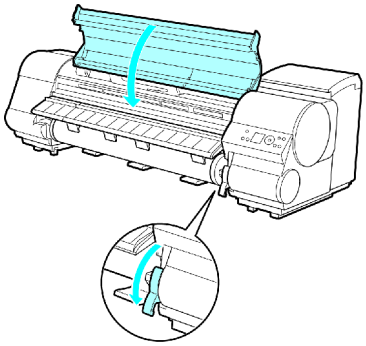
6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

7. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.

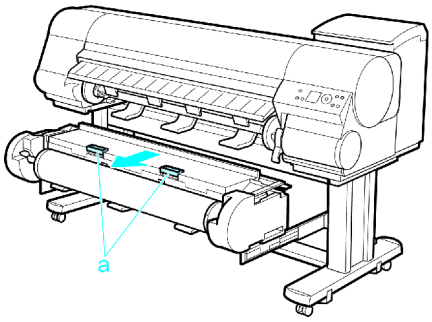


8. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

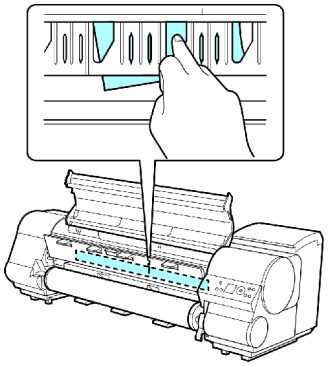
Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found

If you cannot find a paper jam, search for the paper as follows.

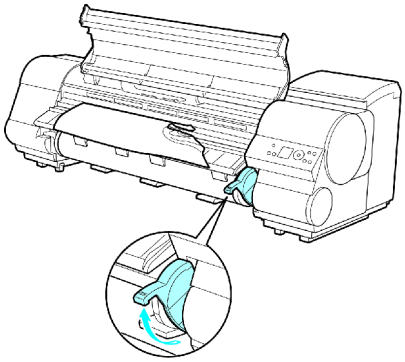
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.25)
2. Remove the Wheeled Output Stacker from the printer. (→P.159)
3. Holding the Roll Unit Lever (a), pull out the Roll Unit.



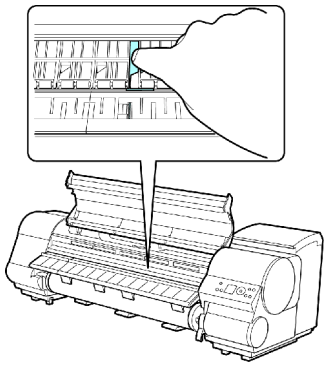
4. Check for paper in the lower part of the printer. Remove any jammed paper here by pushing it to the floor with your fingers.



5. Lift the Release Lever.



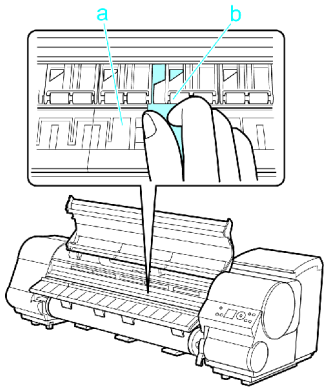
6. Open the Top Cover, and if there is a paper jam at the position shown, push it inside with your fingers.



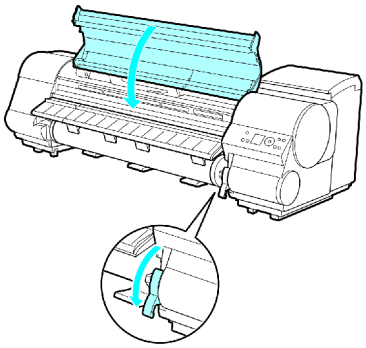
The paper will drop to the floor or to the lower part of the printer.

Note

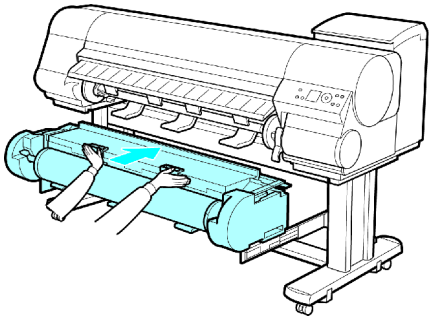
- If paper remains in the lower part of the printer, push it to the floor with your fingers.
- If the paper does not drop to the floor or to the lower part of the printer, fold an A4 sheet three times, insert it through the gap of the Platen (a) and the Paper Retainer (b), and push the jammed paper out.



7. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



8. In a crouching position, push the Roll Unit in.



9. Position the Wheeled Output Stacker by the printer. (→P.159)
10. Turn the printer on. (→P.25)

Roll Paper Cannot be Inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.
If paper cannot be advanced from Roll 2 (Lower), the Roll Unit Cable is disconnected.	Connect the Roll Unit Cable firmly to the Roll Unit Power Supply Inlet and the inlet on the roll unit.

Cannot Load Sheets

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the **Cut Sheet lamp**.

Paper is not cut straight

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.

Paper is not cut

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer driver, **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** is specified in **Auto Cut**.	Specify **Yes** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver.
In **MAIN MENU**, **Eject** or **Manual** is specified in **Cutting Mode**.	Specify **Automatic** in **Cutting Mode** in **MAIN MENU**.

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
The printer is not selected in the printer driver. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, select the printer by clicking **Select Printer** or **Printer** in the printing dialog box and try printing again.
	In Mac OS X, select the printer by clicking **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) and try printing again.
The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window. 2. Clear **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**). 2. Select the printer, and then **Start Jobs** in the **Printers** menu to restart the print job.

The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is offline.	Press the **Online** button on the Control Panel to bring the printer online.
You have printed when select **Save in mail box** is selected in **Output Method**.	Print the job saved on the printer's hard disk. (→P.509)

The display screen indicates the system is filling with ink

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer was forced off during operation.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about ten minutes.

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Status	Corrective Action
An error message is displayed during printing.	Check the error message and take action as necessary. (→P.648)
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Remove the used roll and insert a new roll. (→P.125) (→P.129) (→P.89)

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Status	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	This operation is normal. The printer cuts the leading edge of the roll to straighten it and ejects the scraps when **Trim Edge First** in the printer menu is **On** or when **Trim Edge First** is **Automatic** and the leading edge is slanted. The printer is ready to print after this initial preparation. When **Off** is selected under **Trim Edge First**, the edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (→P.577) Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.578)
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when **Auto Rotate** is **On**.	Set **Auto Rotate** to **Off** before attempting to print again. (→P.53)
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is analyzing the print job.	Either wait a while for printing to resume, or on the printer Control Panel, set **Input Resolution** to **300dpi**. (→P.53)

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.577)
Because the printer was left without ink tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the ink tanks have been installed for 24 hours, run **Head Cleaning B**. (→P.578)
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover. 1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline. 2. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen. 3. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover. (→P.131) (→P.156) 4. Close the Top Cover.
During borderless printing, the ink was not dry enough before cutting.	Specify a longer drying period in the printer menu, in **Roll DryingTime** in **Paper Details**. (→P.53)
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Draft**.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality**. Printing in **Draft** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (→P.211)

Paper rubs against the printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (→P.118) (→P.150)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height**, choose **Automatic**. (→P.551)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.561) (→P.551)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.561) (→P.551)
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thin or thinner, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Weakest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.561) (→P.551)
When you have loaded paper, the paper you have loaded does not match the type selected on the Display Screen.	Be sure to select the correct type of paper in the printer menu when loading paper. (→P.118) (→P.150)

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.597)
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.113) (→P.149)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (→P.118) (→P.150)
A cut line is printed because the function to reduce cutting dust has been activated.	If this function is not needed, deactivate **CutDustReduct.** through the printer menu. (→P.53)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height**, choose **Automatic**. (→P.551)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.561) (→P.551)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**. If paper still rubs against the printhead, try raising the Printhead by setting **Head Height** to **Highest**. (→P.561) (→P.551)
The Ejection Guide is soiled.	Clean the Ejection Guide. (→P.596)

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (→P.597)
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	Specify a time of about a minute in **Roll DryingTime**.

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.597)
	Set **CarriageScanWdth** to **Fixed**.
The Platen has become soiled due to printing on the Platen because width detection is deactivated.	Activate width detection, and open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (→P.597)
	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. After this, manually advance the roll onto the Platen before printing. (→P.597) (→P.135)
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (→P.597)

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, access **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** to adjust colors.
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.577)
In the printer driver, **Application Color Matching Priority** is not selected.	Click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver and select **Application Color Matching Priority** in the dialog box.
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.544) (→P.546)
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware, printer driver, and other software. 2. Specify the same value for all settings items.

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.552)
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the printer menu, **Print Length** is specified in **Feed Priority**.	Selecting **Band Joint** may improve printing results. Adjust the feed amount in the printer menu by specifying **Band Joint** in **Feed Priority** and try printing again. (→P.552)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.544)
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.577)
Streaks may occur if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. Printing in **Draft** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (→P.211)
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	Specify **Image** in the printer driver.
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Increase the level of vacuum holding the paper against the Platen or specify a margin of 20 mm (0.79 in.) or more for the leading edge. (→P.561)
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. Printing in **Draft** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (→P.211)
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select **Unidirectional Printing** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.
When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges.	Specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.211)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.544)
Drying documents stacked on each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.
Color density may be uneven if you use Glossy Paper, art paper, or Coated Paper.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality**.
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	Set **VacuumStrngth** to **Weakest**. (→P.561)
	Close the blue Switch on the platen so that it matches the paper size. (→P.629)
The Printhead is set too high.	Lower the Printhead. (→P.551)
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen

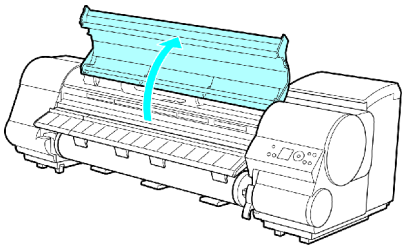
If printed documents exhibit the following symptoms, adjust the setting of the blue Switch on the Platen.

- Image edges are blurred
- Image edges are affected by white banding

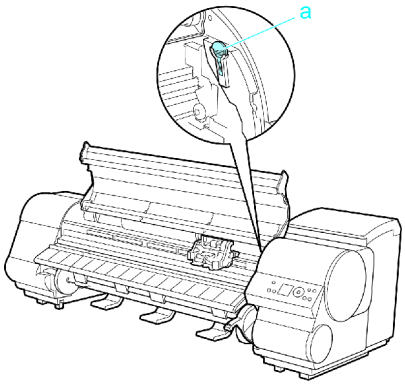
Important

- Always set the blue Switch on the Platen to the ● side for borderless printing. Printing quality may be affected if the Switch is incorrectly set.

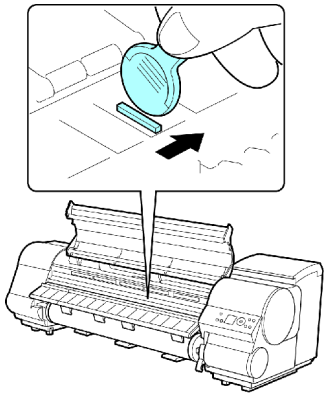
1. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.
   - Rolls (→P.125)
   - Sheet (→P.155)
2. Open the Top Cover.



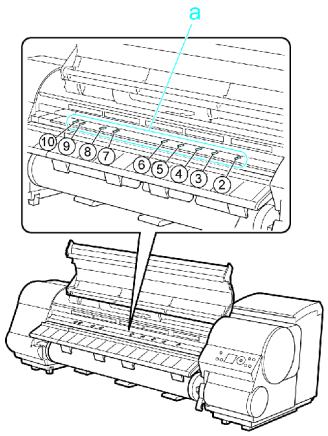
3. Remove the Cleaning Brush.



4. Using the back of the Cleaning Brush, move the first Switch to the side opposite ●.



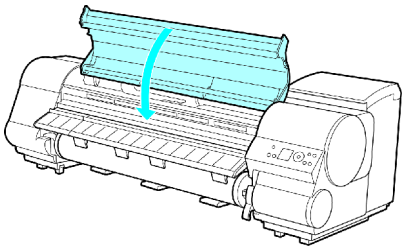
5. Refer to the following table to confirm the number on the Platen that corresponds to the size of paper for printing.



Number	Paper Size	Dimensions
2	**10"x12"** / **8"x10"**	254 mm (10 in.)
3	**14"x17"**	355 mm (14 in.)
4	**17-in. Roll (431.8mm)** / **ANSI C**	432 mm (17 in.)
5	**JIS B2** / **JIS B3**	515 mm (20 in.)
6	**ISO A1** / **ISO A2** / **20"x24"**	594 mm (23 in.) / 610 mm (24 in.)
7	**ISO A0** / **ISO A1**	841 mm (33 in.)
8	**36"x48" (ARCH E)** / **24"x36" (ARCH D)**	914 mm (36 in.)
9	**JIS B0** / **JIS B1**	1030 mm (40.5 in.)
10	**Poster 42"x60"**	1,067 mm (42 in.)

6. Using the back of the Cleaning Brush, move the Switch to the side opposite ●, corresponding to the size of the paper for printing.
In this case, note that you will move the switch in the opposite direction from the direction in step 4.

7. Close the Top Cover.



The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.552)
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

The length of printed images is inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer menu, **Band Joint** is specified in **Feed Priority**.	To ensure the feed amount matches the paper size, select **Print Length** in **Feed Priority** in the printer menu and enter the amount for adjustment in **Adjust Length**. (→P.552) You can adjust the feed amount in 0.02% increments. (→P.53)
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Documents are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew **Skew Check Lv.** has been set to **Loose** or **Off**.	Choose **Standard** in **Skew Check Lv.**.
Width Detection has been set to **Off**.	Choose **On** in **Width Detection**.

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, **Monochrome**, **Monochrome (BK ink)**, or **Monochrome Bitmap** is specified in **Color Mode**.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, specify **Color** in **Color Mode** and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.577)

Line thickness is not uniform

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Special Settings** dialog box of the Windows printer driver, **Fast Graphic Process** is selected.	Open the printer driver's **Properties** dialog box from **Print** in the application software's **File** menu, and try printing following the steps below. 1. Clear the option **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** on the **Main** sheet. 2. Clear the option **Page Layout** on the **Layout** sheet. 3. Click the **Special Settings** button on the **Layout** sheet to display the **Special Settings** dialog box. Clear the option **Fast Graphic Process**.
The blue Switch on the platen is open.	Close the blue Switch on the platen so that it matches the paper size. (→P.629)
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Lines are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.544) (→P.546) (→P.548)
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.118) (→P.150)
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
(→P.104)

Cannot print over a network

Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.	1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Setup Guide. 2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The Link indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100 Base-TX and orange if connected via 10Base-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (→P.635)

Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the ► button.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the ► button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press the ► button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press the ► button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press the ► button.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press the **OK** button.
   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press the ► button.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press the **OK** button.
    Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.
12. Press the **Online** button.
    After the confirmation message is displayed, press **OK**.
    The new settings will take effect after the printer restarts.

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (→P.444) (→P.445)
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (→P.448)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (→P.456) (→P.476)

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. (→P.451)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. (→P.468)
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	Check the following points. 1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running. 2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. 3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. 4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. 5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify "Other/Unknown" as the printer type.

Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. (→P.450)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. (→P.473) (→P.479)
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Installation problems

The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly

In Windows, the device interface driver may not be installed correctly in some cases if you connected the IEEE 1394 cable before installing the printer driver.
If so, reinstall the IEEE 1394 device interface driver and the printer driver as follows.

Important

- This procedure is based on an example for Windows XP. The name of the wizard may be different in other operating systems.

1. Right-click **My Computer** and choose **Properties** to display the **System Properties** window.
2. On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager** to display the **Device Manager** window.
3. Right-click the **Other Devices** icon and choose **Properties**.
4. On the **Driver** sheet, click **Update Driver** to start the **Hardware Update Wizard** (or the **Upgrade Device Driver Wizard**).
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
6. When the window for choosing the source for driver installation is displayed, select the CD-ROM drive. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer and follow the instructions on the screen.
   The device and interface driver is installed.
   The device is detected, and the **New Hardware Wizard** (or **Add New Hardware Wizard**) is started.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen.
8. When the window for choosing the source for driver installation is displayed, select the printer driver folder.
   Open the CD-ROM drive, navigate to **Printer_Driver** > **WinXP_2K** > **Driver**, and then click **OK**. (For Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003)
9. Follow the instructions on the screen.
   The printer driver is now installed.

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow these steps to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.

Note

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights, such as those of the “Administrator” account.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **Canon Printer Uninstaller** > **imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** after the **Warning** message is displayed.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and then click **Exit**.

Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.
   Open the **OS X** folder and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.
3. In the upper left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and then click **Uninstall**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

HP-GL/2 problems

Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The memory is full.	Check the size of the data in the print job.
An HP-GL/2 command not supported by this printer was received.	Check the print job and settings.
The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when **Auto Rotate** is **On**.	Set **Auto Rotate** to **Off** before attempting to print again. (→P.53)

Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The **Line Width** setting in the main menu is incorrect.	Confirm the selection in **Line Width**. If fine lines are printed faint, setting **ThickenFineLines** to **On** in the main menu will print the lines more distinctly. (→P.53)

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color).

Cause	Corrective Action
The **Color Mode** is incorrect.	On the printer Control Panel, check the **Color Mode** setting. (→P.53) However, for optimal Printhead performance, the printer consumes trace amounts of color ink even when **Monochrome** is selected as **Color Mode**.

Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
AdjustFaintLines in the main menu is set to **On**.	Selecting **Off** may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time.

Cause	Corrective Action
Large print jobs with a lot of data take longer to print.	On the printer Control Panel, set **Input Resolution** to **300dpi**. (→P.53)

The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is analyzing the print job.	Either wait a while for printing to resume, or on the printer Control Panel, set **Input Resolution** to **300dpi**. (→P.53)

Other problems

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. Use a power source that conforms to the printer specifications. (→P.79)

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer makes a sound during operation.	The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer. • There is a sound of vacuum from the Platen To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it. • There is a sound when a different size of paper is used and when the Carriage goes from side to side This may happen especially when using B0 or 44-inch paper. When paper of a different size is used, a valve is automatically activated to switch the area for paper suction, which may make a sound. This mechanism prevents vacuum from Vacuum holes where there is no paper. In addition, ink is ejected in sync with the movement of the Carriage back and forth to ensure optimal ink flow. At this time, the valve automatically switches the area for paper suction, which may make a sound. • Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced. • You suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. • You suddenly hear the tone for ink agitation At regular intervals, to ensure optimal printing quality, the ink is agitated automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. Ink agitation takes about a minute and a half. The ink is also agitated automatically under the following conditions. Note that other operations are not possible while **Agitating** is displayed on the control panel. • After the printer is turned on. (The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer has been turned off-between about a minute and a half to twenty minutes. During agitation, you can print or do other operations after the printer goes **Online**.) • After data transmission. (After about a minute and a half, the printer goes **Online**, and printing operations begin. However, printing may start later after data reception, depending on the size of print data.) • After ink tank replacement. (Ink agitation takes about three and a half minutes. During agitation, you can print or do other operations after the printer goes **Online**.) In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge that was used to replace the old one.	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
	Restart the printer.

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B is used often.	**Head Cleaning B** consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing **Head Cleaning B**, to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead, which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
The printhead nozzles are clogged.	Check for nozzle clogging. (→P.577)

Ink level detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

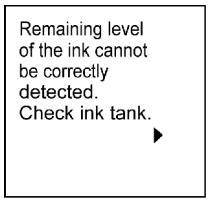
Ink tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (→P.562)
This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.
Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

Caution

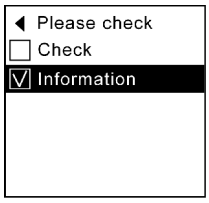
- After ink level detection has been disabled, this function cannot be reactivated for the currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with a new ink tank specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

Disabling ink level detection

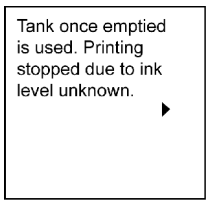
1. On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected. After checking the message, press the ► button.



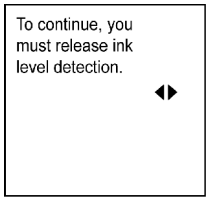
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



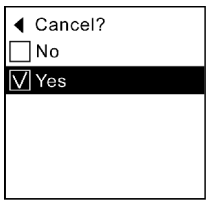
3. A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about disabling ink level detection. After checking the message, press the ► button.



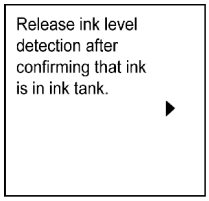
4. After checking the message, press the ► button.



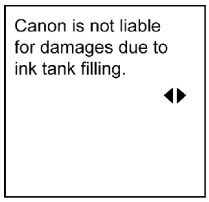
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



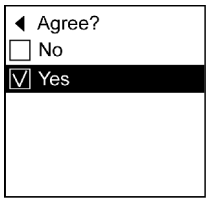
6. Check the message and press the ► button.



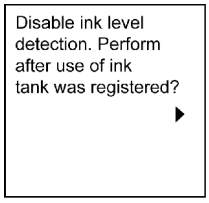
7. Check the message and press the ► button.



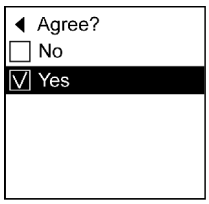
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



9. A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen. After checking the message, press the ► button.



10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



Ink level detection is now disabled, and the printer goes online.

Error Message

Responding to Messages

Responding to Messages

Error Message

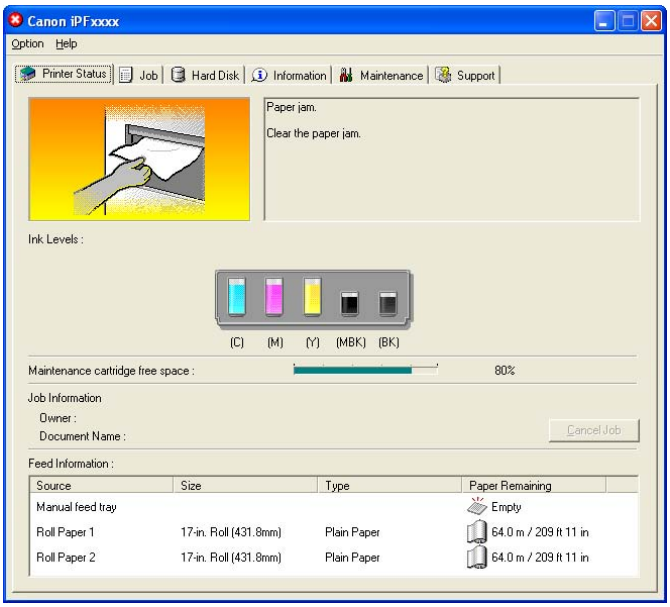
Check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.648)

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary.

Note

- Messages are also displayed in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh).



Error Messages

Error messages

Check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch.** (→P.667)
- **Blue platen switch is dirty.** (→P.667)
- **Borderless printng not possible.** (→P.660)
- **Borderless printng not possible. Paper stretched or shrank.** (→P.667)
- **Cannot adjust band.** (→P.666)
- **Cannot adjust printhead.** (→P.666)
- **Cannot print as selected. Another roll is in use.** (→P.653)
- **Cannot print as specified.** (→P.665)
- **Close Ink Tank Cover** (→P.662)
- **End of paper feed.** (→P.659)
- **ERROR Exxx-xxxx** (x represents a letter or number) (→P.674)
- **File read error.** (→P.671)
- **GARO Wxxxx** (x represents a number) (→P.674)
- **GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.** (→P.673)
- **GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.** (→P.673)
- **GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full.** (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) (→P.673)
- **Hard disk error.** (→P.671)
- **Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx** (x represents a letter or number) (→P.674)
- **Ink insufficient.** (→P.662)
- **No ink left.** (→P.662)
- **Ink tank is empty.** (→P.663)
- **Insert the maintenance cartridge.** (→P.670)
- **Insufficient paper for job** (→P.653)
- **Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.** (→P.671)
- **Mail box nearly full.** (→P.671)
- **Maintenance cartridge full.** (→P.670)
- **Maintenance cartridge problem.** (→P.670)
- **Maximum jobs stored.** (→P.672)
- **Multi-sensor error** (→P.675)
- **No ink tank loaded.** (→P.663)
- **No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.** (→P.670)
- **No printhead** (→P.669)
- **No Roll Unit.** (→P.656)
- **Not much ink is left.** (→P.663)
- **Paper cutting failed.** (→P.659)
- **Paper jam.** (→P.657)
- **Paper loaded askew.** (→P.658)
- **Paper size not detected.** (→P.652)
- **Papr Type Mismatch** (→P.650)
- **PaprTypeMismatch** (→P.650)
- **Parts replacement time has passed.** (→P.675)
- **PHead needs cleaning.** (→P.669)
- **Prepare for maint cart replacement.** (→P.670)
- **Prepare for parts replacement.** (→P.675)

- **Printhead error** (→P.669)
- **Problem with Printhead** (→P.669)
- **Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.** (→P.656)
- **Rel lever is in wrong position.** (→P.659)
- **Roll feed unit error.** (→P.660)
- **Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.** (→P.654)
- **Roll printing is selected.** (→P.654)
- **Roll x jam** (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower)) (→P.657)
- **RollWdthMismatch** (→P.651)
- **Sheet printing is selected.** (→P.656)
- **Sheet removed.** (→P.656)
- **The mail box is full.** (→P.671)
- **The paper is too small.** (→P.651)
- **The roll feed unit is loose.** (→P.661)
- **Roll x is empty.** (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower)) (→P.655)
- **This paper cannot be used.** (→P.653)
- **This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.** (→P.673)
- **Too many jobs for mail box.** (→P.672)
- **Top cover is open.** (→P.674)
- **Unknown file.** (→P.675)
- **Use another paper.** (→P.665)
- **Wrong ink tank.** (→P.663)
- **Wrong maintenance cartridge.** (→P.670)
- **Wrong printhead.** (→P.669)

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

- **Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.** (→P.662)

Messages regarding paper

Papr Type Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types of paper were used.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	When printing a test pattern, use sheets of the same type of paper. Lift the Release Lever and load a sheet of the same type of paper. (→P.93)

PaprTypeMismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
When the **Detect Mismatch** menu is set to **Pause**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer. (→P.89) (→P.93)
You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types of paper were used.	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer. (→P.89) (→P.93)
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
When the **Detect Mismatch** menu is set to **Warning**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.

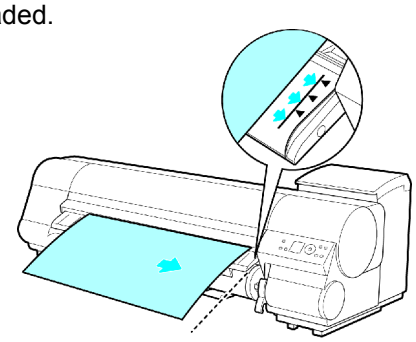
The paper is too small.

Cause	Corrective Action
When the **Detect Mismatch** menu is set to **Pause**, the paper loaded in the printer is smaller than the size specified in the printer driver.	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Replace the loaded paper to match the paper size setting in the printer driver and try printing again.
When the **Detect Mismatch** menu is set to **Warning**, the paper loaded in the printer is smaller than the size specified in the printer driver.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.

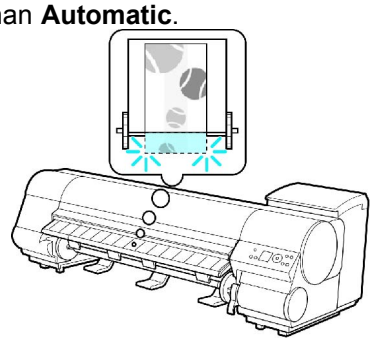
RollWdthMismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll width set in **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver does not match the width of the roll loaded in the printer.	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Make sure the roll width selected in the dialog box displayed when you select **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver matches the width of the roll loaded in the printer, and then try printing again.

Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Follow these steps to reload the roll. 1. Lift the Release Lever. 2. Open the Top Cover. 3. Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line. 4. Lower the Release Lever. 5. Close the Top Cover. 6. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (→P.118)
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (→P.115)
	Follow these step to reload a sheet. 1. Lift the Release Lever. 2. Open the Top Cover. 3. Adjust the right edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line and the trailing edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the paper alignment line under the Paper Retainer. 4. Lower the Release Lever. 5. Close the Top Cover. 6. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (→P.150)

Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left when **ManageRemainRoll** in the printer menu is **On** and one of the following settings is selected. • An option other than **Roll Paper (Auto)** is selected in **Paper Source** in the printer driver. • During HP-GL/2 printing, **GL2 Settings** > **Paper Source** in the printer menu is set to an option other than **Automatic**. 	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. Either change the printer driver **Paper Source** setting or the **GL2 Settings** > **Paper Source** setting in the printer menu or replace the roll with a roll that has enough paper for the print job, and then try printing again. (→P.125) (→P.118)

This paper cannot be used.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper that is too large for the printer has been loaded.	Lift the Release Lever and load paper of the correct size. (→P.109)
Paper that is too small for the printer has been loaded.	Lift the Release Lever and load paper of the correct size. (→P.109)
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Lift the Release Lever and load unused paper A4 or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.

Cannot print as selected. Another roll is in use.

Cause	Corrective Action
A printed document remains in the Output Tray without being cut and a print job was received that specifies the other roll.	Follow these steps to load the other roll after cutting the printed document. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Cut the printed document. (→P.139) 3. Load the other roll and resend the print job. (→P.89)

Roll printing is selected.

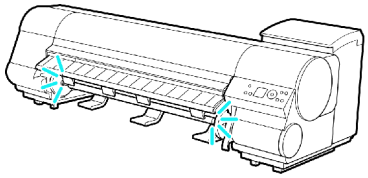
Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a roll, but no roll is loaded.	Load a roll and try printing again.
	To print on a sheet instead, hold down the **Stop** button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a sheet, and then print. (→P.93)

Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

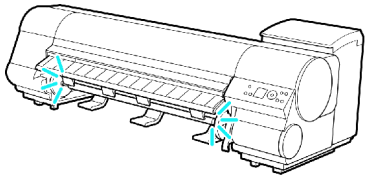
Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded.	Follow these steps to load and print on a roll. 1. Press the **OK** button and remove the sheet. (→P.155) 2. Load a new roll. (→P.118) The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

Roll x is empty. (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower))

Lift the release lever and replace the roll.

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is empty. 	Follow these steps to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. 1. Lift the Release Lever and remove the roll. (→P.125) (→P.129) 2. Load the new roll. (→P.115) (→P.118) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the type of paper. (→P.113) 4. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper length. (→P.114) 5. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
There is remaining roll paper, but because it could not be advanced, it could not be detected.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. (→P.211)

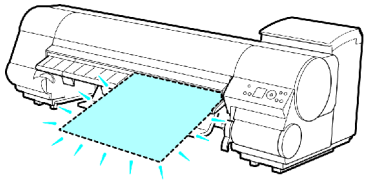
Press OK.

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is empty. 	Follow these steps to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. 1. Press the **OK** button and remove the roll. (→P.125) (→P.129) 2. Load the new roll. (→P.115) (→P.118) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the type of paper. (→P.113) 4. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper length. (→P.114) 5. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

No Roll Unit.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job that specifies Roll 2 (Lower), but the Roll Unit is not installed.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	1. Turn the printer off and install the Roll Unit. Connect the Roll Unit Cable firmly and completely. 2. Turn the printer on and resend the print job.

Sheet removed.

Cause	Corrective Action
A sheet has come out of the printer during printing. 	1. Lift the Release Lever and remove the paper. 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Sheet printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.	Load a sheet and try printing again.
	To print on a roll instead, hold down the **Stop** button for more than a second to cancel printing, load a roll, and then print. (→P.89)

Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. Remove the roll and load a sheet of the type and size of paper you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.125) (→P.93)

Paper jam.

Lift the release lever.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	1. Lift the Release Lever and remove the jammed paper. (→P.131) (→P.156) 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Manually rewind the roll all the way and press OK.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred when advancing the paper.	1. Rewind paper on the Roll Holder manually, all the way, and then press the **OK** button. 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Roll x jam (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower))

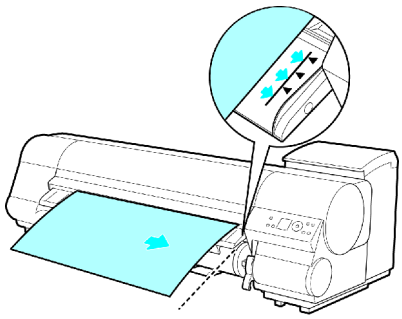
Lift the release lever.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	1. Lift the Release Lever and remove the jammed paper. (→P.131) (→P.156) 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Manually rewind the roll all the way and press OK.

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred when advancing the paper.	1. Rewind paper on the Roll Holder manually, all the way, and then press the **OK** button. 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Paper loaded askew.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper is loaded askew. 	Follow these steps to reload the roll. 1. Lift the Release Lever. 2. Open the Top Cover. 3. Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line. 4. Lower the Release Lever. 5. Close the Top Cover. (→P.118)
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (→P.115)
	Follow these step to reload a sheet. 1. Lift the Release Lever. 2. Open the Top Cover. 3. Adjust the right edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line and the trailing edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the paper alignment line under the Paper Retainer. 4. Lower the Release Lever. 5. Close the Top Cover. (→P.150)

Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams because paper may be askew when it is printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

Paper cutting failed.

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide.	1. Lift the Release Lever and remove the paper. 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.	1. Lift the Top Cover and remove the foreign object. 2. If **Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?** is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	Specify **Manual** as the cutting method and cut the roll manually. (→P.139) For information about paper that is compatible with automatic cutting, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting.	If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper. If the Cutter is out, move the Cutter to the right side (away from the paper) and remove the jammed paper. (→P.131) If the paper cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit, specify **Manual** as the roll cutting method and cut the roll manually. (→P.139)
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll to the edge.	Release the ▲ button.

Rel lever is in wrong position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Release Lever is up.	Lower the Release Lever.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Borderless printng not possible.

Lift release lever and reload the paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
The paper is loaded askew.	Lift the Release Lever and straighten the paper so that the edge of the paper is in the width of the ink groove for borderless printing. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder. (→P.115)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.

Check supported paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.
The loaded paper is not compatible with borderless printing.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	If you press the **Online** button and continue printing, the document will be printed with a border.

Roll feed unit error.

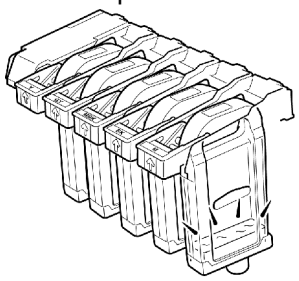
Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the Roll Unit.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

The roll feed unit is loose.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Roll Unit is detached from the printer.	Push the Roll Unit firmly all the way in.

Messages regarding ink

Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot print, clean the Printhead, or do other operations that require ink. 	Replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (→P.563)

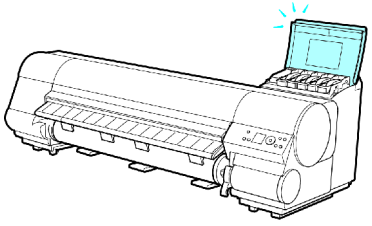
No ink left.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left.	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.563)

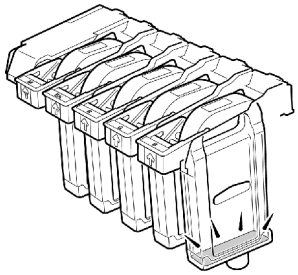
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section “Ink level detection” and take the appropriate action. (→P.645)

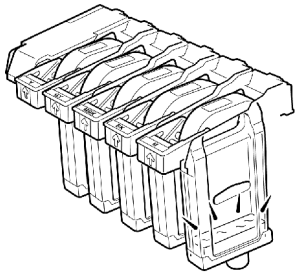
Close Ink Tank Cover

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank Cover is open. 	Close the Ink Tank Cover.

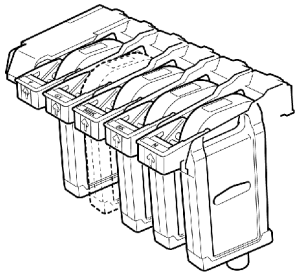
Ink tank is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left in an ink tank. 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.563)

Not much ink is left.

Cause	Corrective Action
Not much ink is left. 	Prepare a new Ink Tank. We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.

No ink tank loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer. 	Load or reload the Ink Tank. (→P.563)
There is a problem with the Ink Tank.	Replace it with a new Ink Tank. (→P.563)

Wrong ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.	Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer. (→P.563)

The display screen indicates Agitating

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink agitation is in progress.	The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer has been turned off. (Between about a minute and a half to twenty minutes.) During agitation, you can print or do other operations after the printer goes **Online**.

Messages regarding printing or adjusment

Use another paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead and feed amount cannot be adjusted when highly transparent film is loaded.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error. We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.544)
	Press the **Online** button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.556)

Cannot print as specified.

Lift the release lever and replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger.

Lift the release lever and replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Load a roll 10 inches wide or larger.

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Auto Band Adj.** again, as follows. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error. 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.577) 3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.578) 4. Execute **Auto Band Adj.** again. (→P.554)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for automatic feed amount adjustment.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.556)

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Auto Head Adj.** again, as follows. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error. 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.577) 3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.578) 4. Execute **Auto Head Adj.** again. (→P.544)
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error. We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.544)
The Printhead is installed crooked.	Straighten the Printhead as follows, and then execute **Auto Head Adj.** again. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error. 2. Use **Head Inc. Adj.** to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead. (→P.548) 3. Execute **Auto Head Adj.** again. (→P.544)

Borderless printng not possible. Paper stretched or shrank.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded roll has expanded or contracted due to environmental conditions, making it wider or narrower than the supported width for borderless printing.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)

Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch.

Cause	Corrective Action
The blue Switch on the platen was set to the side opposite ● when a borderless print job was received.	Before borderless printing, set the blue Switch on the platen to the ● side. (→P.629)

Blue platen switch is dirty.

Cause	Corrective Action
The blue Switch on the platen is dirty.	Open the Top Cover and clean the blue Switch on the platen. (→P.597)

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Auto Head Adj.** again, as follows. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error. 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.577) 3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.578) 4. Execute **Auto Head Adj.** again. (→P.544)
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error. We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.544)
The Printhead is installed crooked.	Straighten the Printhead as follows, and then execute **Auto Head Adj.** again. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error. 2. Use **Head Inc. Adj.** to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead. (→P.548) 3. Execute **Auto Head Adj.** again. (→P.544)

Cannot adjust band.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Auto Band Adj.** again, as follows. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error. 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.577) 3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.578) 4. Execute **Auto Band Adj.** again. (→P.554)
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for automatic feed amount adjustment.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.556)

PHead needs cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Press the **Online** button to resume printing.
	Follow these steps to clean the Printhead. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Printhead cleaning options. (→P.578) If the message is still displayed after you execute **Head Cleaning B** once or twice, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Wrong printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Open the Top Cover and replace the Printhead with a new one. (→P.579)

Problem with Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. (→P.578)

Printhead error

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the Printhead.	Open the Top Cover and replace the Printhead with a new one. (→P.579)

No printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
No Printhead is installed.	Install the Printhead. (→P.579)

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

Insert the maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.586)

Wrong maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
A Maintenance Cartridge for a different model of printer is installed.	Replace it with the Maintenance Cartridge for your particular model.

Prepare for maint cart replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.586)

Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.586)

Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install an unused Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (→P.586)

Messages regarding the hard disk

Hard disk error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The format of the printer's hard disk is invalid.	Press the **OK** button to start reformatting the hard disk. When formatting is finished, the printer automatically restarts. (Formatting will erase all data on the hard disk.)

File read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
Files on the printer's hard disk have become corrupted.	Restart the printer. Only the corrupted files will be deleted, and the printer will restart.

The mail box is full.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more space on the printer's hard disk.	Press the **Stop** button to cancel the print job.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (→P.490)
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes (box numbers in the range 01-29). (→P.534)

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.

Cause	Corrective Action
No more space is available on the printer's hard disk, so jobs are now printed without saving them. (Print jobs can no longer be saved on the hard disk.)	After printing, this message is cleared.

Mail box nearly full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The free hard disk space left for personal boxes in the printer's hard disk does not have 1 GB, combined.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (→P.534)

Maximum jobs stored.

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the personal box.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (→P.534)

Too many jobs for mail box.

Cause	Corrective Action
Saved jobs exceed the personal box capacity.	Press the **Stop** button to cancel the print job.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (→P.490)
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes (box numbers in the range 01-29). (→P.534)

Messages regarding HP-GL/2

This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a HP-GL/2 print job that cannot be printed on the paper that has been advanced.	Follow these steps to replace the type of paper in the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Replace the paper with a type compatible with HP-GL/2. For details on paper compatible with HP-GL/2, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.104)
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.

GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer memory became full while processing the job received.	Check the print job and the printing results.

GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.

Cause	Corrective Action
A parameter specified in a HP-GL/2 command is out of the supported range.	Check the print job.

GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received an unsupported HP-GL/2 command.	Check the print job.

Other Messages

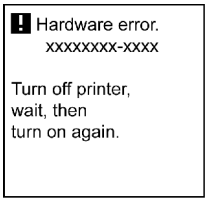
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
An error requiring service may have occurred. 	Write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job. The paper was not advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Turn off the printer and remove the roll from the printer before restoring power.
Fastening tape or the Belt Stopper has not been removed inside the Top Cover.	Turn off the printer, open the Top Cover and remove the tape or the Belt Stopper before restoring power.
An error requiring service may have occurred. 	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Top cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open.	Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.
	If the error occurs again, close the Top Cover, turn off the printer, and wait a while before restoring power.

Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	You can continue to use the printer for some time until **Parts replacement time has passed.** will be displayed. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Data sent to keep the printer up to date (such as paper information) is in the wrong format.	Check the data. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the data.
You have uploaded firmware for a different model.	Check the firmware version. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the firmware.
	If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

No Roll Unit.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job that specifies Roll 2 (Lower), but the Roll Unit is not installed.	Hold down the **Stop** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	1. Turn the printer off and install the Roll Unit. Connect the Roll Unit Cable firmly and completely. 2. Turn the printer on and resend the print job.

Index

A

About This User Manual 1
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) 425
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) 381
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 383
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) 438
Adjusting Images 201
Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length) 559
Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.) 548
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 201
- Color Adjustment 202
- Color Mode 201
- Matching 203

Adjusting the feed amount 552
Adjusting the Printhead 543
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth) 561
Adjustments for Better Print Quality 543
An error message is shown on the Display Screen 620
Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls 115
Auto Band Adjustment (Auto Band Adj.) 554
Automatic Roll Switching 146
Automatic Straightening of Lines and Colors (Auto Head Adj.) 544

B

Back 15
Banding Adjustment During Printing (Fine Band Adj.) 558
Banding in different colors occurs 626
Basic Environmental Performance 84
- Packaging materials 84
- Printer 84

Basic Printing Workflow 86
Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch. 667
Blue platen switch is dirty. 667
Borderless Printing 265
Borderless Printing at Actual Size 258, 279
- Borderless Printing 258, 279
- Borderless Printing Method 258, 279
- Print Image with Actual Size 259, 280

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) 262, 283
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) 260, 281
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 272
- Borderless Printing 272
- Borderless Printing Method 272
- Scale to fit Roll Paper Width 273

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 276
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 274
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 269
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 267
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size 265
- Borderless Printing 265
- Borderless Printing Method 265
- Fit Paper Size 266

Borderless printng not possible. 660
- Check supported paper. 660
- Lift release lever and reload the paper. 660

Borderless printng not possible. Paper stretched or shrank. 667

C

Canceling print jobs 99
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X 102
- Canceling print jobs from the Control Panel 103
- Canceling print jobs from the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 102

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 99
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 100
- Canceling print jobs from the Control Panel 101
- Canceling print jobs in the printer window or imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 100

Cannot adjust band. 666, 668
Cannot adjust printhead. 666, 668
Cannot connect the printer to the network 634
Cannot Load Sheets 618
Cannot print as selected. Another roll is in use. 653

Cannot print as specified. 665
Lift the release lever and replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger. 665
Lift the release lever and replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll. 665
Cannot print over a NetWare network 636
Cannot print over a network 634
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 636
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks ..637
Carriage 18
Centering originals 324
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 577
Checking Images Before Printing 347
Checking Ink Tank Levels 574
Checking Instructions During Printer Operations 76
How to view instructions 76
Viewing instructions for loading or removing rolls 77
Viewing instructions for loading or removing sheets 77
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 539
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 541
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 540
Using RemoteUI 540
Using the Control Panel 539
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing 347
Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows) 347
Preview (Macintosh) 348
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X) 352, 423
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) 349, 376
imagePROGRAF Preview 350, 377
PageComposer 351, 378
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 594
Choosing a Paper for Printing 220
If the paper type is not listed for selection 220
Media type 220
Choosing Paper for Printing 220
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) 217
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 215
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 597
Cleaning the Printer 596
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 596
Cleaning the Printhead 578, 600
Cleaning the Printhead 578, 600
Clearing a Jammed Sheet 156, 613
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 131, 610
Close Ink Tank Cover 662
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) 391
Object Adjustment dialog box 392
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) 395
Object Adjustment dialog box 396
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 432
Color Adjustment pane: color 432
Matching pane 433
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) 434
Color Adjustment pane: Monochrome 434
Colors in printed images are uneven 627
Configuring NetWare Network Settings 468
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 635
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh) 473
Activating AppleTalk on the printer 473
Configuring the destination (Mac OS X) 474
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh) 479
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh) 476
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) 476
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 443
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 446
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 417, 444, 470
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 445
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh) 471
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 456
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 450, 472
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 451, 459
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 448
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) 421
Checking a preview of the settings 421
Checking a print preview 422
Confirming Print Settings (Windows) 374
Checking a preview of the settings 374
Checking a print preview 375

Conserving roll paper 335
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 341
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper) 341
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) 344
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 342
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 335
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) 335
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 338
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 336
Control Panel 21, 23
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 366
Automatic Cutting 366
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) 368
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 367
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 143

D

Deleting Saved Jobs 534
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 538
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 537
Using RemoteUI 535
Using the Control Panel 534
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 408
Device Setup Utility 415
Digital Photo Front-Access 411
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs 503
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 507
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 506
Using RemoteUI 504
Using the Control Panel 503
Displaying Details of Saved Jobs 522
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 526
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 524
Using RemoteUI 522
Do Not Save Print Jobs in the Common Box 489
Documents are printed crooked 631
Documents are printed in monochrome 632

E

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 454
End of paper feed. 659
Enhanced Printing Options 201
Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk 542
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 674
Error Message 647
Error Messages 648
Error messages 648
Other Messages 649

F

Favorites Sheet (Windows) 404
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 135
File read error. 671
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 208
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 205
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Mac OS X) 184
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Line Drawings (Windows) 182
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) 171
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) 169
Frequently Asked Questions 607
Front 13

G

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 674
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 211
Advanced Settings 211
Color settings 213
Enhancing printing quality 214
Print Priority 211
Print Quality 212
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range. 673
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported. 673
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904) 673

H

Handling Paper....104
Handling rolls....112
Handling sheets for paper feed slots....148
Hard Disk....480
Hard disk error....671
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)....674
How to use this manual....1
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color)....640
HP-GL/2 Printing....190
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time....640
HP-GL/2 problems....640
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing....5
- Printing a group of individual topics in the manual....7
- Printing a group of topics in the manual....5
- Printing selected topics....10

I

IEEE 1394 (FireWire) Expansion Board....78
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound....643
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs....628
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....415
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)....440
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)....410
Initializing the Network Settings....455
Ink insufficient....662
Ink level detection....645
- Disabling ink level detection....645
- Ink level detection....645

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)....19
Ink tank is empty....663
Ink Tanks....562
Insert the maintenance cartridge....670
Installation problems....638
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....416, 469
Insufficient paper for job....653
Introduction....1

K

Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left....136

L

Layout Sheet (Windows)....400
Line thickness is not uniform....632
Lines are misaligned....633
Lines Are Printed Too Thick or Thin During HP-GL/2 Printing....640
Lines or images are missing in the HP-GL/2 data that was printed....640
Loading and Printing on Rolls....89
Loading and Printing on Sheets....93
Loading Rolls in the Printer....118
- Loading rolls in the Roll 1 (Upper) holder....118
- Loading rolls in the Roll 2 (Lower) holder....122

Loading Sheets in the Printer....150

M

Mac OS X Software....418
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data....671
Mail box nearly full....671
Main Menu Operations....36
- Accessing menus....37
- Executing menu commands....39
- Specifying menu items....38
- Specifying numerical values....39

Main Menu Settings....53
- Adjust Printer....60
- GL2 Settings....58
- Information....65
- Interface Setup....61
- Job Management....57
- Maintenance....62
- Paper Details....55
- Paper Menu....54
- System Setup....63

Main Menu Settings (During Printing)....66
- Information....66

Main Pane (Mac OS X)....426
- Configuration using Advanced Settings....427
- Configuration using Easy Settings....426

Main Sheet (Windows)....385
- Configuration using Advanced Settings....386
- Configuration using Easy Settings....385

Maintenance....562
Maintenance Cartridge....585
Maintenance cartridge full....670
Maintenance cartridge problem....670

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 356
Mirror 356
Orientation 356
Rotate 180 degrees 356
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) 359
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 357
Managing Queued Jobs (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs) 490
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 492
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 492
Using RemoteUI 491
Using the Control Panel 491
Manual Band Adjustment (Manual Band Adj) 556
Manual Straightening of Lines and Colors (Manual Head Adj) 546
Manually Loading Paper to the Position for Printing 153
Matching Sheet (Windows) 393
Driver Matching Mode 393
ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host ICM Mode 394
Maximum jobs stored. 672
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 430
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 389
Menu Structure 40
Main Menu 40
Main menu during printing 52
Submenus 51
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared 644
Messages regarding HP-GL/2 673
Messages regarding ink 662
Messages regarding paper 650
Messages regarding printheads 668
Messages regarding printing or adjusment 665
Messages regarding the hard disk 671
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 670
Moving Saved Jobs 516
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 521
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 519
Using RemoteUI 516
Multi-sensor error 675

N

Naming Personal Boxes 498
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 502
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 500
Using RemoteUI 498
Network Environment 441
Network Environment 442
System requirements 441
Network Setting 441
Network Setting (Mac OS X) 471
Network Setting (Windows) 456
No ink left. 662
No ink tank loaded. 663
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. 670
No printhead 669
No Roll Unit. 656, 675
Not much ink is left. 663

O

Optional accessories 78
Other Maintenance 601
Other Messages 674
Other problems 642
Other useful settings 353
Output Stacker 158

P

Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) 402
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 435
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 397
Paper 104
Paper cutting failed. 659
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 429
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 388
Paper is not cut 618
Paper is not cut straight 618
Paper jam. 657
Lift the release lever. 657
Manually rewind the roll all the way and press OK. 657
Paper loaded askew. 658
Paper rubs against the printhead 622
Paper size not detected. 652

Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) 399
Paper Sizes 109
Rolls 109
Sheets 110
Papr Type Mismatch 650
PaprTypeMismatch 650
Parts replacement time has passed. 675
PHead needs cleaning. 669
PosterArtist 412
Prepare for maint cart replacement. 670
Prepare for parts replacement. 675
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 601
Print Area 85
Rolls 85
Sheets 85
Printed colors are inaccurate 625
Printed Colors in Line Drawings are Inaccurate During HP-GL/2 Printing 640
Printer Driver 370, 418
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 418
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 370
Printer Hard Disk Operations 480
Printer Menu Operations 34
Main menu operations during printing 34
Main menu operations when no print job is in progress 34
Submenu operations 35
Printer Modes 27
Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel 30
Mode transition 28
Modes 27
Offline, and state of the Control Panel 29
Online, and state of the Control Panel 29
Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel 31
Printer Parts 13
Printer Specifications 79
Printhead 576
Printhead error 669
Printheads 576
Printing a List of Saved Jobs 508
Printing at full size 251
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) 255
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 253
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 286
Printing CAD Drawings 174
Printing CAD Drawings in Monochrome 181
Printing does not start 619
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER 196, 246
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) 199, 249
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 200, 250
Registering a hot folder on your computer 199, 249
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 200, 250
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 196, 247
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 197, 248
Registering a hot folder on your computer 197, 247
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 198, 248
Printing enlargements or reductions 228
Printing in Mac OS X 97
Printing from the application software 97
Registering the printer 97
Printing in Windows 96
Printing is faint 621
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 322
Printing Line Drawings and Text 174
Easy Settings 174
Print Target 174
Print targets for line drawings and text 174
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 178
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 176
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 304
Free Layout (Windows) 304
imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh) 305
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 308
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 306
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 310
Roll paper (banner) 310
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 313
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 311
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 315
Page Layout 315
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 318
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 316

Printing Office Documents....191
Easy Settings....191
Print Target....191
Print targets for office documents....191
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)....194
Printing Office Documents (Windows)....192
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes....297
Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver....297
Specifying custom paper sizes for temporary use....297
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)....302
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)....298
Printing by using Custom Paper Size....300
Printing by using Custom Size....298
Printing on Oversized Paper....251
Oversize....251
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets....86
Roll printing....86
Sheet printing....88
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls....324
Print Centered....324
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)....327
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)....325
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets....330
Print Centered....330
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)....333
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)....331
Printing Photos and Images....161
Easy Settings....161
Print Target....161
Print targets for photos and images....161
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)....165
Printing Photos and Images (Windows)....163
Printing Photos in Monochrome....168
Printing Photos in Monochrome....168
Printing Posters in Sections....321
Page Layout....321
Printing procedure....86
Printing Saved Jobs....509
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor....514
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor....512
Using RemoteUI....510
Using the Control Panel....509
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)....286
Fit Roll Paper Width....287
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)....293
Register a Custom Page Size....294
Printing the banner....295
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)....288
Creating the banner in the application....289
Printing the banner....290
Registering a Custom Paper Size....288
Printing With Watermarks....353
Watermark....353
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)....354
Printmonitor....440
Problem with Printhead....669
Problems Regarding Paper....610
Problems with the printing quality....621
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper....633

R

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls....144
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.....656
Rel lever is in wrong position.....659
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.....662
Removing Installed Printer Drivers....639
Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)....639
Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)....639
Removing printer drivers (Windows)....639
Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)....639
Removing Sheets....155
Removing the Roll from the Printer....125
Removing rolls from the Roll 1 (Upper) position....125
Removing rolls from the Roll 2 (Lower) position....127
Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls....129
Renaming Saved Jobs....527
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)....532
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)....530
Using RemoteUI....527

Replacing Ink Tanks 563
Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement 564
Compatible ink tanks 563
How to replace an Ink Tank 563
Load the ink tank (330 ml) 569
Load the ink tank (700 ml) 571
Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement 564
Precautions when handling ink tanks 563
Remove the Ink Tank (330 ml) 565
Remove the Ink Tank (700 ml) 567
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 586
Compatible maintenance cartridges 586
Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge 586
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 586
Replacing the Shaft Cleaner 590
Replacing the Printhead 579
Compatible printheads 579
Precautions when handling the Printhead 579
Replacing the Printhead 580
When to replace the Printhead 579
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 240
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 240
Scaling 240
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) 243
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 241
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 234
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 234
Fit Roll Paper Width 234
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 237
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 235
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 228
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 228
Fit Paper Size 228
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 231
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 229
Responding to Messages 647
Error Message 647
Other Messages 647
Roll feed unit error. 660
Roll Holder Set 78, 145
Roll Paper Cannot be Inserted into the Paper Feed Slot 618
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded. 654
Roll printing is selected. 654
Roll x is empty. (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower)) 655
Lift the release lever and replace the roll. 655
Press OK. 655
Roll x jam (x is 1 (Upper) or 2 (Lower)) 657
Lift the release lever. 657
Manually rewind the roll all the way and press OK. 657
RollWdthMismatch 651

S

Saved Print Jobs 482
Format of saved print jobs 482
Storage destination 483
Saving Print Jobs 485
Using the printer driver (Mac OS) 488
Using the printer driver (Windows) 486
Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver 484
Specifying Output Method 484
Specifying Save and Print 484
Searching Topics 3
Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority) 553
Selecting the Paper Source 112, 148
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 113, 221
Selecting the Paper Type (Sheet) 149, 222
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes 493
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS) 497
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 495
Using RemoteUI 493
Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen 629
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows) 409
Sharing the Printer in Windows 457
Sheet printing is selected. 656
Sheet removed. 656
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 403
Specifications 79
Hard Disk 83
Ink 81
Interface 80
Options 83
Paper 82
Printer 79
Printing performance 80

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings.....187
Color Compatibility 187
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) 188
Specifying NetWare Print Services.....463
Choosing the type of print services 463
Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server 464
Specifying NetWare Protocols.....466
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 223
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X).....226, 419
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 224, 372
Specifying Printer-Related Information.....453
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 139
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing).....140
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit) 141
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position).....142
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.....137
Mac OS X 138
Windows.....137
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll).....114
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type.....461
Specifying the Frame Type Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.....461
Specifying the Frame Type Using the Printer Control Panel.....462
Status Monitor 410
Status Print.....69
Checking the information in the Status Print report.....69
Printing Status Print reports 69
Submenu Display 67
HP-GL/2 setting information 68
Information on the loaded paper 67
Printer information.....68
Remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and ink levels.....67
Support Pane (Mac OS X).....439
Support Sheet (Windows) 407
Switching Modes 32
Switching the Printer Online/Offline.....32
Switching to Menu Mode.....33

T

The back side of the paper is dirty 624
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 631
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up.....619
The display screen indicates Agitating 664
The display screen indicates the system is filling with ink 619
The edges of the paper are dirty 623
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly 638
The length of printed images is inaccurate.....631
The mail box is full. 671
The paper is too small. 651
The printer consumes a lot of ink 644
The printer does not go on 642
The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent.....619
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper.....620
The printer stops during a print job.....620
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving).....620, 641
The roll feed unit is loose. 661
The surface of the paper is dirty.....624
This paper cannot be used. 653
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2. 673
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet.....304
Too many jobs for mail box. 672
Top Cover (Inside) 16
Top cover is open. 674
Troubleshooting.....607
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height) 551
Troubleshooting When Paper Jams are not Found 615
Turning the Printer On and Off 25
Turning the printer off 26
Turning the printer on 25
Types of Paper 104
Accessing the Paper Reference Guide from imagePROGRAF Support Information 105
Updating Paper Information 107

U

Unknown file. 675
Updating the Firmware 606
Confirming the firmware version....606
Updating the Firmware 606
Use another paper. 665
Using Favorites 362
Favorites....362
Using Favorites (Mac OS X)....365, 424
Using Favorites (Windows) 363, 379
Printing using the favorite....364, 380
Registering a favorite 363, 379
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 412
Edit Using PosterArtist 412
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 413
Using RemoteUI 447
Using the Printer With a Color imageRUNNER....196
Using the Wheeled Output Stacker 159
Positioning the Wheeled Output Stacker by the printer 159
Removing the Wheeled Output Stacker from the printer 160
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 437
Utility Sheet (Windows) 406

V

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)....431
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 390

W

Wheeled Output Stacker 20, 158
When to Replace Ink Tanks....575
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink 575
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen 575
If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen 575
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 595
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen 595
If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen ..595
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted....595
Windows Software....370
Working With Various Print Jobs 161
Wrong ink tank....663
Wrong maintenance cartridge. 670
Wrong printhead. 669

©CANON INC. 2008